# Table of Contents

**INTRODUCTION**
- ServiceDesk Plus Editions
- Contacting ZOHO Corporation

**INSTALLATION GUIDE**
- System Requirements
- Install ServiceDesk Plus
  - Installation on Windows
  - Installation on Linux
- Upgrade Service Pack
- Start ServiceDesk Plus Server
- Register ServiceDesk Plus
- Shutdown ServiceDesk Plus Server
- Configure the Database
- Installing SSL Certificate
- Renew SSL Certificate
- Installing .PFX Certificate
- Uninstalling ServiceDesk Plus

**HOME PAGE**
- My Tasks
- Publish Announcements
- Scheduler
  - My Schedule
  - Technician Availability Chart
- Reminders
- Personalize
- License Expiry Alert

**DASHBOARD**
REQUESTS ........................................................................................................... 94
Request List view .................................................................................................. 95
Create an Incident .................................................................................................. 97
Raise a Service Request ....................................................................................... 103
Custom Views ........................................................................................................ 107
View Request Details ........................................................................................... 109
Edit Request ........................................................................................................... 112
Close Request ......................................................................................................... 113
Pick up Requests .................................................................................................... 116
Assign Request to Technician ................................................................................. 117
Unassign Technician from Request ......................................................................... 118
Start / Stop Request Timer .................................................................................... 119
Add a Note ................................................................................................................ 120
Add a Work Log ....................................................................................................... 122
Add a Task ................................................................................................................ 124
Add a Reminder ...................................................................................................... 128
Merge Requests .................................................................................................... 129
Duplicate a Request .............................................................................................. 132
Link Requests ....................................................................................................... 133
Delete Request ....................................................................................................... 137
Associate Problem to Request ............................................................................... 138
Associate Change to Request ............................................................................... 141
Print the Request ................................................................................................... 143
Add a Resolution ................................................................................................... 144
Search for a Solution ............................................................................................. 145
Submit for Approval ............................................................................................... 146
View Requester Details .......................................................................................... 149
E-mail the Requester ............................................................................................... 151
Forward the Request .............................................................................................. 153
E-mail the Technician ............................................................................................. 154
SMS the Technician ............................................................................................... 155

Zoho Corporation
Request Conversations ................................................................. 156
View Requests based on Filters ....................................................... 157
Customize Request List View ......................................................... 160
Search for a Request ..................................................................... 161
Multi site on Requests .................................................................. 163

MOBILE CLIENT ............................................................................ 166

SERVICEDESK PLUS IPHONE APP ............................................ 175

PROBLEMS .................................................................................. 191
  Create New Problem .................................................................. 192
  View Problem Details ................................................................. 194
  Edit Problem .............................................................................. 195
  Close Problem .......................................................................... 196
  Pick up Problems ...................................................................... 197
  Assign Technician to Problem ...................................................... 198
  Problem Analysis ...................................................................... 200
  Problem Solutions ..................................................................... 201
  Add a Note ................................................................................. 202
  Add a Task ................................................................................. 203
  Add a Work Log ........................................................................ 205
  Delete Problem ......................................................................... 206
  Associate Incidents to Problem .................................................... 207
  Associate Changes to Problem .................................................... 208
  Add a Reminder ......................................................................... 209
  View Reminders ....................................................................... 210
  Publish Announcements ............................................................. 211
  Send Notifications ..................................................................... 212
  Print the Problem ...................................................................... 213

CHANGES .................................................................................... 214
  Create New Change ................................................................... 215
  Forward Schedule of Change ....................................................... 217
  View Change Details ................................................................. 220
Edit Change .......................................................................................... 222
Print the Change .................................................................................. 223
Add a Note ............................................................................................ 224
Add a Reminder ................................................................................... 225
View Reminders ................................................................................... 226
Add a Task ............................................................................................. 227
Add a Work Log .................................................................................... 228
Assign Technician to Change ............................................................... 229
Close Change ....................................................................................... 231
Delete Change ...................................................................................... 232
Associate Incidents to Change .............................................................. 233
Associate Problems to Change ............................................................ 234
Publish Announcements ...................................................................... 235
Send Notifications ............................................................................... 237
Change Planning .................................................................................. 238
Recommending Change by CAB .......................................................... 240
Approve Change .................................................................................. 242

SOLUTIONS ...................................................................................... 243
About Solutions .................................................................................... 244
Add New Solution ................................................................................. 245
View Solution Details .......................................................................... 246
Edit Solution ........................................................................................ 247
Submit for Approval ............................................................................ 248
Approve/Reject Solution ...................................................................... 250
Delete Solutions .................................................................................. 251
Search for a Solution ........................................................................... 252
Browse Solutions by Topic ................................................................... 253
Manage Topics ..................................................................................... 254
Add New Topic .................................................................................... 254
Rename a Topic ................................................................................... 254
Move a Topic ........................................................................................................ 254
Delete a Topic ................................................................................................. 255

**ASSETS ........................................................................................................ 256**

IT Assets ........................................................................................................ 257
Add New IT Asset ............................................................................................. 258
Edit IT Asset ..................................................................................................... 259
Add IT Assets to Group .................................................................................. 258
Assign IT Assets to Department/Site ............................................................... 260
Modify State of IT Assets ............................................................................... 261
Change log-in Credentials for IT Assets ....................................................... 262
Bulk Scan of IT Assets ................................................................................... 263
Delete IT Asset ................................................................................................... 264
Import IT Asset from CSV file ......................................................................... 265
View IT Asset Details ....................................................................................... 266
Copy Resource ................................................................................................ 267
Attach Assets .................................................................................................. 268
Attach Components ............................................................................................ 269
Attach Documents ............................................................................................. 270
Assign IT Assets to Users/Departments/Assets ............................................. 271
Add New Workstation ...................................................................................... 272
Bulk Scan of newly Added Workstation ........................................................ 273
Change Workstation as Server ........................................................................ 274
View Workstation Details ............................................................................... 275
Print the Workstation Details ......................................................................... 276
Modify Type ...................................................................................................... 277
Reconcile IT Assets ........................................................................................... 278
Add Software ..................................................................................................... 279
Delete Workstation ........................................................................................... 280
Identifying the Uniqueness of Workstations ................................................. 281
Remote Desktop ............................................................................................... 282
Configure Asset Depreciation ......................................................................... 283
Asset Components .............................................................................. 298
Add New Component........................................................................... 300
Add Components to Group ................................................................. 301
Delete Components ............................................................................ 302
View Component Details .................................................................... 303
Associate Asset to Component ........................................................... 304
Copy Resource ................................................................................... 305
Edit Component ............................................................................... 306
Attach Documents .............................................................................. 307

Non-IT Assets .................................................................................. 308
Add Non-IT Asset ............................................................................. 309
Edit Non-IT Assets ........................................................................... 310
Add Non-IT Assets to Group .............................................................. 311
Assign Bulk Non-IT Assets to Department/Site ..................................... 312
Modify the State of Non-IT Assets ...................................................... 313
Delete Non-IT Asset ........................................................................ 314
View Non-IT Asset Details ................................................................. 315
Assign Non-IT Assets to Users and/or Department ............................. 316
Copy Resource ................................................................................ 317
Attach Assets .................................................................................. 318
Attach Components .......................................................................... 319
Attach Documents ............................................................................ 320

Software Asset Management .............................................................. 321
Scanned Software ............................................................................ 322
Add New Software ........................................................................... 324
View Software Details ....................................................................... 325
Change Software Type ....................................................................... 327
Change Software Category ................................................................. 329
Delete Software ............................................................................... 330
Associate Software Minor Versions ................................................ 331
E-mail Users ..................................................................................... 332
Software Summary .......................................................................... 333
License Agreement ................................................................. 334
Edit and Delete License Agreement .................................. 337
Print the License Agreement ........................................... 338
Software License ................................................................. 339
Add Software License ......................................................... 340
View Software License ....................................................... 343
Edit and Delete Software License ..................................... 344
Attach Documents .............................................................. 345
Service Packs ................................................................. 346
Edit and Delete Service Packs .......................................... 347
Groups .............................................................. 348
Create Asset - Groups ...................................................... 349
Remove Assets from Static Group .................................... 351
Editing and Deleting Groups ........................................... 352
PURCHASE ................................................................. 353
Create New Purchase Order ............................................. 354
PO Approval Process ........................................................ 355
Order PO from Vendor .................................................... 357
Receive PO Items ............................................................ 358
Reconcile PO Items ........................................................ 360
Add Invoice details and Notification .......................... 362
Add Payment details and Notification .......................... 364
E-mail PO Owner .............................................................. 366
E-mail the Vendor .............................................................. 367
Edit Purchase Order ........................................................ 368
Print the Purchase Order .................................................. 369
Delete Purchase Order ..................................................... 370
Close Purchase Order ...................................................... 371
View Purchase Order based on Filters ......................... 372
CONTRACTS ........................................................................................................... 373
Create New Contract ..................................................................................... 374
View Contract Details .................................................................................. 376
Edit and Delete Contract ............................................................................ 377
View Contract Owner Details ..................................................................... 378
Renew a Contract ....................................................................................... 379
Print the Contract ....................................................................................... 381
E-mail the Contract Owner .......................................................................... 382
E-mail the Vendor ....................................................................................... 383
Search for a Contract ................................................................................. 384
View Contracts based on Filters ............................................................... 385

CONFIGURATION MANAGEMENT DATABASE (CMDB) .................. 386
Populate CIs in CMDB ................................................................................ 387
Import CIs from CSV file .......................................................................... 389
CMDB List View .......................................................................................... 391
Defining CI Relationships ......................................................................... 393
Relationship Map ......................................................................................... 397

ADMIN CONFIGURATIONS ........................................................................ 402
Helpdesk Configurations ........................................................................... 403
Status .......................................................................................................... 404
Level ............................................................................................................ 406
Mode ............................................................................................................ 408
Impact .......................................................................................................... 410
Urgency ......................................................................................................... 411
Priority .......................................................................................................... 412
Priority Matrix ............................................................................................. 414
Request Type ............................................................................................... 415
Request Closure Code ............................................................................... 416
Request Closing Rules ............................................................................... 418
Incident - Additional Fields ....................................................................... 420
Incident Template ......................................................................................... 423
Resolution Template .................................................................................... 429
Problem / Change Management ............................................................ 532
  Problem Additional Fields.................................................................... 533
  Problem Closure Rules ....................................................................... 534
  Change Type ..................................................................................... 535
  Change Status .................................................................................. 536
  Change Advisory Board .................................................................... 537
  Change Additional Fields ................................................................... 538
  Change Closure Rules ....................................................................... 539

Discovery ...................................................................................... 540
  Scan Windows Machine ................................................................. 542
  Modes of Scan: Agent and Agentless ............................................... 544
    Agent Mode .................................................................................. 545
      Methods of Agent Deployment .................................................... 548
      Uninstall the Agent ..................................................................... 556
    Agentless Mode ............................................................................ 557
  Scan Linux, Solaris, MAC and AIX machines ................................... 559
  Scan VMWare Hosts ........................................................................ 560
  Scan Printers, Routers, Switches and Access Points ....................... 561
  Windows Domain Scan ................................................................. 562
  Network Scan ................................................................................ 564
  Workstation/Device Scan .............................................................. 568
  Scanning Machines outside a domain/network .................................. 570
  Ports used during Scan .................................................................... 572
  Scan WAN environment ................................................................... 573
  Schedule Scan ................................................................................ 574
  Distributed Asset Scan .................................................................... 576
  General Settings ............................................................................ 580

Asset Management ........................................................................... 582
  Configuring Product Types ............................................................. 583
  Configure Products ......................................................................... 585
  Configure Vendors .......................................................................... 588
  Workstation Additional Fields ....................................................... 590
  Asset Additional Fields ................................................................... 591
Requester Attributes and xml Response .......................................................... 673
Asset Attributes and xml Response .............................................................. 679
REST API ..................................................................................................... 686
Request Operations .................................................................................... 689
Notes Related Operations .......................................................................... 697
Worklog Related Operations ..................................................................... 704

REPORTS ..................................................................................................... 712
Pre-defined ServiceDesk Plus Reports ....................................................... 713
Custom Reports .......................................................................................... 719
Creating New Query Reports ................................................................. 724
Flash Report .............................................................................................. 725
Scheduling Report Settings .................................................................... 727
Custom Settings ....................................................................................... 728

APPENDIX .................................................................................................... 729
System Log Viewer .................................................................................... 730
Back up Process .......................................................................................... 731
Restore Process .......................................................................................... 733
Change Web Server Port .......................................................................... 735
Feedback ...................................................................................................... 737
Performance Guide ................................................................................... 738
Troubleshooting ......................................................................................... 747
Introduction

ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus is a comprehensive help desk and asset management software that provides help desk agents and IT managers an integrated console to monitor and maintain the assets and IT requests generated from the users of the IT resources in an organization. The IT help desk plays an important part in the provision of IT Services. It is very often the first contact the users have in their use of IT Services when something does not work as expected. The IT help desk is a single point of contact for end-users who need help. Without this, an organization could certainly face losses due to inefficiencies.

The two main focuses of the ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus are IT Request tracking and Asset Management. Using the following modules of ServiceDesk, technicians and system administrators can resolve issues of complex nature in no time and thus reduce the end-user frustration arising due to time consuming issue resolving process. They can also keep track of the needs of the organization with the help of asset management and proactively allocate resources to the right user/departments, thus increasing the productivity of the organization.

- Requests
- Problem
- Change
- Solutions
- Assets
- Purchase
- Contract
- Configuration Management Database

The request module functions as the Help Desk where requests are fetched and necessary solutions provided by assigning technicians to resolve issues reported.

When you log in to ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus, the application displays the ServiceDesk Plus home page that contains information on pending requests, overdue requests, requests assigned to the user who has logged in, approved/unapproved changes by the logged in technician, open and unassigned problems assigned to the logged in technician, individual user's task list, and depending on the user login, the other dashboard views such as Contract and Purchase Order summary may also be displayed.

Requests

Clicking on the Requests tab on the header pane takes you to the request module. This serves as the IT help desk module where the IT requests from individual users are fetched, tracked, technicians are assigned, and a solution is provided.

Problems

The objective of Problem Management is to minimize the adverse impact of Incidents and Problems on the business that are caused by errors within the IT infrastructure, and to prevent recurrence of Incidents related to these errors. In order to achieve this goal,
Problem Management seeks to get to the root cause of Incidents and then initiate actions it improve or correct the situation.

Change

The goal of Change Management is to ensure that standardized methods and procedures are used for efficient and prompt handling of all Changes, in order to minimize the impact of change-related incidents upon service quality and consequently to improve the day-to-day operations of the organization.

Solutions

This module serves as a knowledge base for your IT help desk team as well as your users. Users can search this for solutions for issues and solve them themselves. Also when technicians resolve issues, they can directly convert these resolutions as knowledge base articles. To view the solutions, click the Solutions tab in the header pane.

Assets

Assets tab helps you to track & manage your assets efficiently. It tracks all your newly added assets, and has a record of all the assets in the organization. Assets can be categorized as IT, Non IT Assets & Asset Components in an organization. This includes Workstations, Printers, Routers, Software Licenses, Scanners, Projectors and even your air conditioning systems. Thus it offers a single view to track and manage all your assets in the organization.

Purchase

Here you can create new purchase orders and track them till the order has been delivered. The same details can also be maintained for future reference. Clicking the Purchase tab takes you to the Purchase module.

Contract

This module holds the details regarding the maintenance contracts between your organization and the vendor(s) from whom the assets of your organization have been purchased. Clicking the Contracts tab in the header pane takes you to the contract module.

Configuration Management Database

Configuration Management Database (CMDB) lets you track and manage all your Configuration Items (CIs) in a single repository. Unlike the asset database that comprises of a bunch of CIs, the CMDB in ServiceDesk Plus is designed to support a vast IT structure where the interrelations between the CIs are maintained and supported successfully. It's the CI relationship that makes the CMDB an effective decision making tool, impact and root cause analyzer.
In addition to these, ServiceDesk Plus has GUI-rich reports for requests and Assets modules. There are predefined sets of reports that help you evaluate the efficiency and productivity of your IT help desk team, the load of requests handled by the team, the assets distribution, and many more. Also, the ServiceDesk administrator can configure various help desk, asset, and enterprise-related settings, such as the working hours of the organization, service-level agreements, user roles, departments and many more.

Based on the permissions provided by the ServiceDesk Plus administrator to each of the users of the application, you will be able to access the above modules. If you do not have the access permission, contact your ServiceDesk Plus administrator.
ServiceDesk Plus Editions

ServiceDesk Plus is available in three editions namely,

- **Standard Edition** - comprises of Incident Management alone.
- **Professional Edition** - includes Asset Management, Purchase Management and Contract Management

The tabular below gives a quick view of the features available in the editions,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Incident Management</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>YES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priority Matrix</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>YES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Problem Management</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>YES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change Management</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ADD-ON</td>
<td>YES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asset Management</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>YES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software License Management</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>YES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purchase Management</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>YES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contract Management</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>YES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desktop Central Integration</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>YES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service Catalog</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ADD-ON</td>
<td>YES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration Management Database (CMDB)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ADD-ON</td>
<td>YES</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Contacting ZOHO Corporation

- Contact Information
- Sales
- Technical Support

Contact Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Web site</th>
<th><a href="http://www.zohocorp.com">www.zohocorp.com</a></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ZOHO Corporation</td>
<td>4900 Hopyard Rd., Suite 310, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Phone:</strong></td>
<td>+1-925-924-9500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fax:</strong></td>
<td>+1-925-924-9600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E-mail Address:</strong></td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@manageengine.com">info@manageengine.com</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Corporate Office</th>
<th>ZOHO Corporation Private Limited</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DLF IT Park, Block 7, Ground Floor, No. 1/124, Shivaji Garden, Nandambakkam Post, Mount PH Road, Ramapuram, Chennai 600 089</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Phone:</strong></td>
<td>+91-44-22707070</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fax:</strong></td>
<td>+91-44-22707172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E-mail Address:</strong></td>
<td><a href="mailto:info@manageengine.com">info@manageengine.com</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Zoho Corporation Pte Ltd</th>
<th>C/o Cananex Singapore Pte Ltd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Block 1003 Bukit Merah Central #05-23, Inno-Center, Singapore 159836</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Main Line:</strong></td>
<td>63344486</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fax:</strong></td>
<td>62819188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mobile:</strong></td>
<td>97552882</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Contact Person:</strong></td>
<td>Ong Yang Peng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E-mail Address:</strong></td>
<td><a href="mailto:yangpeng.ong@cananex.com.sg">yangpeng.ong@cananex.com.sg</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sales

For purchasing ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus from any part of the world, fill out the Sales Request Form. A sales person will contact you shortly. You can also send us e-mail at sales@manageengine.com
You can also call the corporate office of ZOHO Corporation at the following numbers:

**Phone:** +1-925-924-9500  
**Fax:** +1-925-924-9600 and request for Sales

**Technical Support**

One of the value propositions of ZOHO Corporation to its customers is excellent support. During the evaluation phase, the support program is extended to users free of charge.

For support, please mail to servicedeskplus-support@manageengine.com

Alternatively, you can submit your feedback from the ServiceDesk Plus product by clicking the **Feedback** link at the top right corner just above the header tabs after logging in to the application. Your feedback will be sent to the ServiceDesk Plus Support Team and they will get in touch with you. Do not forget to provide your e-mail address or your contact information for the team to get in touch with you.
Installation Guide

Introduction

The *ServiceDesk Plus Installation Guide* help you overcome the initial hiccups of installing ServiceDesk Plus successfully and starting ServiceDesk Plus as a service. This guide also provides step-by-step instructions for setting up your database, performing a manual backup, restoration of the backup data, changing your server port to HTTPS and installing SSL Certificate.
System Requirements

Hardware

The following table lists the hardware installation according to the number of Technician Login.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Technician Login</th>
<th>No of Nodes</th>
<th>Processor Type</th>
<th>Processor Speed</th>
<th>RAM</th>
<th>Free Hard Disk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5-20</td>
<td>50-200</td>
<td>Intel Core Duo</td>
<td>1.7 GHz</td>
<td>1GB</td>
<td>20GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20-50</td>
<td>200-500</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.4 GHz</td>
<td>2GB</td>
<td>40GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50-100</td>
<td>500-2000</td>
<td></td>
<td>2*3.4 GHz</td>
<td>4GB</td>
<td>40GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100-200</td>
<td>1000-5000</td>
<td></td>
<td>4*3.4 GHz</td>
<td>4GB</td>
<td>80GB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Operating System

Windows

- Windows 2000 + SP4
- Windows 2000 / 2003 Server
- Windows XP Professional
- Windows 2008 Server
- Windows 7

Linux

- Red Hat Linux 7.2 and above
- Linux Debian 3.0

Supported Database

- MySQL 4.1.18
- MySQL 5.1
- MS SQL 2000, MS SQL 2005, MS SQL 2008
Install ServiceDesk Plus

Installation Files

The types of installation files for ServiceDesk Plus are,

**Windows**
- ManageEngine_ServiceDesk_Plus.exe
- ManageEngine_ServiceDesk_Plus_64bit.exe (for 64 bit Windows OS)

**Linux**
- ManageEngine_ServiceDesk_Plus.bin
- ManageEngine_ServiceDesk_Plus_64bit.bin (for 64 bit Linux OS)

**Upgrade Service Pack**
- ManageEngine_ServiceDesk_Plus_<latest_version>_SP-<build_number>.ppm

Click here to download your appropriate installation file.
Installation on Windows

To install ServiceDesk Plus on a Windows machine,

2. Click the .exe file to begin the installation. The ServiceDesk Plus installation wizard appears.
3. Click Next to proceed with the installation.

4. The License Agreement is displayed. Please read the license agreement carefully. You need to accept the license agreement to proceed with the installation.
5. Click Yes to accept.
   - **Professional Edition** - This edition offers Software Compliance & License Tracking, Product Catalog, NMS Integration, Asset Reports and few other asset related process along with the features of Standard Edition.
   - **Enterprise Edition** - This is an ITIL ready help desk. It includes all features of Professional Edition plus Incident Management, Problem Management, Change Management & Configuration Management Database (CMDB).

You can also refer the document ServiceDesk Plus Edition Comparison to choose your required edition.

7. If you have selected Standard Edition or the Professional Edition, then the Version Selection Panel displays options to select either the Trail Version or the Free Version.
   - The **Trial Version** is valid for 30 days and allows 2 technician logins with 200 nodes. You need to apply a valid license key to continue using ServiceDesk Plus.

Zoho Corporation
8. If you have selected Enterprise Edition, then the Version Selection Panel displays only the 30 days Trial Version with 5 Technician login and up to 200 Nodes. You need to apply a valid license to continue using ServiceDesk Plus. Refer Register ServiceDesk Plus to apply the license key.

9. The next step is choosing the installation directory. By default, the application is installed in C:\ManageEngine\ServiceDesk directory.

Click Browse... button to change the installation directory. Choose the installation folder and click OK.
NOTE: Please make sure that the installation directory or its parent directories do not have any space character in its name.

10. Click **Next**.
11. Provide a name that needs to appear in the **Program Folders**. By default, it is **ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus**. Click **Next**.
12. Enter the **Web Server Port Number** to run the web server. The default port number provided is **8080**. If you already have another application running in that port, then enter the port number which is free and can be used to run the web server.

![](image)

13. Click **Next**.
14. Choose the **Database** between **MySQL** and **MS SQL**. By default **ServiceDesk Plus** supports **MySQL database**. To switch over to **MS SQL database** you need to...
configure the SQL server to establish connection and start the server. Enter the database details as given below,

- **Host Name**: Enter the IP Address/host name in which the database is available. The default host name is ‘localhost’.
- **Port**: Specify the port in the given text field. The default value is 1433.
- **Database**: By default the database name will be Servicedesk in non-editable format.
- **User Name**: Specify the user name to login to the server in the given text field.
- **Password**: Specify the password for the username in the given text field.

**NOTE**: To switch over to SQL database, you need to enable SQL authentication as Windows authentication will not work.

15. Click **Next**.
16. The **Registration for Technical Support** form is for acquiring technical assistance from our support team. By registering for technical support, our support team will be better informed about your organization and its specific needs, and hence provide a more focused support. Enter your details such as **Name**, contact **Email Address**, **Phone Number** (helps in making calls for immediate support), **Company Name** and **Country**. The Email Address is a mandatory field.

*Zoho Corporation*
17. Click **Next**.
18. The details that you have provided till now is displayed for your confirmation:

**Installation Directory:** C:\ManageEngine\ServiceDesk  
**Folder Name:** ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus  
**Web Server Port:** 8080

If the displayed information is correct, then click the **Next** button, or else click the **Back** button and make the necessary changes and proceed with the installation.

19. After you confirm the details, the application is installed.
20. On successful installation, the InstallShield Wizard Complete screen is displayed. By default, the option to start ServiceDesk Server is enabled. If you do not want to start ServiceDesk Plus Server, then deselect the options.

21. Click Finish to complete the installation. The ReadMe document is displayed in a pop up window.

If you had followed the instructions in the wizard and installed the application with the default settings, then the ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus program group is created in the Start menu. If you chose to start ServiceDesk Server, then the server is started and the client window opens to view the login page. Enter the Username and Password as "administrator" to log into the application.
Installation on Linux

- Install ServiceDesk Plus on a Linux machine
- Install ServiceDesk Plus on a Linux machine without GUI
- Install ServiceDesk Plus as a Linux Service

**Install ServiceDesk Plus on a Linux machine**

2. To execute .bin type files, you require the execute permission. Enter the command as given below in your command prompt.
   ```bash
   #chmod +x ManageEngine_ServiceDesk_Plus_x_Linux.bin
   ```
3. Execute the .bin file.
   ```bash
   ./ManageEngine_ServiceDesk_Plus.bin
   ```
4. The **ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus Installation Wizard** is displayed. Click **Next** to proceed with the installation.

![ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus Installation Wizard](image)
5. The **License Agreement** is displayed. Please read the license agreement carefully. You need to accept the license agreement to proceed with the installation.

6. Click **Yes** to accept the license agreement.

7. Select the **ServiceDesk Plus Edition** to install.
   - **Standard Edition**: This edition offers Help Desk Management, Self-Service Portal, Knowledge Base, SLA Management and Help Desk Report to help you manage and track your requests.
   - **Professional Edition**: This edition offers Software Compliance & License Tracking, Product Catalog, NMS Integration, Asset Reports and few other asset related process along with the features of Standard Edition.
   - **Enterprise Edition**: This is an ITIL ready help desk. It includes all features of Professional Edition plus Incident Management, Problem Management, Change Management and Configuration Management Database (CMDB).

   You can also refer the document ServiceDesk Plus Edition Comparison to choose your required edition.

8. If you have selected Standard Edition or the Professional Edition, then the **Version Selection Panel** displays options to select either the **Trial Version** or the **Free Version**.
   - The **Trial Version** is valid for 30 days and allows 2 technician logins with 200 nodes. You need to apply a valid license key to continue using ServiceDesk Plus.
   - The **Free Version**, on the other hand, never expires and can be used for unlimited time period without applying a valid license key. But the free version is restricted to a single technician login with 25 nodes.

9. If you have selected Enterprise Edition, then the **Version Selection Panel** displays only the 30 days Trial Version with 5 Technician login and up to 200 Nodes. You need to apply a valid license to continue using ServiceDesk Plus. Refer Register ServiceDesk Plus to apply the license key.

10. The next step is choosing the installation directory. By default, the application is installed in `home/<user>/ManageEngine/ServiceDesk` directory. If you want to change the installation directory, then click the **Browse** button and choose the installation folder. Click OK.

11. Click **Next**.

12. Enter the **Web Server Port Number** to run the web server. The default port number provided is 8080. If you already have another application running in that port, then enter the port number which is free and can be used to run the web server. Click **Next**.

   **NOTE**: If you want to provide a port number lesser than 1024 as the web server port, then you need to be the super-user of the system to successfully install and run ServiceDesk Plus application.

13. The **Registration for Technical Support** form is for obtaining technical assistance from our support team. By registering for technical support, our support team will be better informed about your organization and its specific needs, and hence provide a more focused support. Enter your details such as **Name**, contact **Email Address**, **Phone Number** (helps in making calls for
immediate support), **Company Name** and **Country**. The Email Address is a mandatory field. Click **Next**.

14. The details that you have provided till now are displayed for your confirmation.

**Installation Directory:** `home/<user>/ManageEngine/ServiceDesk`

**Product Size:** *62.8 MB*

If the displayed information is correct, then click the **Next** button, or else click the **Back** button and make the necessary changes and proceed with the installation.

15. After you confirm the above details, the application is installed.

16. On successful installation, the **InstallShield Wizard Complete** screen is displayed. By default, the option to view the ReadMe file is enabled. If you do not wish to view the ReadMe file, deselect the check box.

17. Click **Finish** to complete the installation.

**Install ServiceDesk Plus on a Linux machine without GUI**

1. Download **ManageEngine_ServiceDesk_Plus.bin** file.
2. To execute .bin type files, you require the execute permission. Enter the command as given below in your command prompt.
3. Execute the .bin file.

```shell
./ManageEngine_ServiceDesk_Plus.bin -console
```

4. Follow with the on-screen instructions to proceed with the installation.

Install ServiceDesk Plus as a Linux Service

1. **Download** the servicedesk.txt file from here.
2. Copy the `servicedesk.txt` to `/etc/init.d/`

```bash
# cp servicedesk.txt /etc/init.d/servicedesk
```
3. **Edit** the servicedesk file to modify the MDIR Variable. MDIR refers to /bin. Typically, if you have installed ServiceDesk Plus as a guest user, then MDIR will be,

`MDIR=/home/guest/ManageEngine/ServiceDesk/bin`

**NOTE:** To edit the servicedesk file type `#vi servicedesk.txt`

4. Give executable permissions for servicedesk startup script.

`# chmod 755 /etc/init.d/servicedesk`

5. Create a blank file under /var/log for logging purposes.

`# touch /var/log/servicedesk-plus.log`

6. Use chkconfig command to add the script as a startup process.

`# chkconfig --add servicedesk`
Upgrade Service Pack

- Upgrade Service Pack on Windows
- Upgrade Service Pack on Linux
  - Apply patch from console or command line

Upgrade Service Pack on Windows

To upgrade to the latest version and build of ServiceDesk Plus,
1. Stop ManageEngine ServiceDesk service.
2. Take a backup of the existing build for security reasons. Refer Backup Process to know how to take a backup of your data.
   
   **NOTE:** Taking a backup is essential to revert to the existing build without any loss of data if the upgrade fails due to unexpected reasons. The backup is stored under Backup folder in ServiceDesk Plus Home directory.
3. Click here to download the latest hotfix or the .ppm file.
4. Go to [ServiceDesk Plus Home]\bin and execute the file `UpdateManager.bat`.
   ```
cmd> UpdateManager.bat
   ```
5. A Java UI pops up where you can browse for the location of the .ppm file and click install to start the installation process.
NOTE: If you are planning on performing multiple upgrades, please make sure to start and stop the application once after successfully applying a service pack, make a backup of this upgraded version and then proceed with the next service pack.

Upgrade Service Pack on Linux

2. Take a backup of the existing build for security reasons. Refer Backup Process to know how to take a backup of your data.
3. Click here to download the latest hotfix or the .ppm file.
4. Run the script UpdateManager.sh in the <ServiceDesk_Plus_Home>/bin folder.
5. From the Update Manager tool click Browse button to select the Service Pack file (ManageEngine_ServiceDesk_Plus__0_0_SP-x_0.ppm) that you had downloaded.
6. Click Install.... Follow the on-screen instructions to apply the Service Pack / Hotfix.
7. Once the upgrade is complete, start ServiceDesk Plus Server.

Apply patch from console or command line

To install a patch from console or command line,

Easiest option:

```
sh UpdateManager.sh -c
```

And it will guide the user through the steps.

Here are the other options:

```
sh UpdateManager.sh -u server/default/conf -c -option i -ppmPath <Patch file path including patch file name> -h <Product Home>
```

To un-install a patch: sh UpdateManager.sh -u server/default/conf -c -option u -h <Product Home> -version <Patch version>

To view installed patch versions: sh UpdateManager.sh -u server/default/conf -c -option v -h <Product Home>

To run UPDATEMANGER.bat from konsole mode: UpdateManager.sh -c -option i ppmPath <Path where PPM is downloaded> -h C:\ManageEngine\ServiceDesk
Start ServiceDesk Plus Server

- Start ServiceDesk Plus Server on Windows
- Start ServiceDesk Plus Server on Linux

Start ServiceDesk Plus Server on Windows

1. Click Start -> Programs -> ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus -> ServiceDesk Server to start the web server. This takes approximately 2 minutes in a Windows XP, 512 MB RAM, and 1.0 GHZ processor. The server is started and the web client is launched in the default browser.
2. If the web client is not launched automatically, then click Start -> Programs -> ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus -> ServiceDesk Web Client to start the web client. The ServiceDesk Plus login page in opened in the default web browser.
3. Enter the User name as "administrator" and the Password as "administrator" to log in to ServiceDesk Plus.

As soon as you login, the Configuration Wizard home page is displayed. Click Next button to proceed with the configurations. Refer Admin Configurations in the Admin Guide to know how to configure ServiceDesk Plus.

Start ServiceDesk Plus Server on Linux

1. Go to <ServiceDesk Plus>/bin directory and execute the run.sh file

    $ sh run.sh

2. To start the web client, open a web browser and type the following in the address field.

    http://localhost:8080

Here, you need to replace the localhost with the corresponding server name where the ServiceDesk Plus web server is running and the port number 8080 should be replaced with the actual port where the server is running. The ServiceDesk Plus login page opens in the default web browser.
3. Enter the User name as "administrator" and the Password as "administrator" to login to ServiceDesk Plus.

As soon as you login, the Configuration Wizard home page is displayed. Click Next button to proceed with the configurations. Refer Admin Configurations in the Admin Guide to know how to configure ServiceDesk Plus.
Register ServiceDesk Plus

Once your trial evaluation period is over, you need to apply a valid license key to continue using ServiceDesk Plus. Please contact our sales team at sales@manageengine.com for a valid license key. Upon receiving the license file, you can register ServiceDesk Plus.

To register ServiceDesk Plus,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the **User name** and **Password** of an admin user.
2. Click **Help** drop down menu -> select **License** option. The **License** window is opened.
3. Click the **Browse** button to locate the license file sent to you when you purchased the application.
4. From the file chooser window, select the license file and click **Open**.
5. Click **Upgrade**.

The registration of the ServiceDesk Plus application is complete. You can continue using the application.
Shutdown ServiceDesk Plus Server

- Shutdown ServiceDesk Plus on Windows
- Shutdown ServiceDesk Plus on Linux

Shutdown ServiceDesk Plus on Windows

1. Click **Start -> Programs -> ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus -> Shutdown ServiceDesk**. A confirmation message is displayed.
2. Click **OK** to proceed with the shutdown.

Alternatively, right-click on the system tray icon and select **Shut down Server**. A confirmation message is displayed. Click **OK** to shut down ServiceDesk Plus.

Shutdown ServiceDesk Plus on Linux

Execute `shutdown.sh` file from the bin directory as given below,

```
sh shutdown.sh -S
```
Configure the Database

- Configure the Database
  - Configuring MS SQL Server
  - Configuring MY SQL Server
- Non GUI Users
- Connect to My SQL Server
- Troubleshooting Tips

Configure the Database

By default ServiceDesk plus supports MY SQL database to switch over to SQL database you need to configure SQL server to establish connection and start the server. Configuring MS SQL Server

1. Execute the changeDBServer.bat [changeDBServer.sh for Linux] file presented under the ServiceDesk Home. This opens the Database Setup Wizard page. Fill in the details of the form to configure SQL server.
   - Server Type: Select the server type from the combo box. Say, MS SQL
   - Host Name: Enter the IP Address/ host name in which the database is available. The default host name is 'localhost'.
   - Port: Specify the Port. The default port is 1433.
   - Database: By default the database name will be servicedesk in non-editable format.
   - User Name: Specify the User Name to login to the server
   - Password: Specify the Password.

![Database Setup Wizard](image.png)
2. To check the availability of connection, click the **Test** button. A pop up window pops up showing **'Connection Established'** message.

3. Click **OK** to proceed.
4. Click **Save** button to save the SQL server settings.

### Configuring MYSQL Server

1. If you are using a remote MySQL server and do not want to use the inbuilt server then,
2. Select **Server Type** as MySQL server. This opens the database wizard page.
3. Specify the **Host Name, Port, User Name & Password**.
4. Click **Test** button and check the availability of the connection.
5. Once the **connections are established, save** the details and start the server.

### Non GUI Users

Run the `changeDBServer.bat` [*changeDBServer.sh for Linux*] under command prompt by passing parameter as given below,

```shell
C:\[ServiceDesk Plus Home]\bin>changeDBServer.bat --console
```

It will get the DB Server necessary information from the console

```
Usage : changeDBServer.bat --console [for non GUI user]
Usage : changeDBServer.bat [for GUI user]
```

```shell
requestScheme is http
******************************************************************************
DB Server Setup wizard
******************************************************************************
1) Setup MYSQL Server
2) Setup MSSQL Server
3) Quit
Go to [1/2/3] : 1
Host : localhost
Port : 33066
User : root
Password :
```

### Connect to MY SQL Server

ServiceDesk Plus uses MYSQL as its default database.
Connect to MYSQL Server in Windows

1. Go to [ServiceDesk Plus Home] \ mysql \ bin in the command prompt.
   C:\> cd ManageEngine\ServiceDesk\mysql\bin

2. Enter the command: mysql.exe -u root -P 33366 servicedesk
   C:\> cd ManageEngine\ServiceDesk\mysql\bin> mysql.exe -u root -P 33366 servicedesk

**ServiceDesk** is the name of the database. **33366** is the port on which ServiceDesk Plus database runs. ServiceDesk Plus uses root account to connect to the database and does not use any password. You can connect to MYSQL database only from the server console.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>C:&gt;cd ManageEngine\ServiceDesk\mysql\bin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G:\ManageEngine\ServiceDesk\mysql\bin&gt;mysql.exe -u root -P 33366 servicedesk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \g.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Your MySQL connection id is 8 to server version: 4.1.18-pro-nt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mysql&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Connect to MYSQL Server in Linux

1. Install the MYSQL client which supports your Linux version.
2. Once this is accomplished, make sure that the command "mysql" is in path. (Most often, mysql should be under path, if not, you may add the complete path to mysql command under PATH variable in the bashrc file.
3. Go to [ServiceDesk Plus Home] \ mysql \ bin in the command prompt.
   # cd [ServiceDesk Plus Home]/mysql/bin

1. Enter the command: # mysql -u root -S ../tmp/mysql.sock servicedesk 

| [root@sdp-linux64 bin]# mysql -u root -S ../tmp/mysql.sock servicedesk -i |
| Welcome to the MySQL monitor. Commands end with ; or \g. |
| Your MySQL connection id is 4 |
| Server version: 4.1.18-pro |
| Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the buffer. |
| mysql> select * from workorder; |
| Empty set (0.00 sec) |
| mysql> exit |
| Bye |
| [root@sdp-linux64 bin]# |
Troubleshooting Tips

**MY SQL Connection Resolution**

Verify the following,

- Check if MY SQL server is running.
- Check if the server name or the port number is misspelled or incorrect.
- If the MY SQL server is running in a remote machine then there may be a firewall blocking the port number you have entered.
- If none of the above mentioned issues matches then contact your system administrator.

**MS SQL Connection Resolution**

If a connection is refused and an exception is thrown by SQL Server as 'unable to connect the server' then there could be following reasons why this could happen such as,

- The server name is misspelled or the port number is incorrect
- The SQL server may not be configured to use TCP/IP. In this case, enable TCP/IP from SQL server's network utility application.
- If there is a firewall blocking the port 1433 on the server then you will not be able to connect to the server.
- To confirm the firewall block connect to TCP/IP use "telnet<server_host>1433"\n to confirm the block.
- SQL Server Instance is not currently supported by ServiceDesk and will be available in the feature release. You can also connect to SQL Server named instance once if you know the machine name and port of the named instance.
- Create new user with full privileges as shown below,
While configuring SQL server properties select the authentication type as SQL server as shown below. Windows authentication is not supported by ServiceDesk Plus currently.
Installing SSL Certificate

- Introduction
- Steps to install SSL in ServiceDesk Plus
- Install a .P7b Certificate
- Commands to install certificates of some common vendors

Introduction

ServiceDesk Plus can run as a HTTPS service. But it requires a **SSL (Secure Socket Layer) Certificate** signed by a valid Certificate Authority (CA).

By default, on first time start-up, it creates a self-signed certificate. This self-signed certificate will not be trusted by the user browsers. Thus, while connecting to ServiceDesk Plus, you need to manually verify the certificate information and the hostname of ServiceDesk Plus server carefully and should force the browser to accept the certificate.

To make ServiceDesk Plus server identify itself correctly to the web browser and the user, you need to obtain a new signed certificate from a CA for the ServiceDesk Plus host. You can use keytool (bundled with Java) to create your certificates, get them signed by a CA and use them with ServiceDesk Plus.

Steps to install SSL in ServiceDesk Plus

The steps involved in configuring ServiceDesk Plus to use the SSL are as given below.

- **Step 1:** Create a Keystore file
- **Step 2:** Create .CSR (Certificate Signing Request) file
- **Step 3:** Install your SSL Certificate
- **Step 4:** Configuring the Server

**NOTE:** In all the images, replace the highlighted text with the alias name you want to use for the SDP

**Step 1: Create a Keystore file**

Before requesting for a certificate from a CA, you need to create tomcat specific ".keystore" file and ".csr" file. The .keystore file and .csr file will include information provided by the individual who creates the .keystore and .csr files.
To create the .keystore file follow the below steps,

1. Open the Command Prompt.
2. From the location `<installation directory> \ jre \ bin` execute the command

   \texttt{keytool -genkey -alias <your\_alias\_name> or [Domain Name] -keyalg RSA -keystore sdp.keystore}

3. If your vendor requires a \textbf{CSR of size 2048} please use the command given below.

   \texttt{keytool -genkey -alias <your\_alias\_name> or [Domain Name] -keyalg RSA -keysize 2048 -keystore sdp.keystore}
4. You will then be prompted to choose a password for your keystore.

**NOTE:** Please note that the Password should not contain $ symbol.

5. When it asks for first and last name, this is NOT your first and last name, but rather it is your **Fully Qualified Domain Name** for the site you are securing.

6. If you are ordering a **Wildcard Certificate** this must begin with the * character.
7. On entering the required information, confirm that the information is correct by entering ‘y’ or ‘yes’ when prompted.

8. At the end of executing the above command, you will be prompted to enter keystore password. Try giving the password same as your key password. Make sure to remember the password you choose.

9. Your keystore file named sdp.keystore is now created in your current working directory.

**NOTE:** We request you to make a backup copy of the sdp.keystore file before installing the Certs. This backed up keystore can be used if the certificate installation goes wrong or when you renew your certificates the next year.

**Step 2: Creating .CSR (Certificate Signing Request) file**

The .CSR (Certificate Signing Request) file is temporary and should be submitted to a CA to receive **CA-Signed Certificate** files.

Please follow the steps given below to create the CSR file.

1. Open the Command Prompt
2. From the location `<installation directory> \ jre \ bin` execute the below command.

```
keytool -certreq -alias <your_alias_name> -file key.csr -keystore sdp.keystore
```

In the above command `<your_alias_name>` is the alias name provided when creating the keystore, `key.csr` is the name of the CSR file that will be created after the command is executed.
Step 3: Install your SSL Certificate

Download the Certificate files received from the CA via e-mail to the directory where your keystore (sdp.keystore) was saved during the CSR creation process. The certificates must be installed to this exact keystore. If you try to install it to a different keystore it will not work.

The certificates you had downloaded must be installed to your keystore in the correct order for your certificate to be trusted. If the certificates are not installed in the correct order, then the certificate will not authenticate properly. To find the correct order, double click on the domain certificate and then go to ‘Certification Path’.
These certificates are usually in the format .cer or .crt. If your certificate is with the extension .p7b please follow the instructions given in **Installing a .P7b Certificate** to export the certs to a .cer or .crt format.

Looking at the above certification path we can infer that we need to import two other certificates before the domain certificate. First is the **Root**, next the **Intermediate** and finally the **Domain Certificate**. Some CAs may also use another certificate called **Cross Intermediate**. These certificates can be downloaded from the Vendor’s website.

**Installing the Root Certificate file**

Each time you install a certificate to your keystore you will be prompted for the keystore password, which you chose while generating your CSR. Type the following command to install the Root certificate file:

```
keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias root -file <File_Name>.crt -keystore sdp.keystore
```

**NOTE:** Choose ‘Yes’ if you get prompted with a message that says "Certificate already exists in system-wide CA keystore under alias <Alias Name> Do you still want to add it to your own keystore? [no]:"

You will get a confirmation stating that the "Certificate was added to keystore".

```
C:\ManageEngine\ServiceDesk\jre\bin>keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias root -file sdp_root_cert.crt -keystore sdp.keystore
Enter keystore password: sdp123
Certificate already exists in keystore under alias <root>
Do you still want to add it? [no]: Yes
Certificate was added to keystore
```

**Install the Intermediate Certificates and Cross Intermediate Certificates (if any).**

Follow the instructions provided by the CA.

```
keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias intermediate -file <File_Name>.crt -keystore sdp.keystore
```

---

*Zoho Corporation*
keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias cross -file <File_Name>.crt -keystore sdp.keystore

You will get a confirmation stating that the "Certificate was added to keystore".

Install the Primary or the Domain Certificate file

Type the following command to install the Primary certificate file:

keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias <your_alias_name or [Domain Name]> -file your_domain_name.crt -keystore sdp.keystore

Please note that <your_alias_name or [Domain Name]> should be replaced with the alias name provided when creating the keystore (as discussed in Step 1). This time you will get a different confirmation stating that the “Certificate reply was installed in keystore”.

```
Certificate was added to keystore
Certificate was added to keystore
Certificate was added to keystore
Certificate reply was installed in keystore
```
If you want to trust the certificate, then choose y or yes. Your Certificates are now installed to your keystore file (sdp.keystore).

**Step 4: Configuring the Server**

1. Copy the sdp.keystore file from `<ServiceDesk_Home>\jre\bin` to `<ServiceDesk_Home>\server\default\conf`

2. From the command prompt, execute `changeWebServerPort.bat` script to change the connection mode to HTTPS.

   ```
   Cmd>[ServiceDesk Plus Home]\bin> changeWebServerPort.bat
   <WEBSERVER_PORT> https
   ```

3. Finally, update the name of the keystore and the password, you gave in Step 1, while generating sdp.keystore in the file `server.xml` present under `<ServiceDesk_Home>\server\default\deploy\jbossweb-tomcat50.sar`

   ```xml
   <!-- SSL/TLS Connector configuration using the admin devl guide keystore-->
   <Connector URIEncoding="UTF-8" address="${jboss.bind.address}" clientAuth="false" compression="on" compressionMinSize="2048" keystoreFile="${jboss.server.home.dir}/conf/sdp.keystore" keystorePass="adp123" maxPostSize="-1" maxSpareThreads="15" maxThreads="100" minSpareThreads="5" noCompressionUserAgents="gozilla, traviata" port="443" scheme="https" secure="true" sslProtocol="TLS"/>
   ```
4. Restart the service ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus for the changes to take effect.

Install a .P7b Certificate

Some CA will provide the certificates with an extension .p7b. In such a case you can double click on this file to open a console which will list all the required certificates. You can export these certificates to Base-64 encoded X.509 (.cer) files. *(Please refer to the Screenshots given below).*

These certs can then be installed onto the keystore file using the instructions given in Step 3.

To export the certificate,

1. Go to `[ServiceDesk Plus Home] \ jre \ bin \ domain.P7B`. 
2. Right click on the certificate and select **All Tasks** -&gt; **Export** option.

![Certificate Export Wizard](image1.png)

3. The Certificate Export Wizard dialog pops up. Click **Next** button to proceed.

![Certificate Export Wizard](image2.png)
4. Select the export file format as **Base-64 encoded X.509 (.cer)**. Click **Next**.

5. Specify the name of the file you want to export. Click **Next**.
6. The certificate export wizard is completed successfully. You can check for the settings you have specified. Click **Finish**.

![Certificate Export Wizard](image)

7. A success message appears in a dialog box. Click **OK**.

![Certificate Export Wizard](image)
Commands to install certificates of some common vendors

Please find below the commands you need to use to install certificates of some common vendors.

**NOTE:** These instructions might change depending on the Certificates issued by the CA.

**GoDaddy**
If your CA is "GoDaddy", then the steps to follow will be:

```
keytool -import -alias root -keystore <Keystore_Name>.keystore -trustcacerts -file gd_bundle.crt
keytool -import -alias cross -keystore <Keystore_Name>.keystore -trustcacerts -file gd_cross_intermediate.crt
keytool -import -alias intermediate -keystore <Keystore_Name>.keystore -trustcacerts -file gd_intermediate.crt
keytool -import -alias <Alias Specified when creating the Keystore> -keystore <Keystore_Name>.keystore -trustcacerts -file <CertificateName>.crt
```

**Verisign**
If your CA is "Verisign", then the steps to follow will be:

```
keytool -import -alias intermediateCA -keystore <Keystore_Name>.keystore -trustcacerts -file <your_intermediate_certificate_name>.cer
keytool -import -alias <Alias Specified when creating the Keystore> -keystore <Keystore_Name>.keystore -trustcacerts -file <CertificateName>.cer
```

**Comodo**
If your CA is "Comodo", then the steps to follow will be:

```
keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias root -file AddTrustExternalCARoot.crt -keystore <Keystore_Name>.keystore
keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias addtrust -file UTNAddTrustServerCA.crt -keystore <Keystore_Name>.keystore
keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias ComodoUTNServer -file ComodoUTNServerCA.crt -keystore <Keystore_Name>.keystore
keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias essentialSSL -file essentialSSLCA.crt -keystore <Keystore_Name>.keystore
keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias <Alias Specified when creating the Keystore> -file <Certificate-Name>.crt -keystore <Keystore_Name>.keystore
```
Renew SSL Certificate

In order to use the renewed certificate, you need to have taken a backup of the existing keystore file (created while configuring the SSL), which was taken before the installation of any certs. If this file is present, then you can replace this file in the [ServiceDesk Home]\jre\bin folder and follow the instructions from Step 3: Install your SSL Certificate.

If you do not have a backup of the keystore file, then you need to start from scratch i.e., from Step 1, and get the certificates reissued for the new CSR (Certificate Signing Request).

You can use the following command to get the list of certificates installed in the keystore.

**Keytool.exe**  **-list**  **-keystore**  **sdp.keystore**

Below is an example of how a keystore looks before installing any Certificates. It will only have the keyEntry.

```
C:\ManageEngine\ServiceDesk\jre\bin>keytool.exe -list -keystore sdp.keystore
Enter keystore password: sdp123
Keystore type: jks
Keystore provider: SUN
Your keystore contains 1 entry
helpdesk.manageengine.com, Aug 13, 2011, keyEntry,
C:\ManageEngine\ServiceDesk\jre\bin>
```
Installing .PFX Certificate

.PFX is an extension for security certificate. It defines a file format that stores private keys (generated by your server at the time the CSR was generated) and public key certificate (your SSL Certificate provided by the CA) in a single encrypted file.

To install a certificate with the extension .PFX,

2. Copy the .pfx file to the location C:\ManageEngine\ServiceDesk\server\default\conf (where C: is the drive in which ServiceDesk Plus is installed)
3. Change the web server port to 443 to run ServiceDesk Plus on secure mode. To change the web server port, open the command prompt and go to [ServiceDesk Plus Home]\bin. Enter the command as given below,

[ServiceDesk Plus Home]\bin> changewebserverport.bat 443 https

4. Go to the location [ServiceDesk Plus Home]\server\default\deploy\jbossweb-tomcat50.sar and open the file 'server.xml' in a word pad.
5. Locate the below entries in the file.

```xml
<!-- SSL/TLS Connector configuration using the admin devl guide keystore
<Connector port="8443" address="${jboss.bind.address}"
    maxThreads="100" minSpareThreads="5" maxSpareThreads="15"
    scheme="https" secure="true" clientAuth="false"
    keystoreFile="${jboss.server.home.dir}/conf/sdp.keystore"
    keystorePass="sdpsecured" sslProtocol = "TLS" />
```

Zoho Corporation
6. Please replace the file name `sdp.keystore` with the pfx file name (name.pfx) and enter the `keystoreType="pkcs12"` after the file name. Also replace the 'sdpsecured' with the password for the .pfx file.

7. The entries should look like this,

<!-- SSL/TLS Connector configuration using the admin devl guide keystore
 <Connector port="8443" address="${jboss.bind.address}"
     maxThreads="100" minSpareThreads="5"
     maxSpareThreads="15"
     scheme="https" secure="true" clientAuth="false"
     keystoreFile="${jboss.server.home.dir}/conf/name.pfx"
     keystoreType="pkcs12" keystorePass="your password" sslProtocol = "TLS" />

8. **Restart** ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus service.
Uninstalling ServiceDesk Plus

- Uninstall ServiceDesk Plus on Windows
- Uninstall ServiceDesk Plus on Linux

Uninstall ServiceDesk Plus on Windows

1. Click **Start -> Programs -> ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus -> Uninstall ServiceDesk.**

Uninstall ServiceDesk Plus on Linux

1. Go to `<ServiceDesk>/_uninst` directory.
2. Execute `uninstaller.bin` as below:
   
   $ ./uninstaller.bin
Home Page

The home page of ServiceDesk Plus has various useful information displayed that enables an administrator or a technician to take necessary action.

The user you are logged in as is the **Administrator** and the following are available in home page,

1. My View
2. Scheduler
3. Quick Create - New Incident
4. Search
5. Recent Items
6. Personalize
7. Quick Actions drop-down menu
8. Request Catalog drop-down menu, OR

   Incident Catalog drop-down menu

   Service Catalog drop-down menu

If you are on a Trial version, then the following links will appear along with the above,

1. License Expiry Alert
2. Get Quote
My View

The **My View** tab displays the following information,

- My Approvals
- My Summary
- My Tasks
- Announcements

**My Approvals**

This block lists all the approval actions to be taken by you for a service request and purchase order. To approve or reject, click **Take Actions** button. The approval for service requests and purchase orders are listed only if you have the approval permission.

**My Summary**

This block displays the summary of requests, problem and changes assigned to the logged in technician.

- **Request Overdue** - Number of requests assigned to the logged in technician that are overdue.
- **Requests Due Today** - Number of requests assigned to the logged in technician that are due for that day.
- **Pending Requests** - Number of pending requests that are assigned to the technician.
- **Approved Changes** - Number of changes assigned to the logged in technician that are approved.
- **Unapproved Changes** - Number of changes assigned to the logged in technician that are unapproved.
- **Pending Problems** - Number of Open problems assigned to the logged in technician.
- **Unassigned Problems** - Number of problems that are unassigned to technicians.

**Scheduler**

**Scheduler** gives a calendar view of the number of open requests, problems, changes, task and reminder for a technician in a given month. Using the Technician Availability Chart, the availability of a technician on a given date can be viewed, based on which requests can be assigned to other technicians (backup technicians).

- **My Scheduler**
- **Technician Availability Chart**

**Quick Create - New Incident**

**Quick Create - New Incident** is an instant mode to create new incident when you are on a call with a requester. You can either conduct a search for the requester using the
**Requester List** icon or you can enter the name of the requester in the field provided. Next, all you need to do is enter Request Title and Description. If you require additional details such as category, priority or assign a technician, click **Add More Details >>** link. This takes you to the New Incident form.

**NOTE:** The Quick Create - New Incident section is available only when 'Quick Create Settings' option is enabled in the Self-Service Portal Settings.

---

**Search**

You can search for Requests, Archived Requests, Problem, Change, Assets, Workstation, Software, Purchase, Contract, Solutions, System Log and Requester from the home page. You can further enhance the request search by drilling it down to sub modules. You can search for notes, work log, resolution and request ID. Conducting a search using the request ID takes you to the request details page of the specified request ID.
Recent Items

While using ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus, the application tracks your last viewed items and lists them in the Recent Items block. The items can comprise of requests, problems, changes, solution, purchase, contract and workstations that was last viewed. It lists the last 10 items with the latest viewed item appearing on the top of the list. Clicking on the item takes you directly to the item's details.

Personalize

You can change the language and time zone displayed in the application, customize your signature, and change your password from the Personalize link. Click here to view more.

Quick Actions drop-down menu

The Quick Actions drop-down menu functions as a instant navigator to the Add New forms, Scheduler, Tasks, Reminders, Asset - Groups, Scanning inventories and Archived Requests.

Request Catalog drop-down menu

The Request Catalog drop-down menu groups both, the Incident Requests and Service Request Templates based on the category.

The Request Catalog drop-down menu is made available to your technicians only if you has enabled the option "Combine incident and service templates listing for the service" in Self Service Portal Settings.

Incident Catalog drop-down menu

The incident templates made available to your technicians are grouped based on the Service Category and listed in the Incident Catalog drop down. Click Incident Catalog link to access the default incident template.

Service Catalog drop-down menu

The service categories and the service items available to you are listed in the Service Catalog drop down. The list is organized to view the service items under each service category. All you need to do is browse for the available services in the catalog and submit a request.

License Expiry Alert

The license expiry alert shows the number of days for the existing license to get expired. In addition, it also provides the date within which the license should be renewed and the contact information of the support team.
Get Quote

The Get Quote link is visible to users using the Demo or Trial version. Clicking Get Quote link navigates the page to the Get Quote form in the website. Entering the specifications in the form will help us to provide you with the exact details of your requirement. Click Submit on specifying the details and our sales team will contact you on receiving the e-mail.
My Tasks

My Tasks in the home page, under My View tab beside my requests summary block, shows all the Tasks assigned to you. These tasks could be added by you as a personal reminder of the due by tasks. Or, it can be the tasks assigned to you by other technicians.

You can also assign tasks to other technicians through this option. On adding the tasks to other technicians, the added tasks will be listed in their home page under the My Tasks block and the technicians will be able to view the tasks immediately on logging in to ServiceDesk Plus application.

All your tasks including the requests assigned on your name can be added to this list as My Tasks, but you cannot maintain the log for the requests entered under my tasks list.

Adding Tasks

You can add Tasks from either the My Tasks block or from Quick Actions drop-down menu.

Quick Actions drop-down menu

The Quick Actions drop-down is an instant means to access the task form. Click $\rightarrow$ Add New option under Tasks.

My Tasks

1. Click Add New button. The Tasks form pops-up.
2. You can add a task instantly by using the pre-defined task templates in the application. Select a template from Use Task Template drop down. The task details such as Title, Description, assigned to Group or Technician and the task Status are automatically populated.
3. If you do not wish to use the Task Template, then specify the Title of the task in the given text field. This is a mandatory field.
4. Specify relevant information about the tasks in the Description field.
5. Select the Scheduled Start Time from the calendar button. Also select the Scheduled End Time for the task from the calendar button.
6. The Actual Start Time and End Time of the task will be entered by the technician doing (owning) the task.
7. The actual start time and end time is the real time schedule of the task. The scheduled start time and end time specified by the task owner is a tentative time schedule.
8. Select the Owner (technician) of the task from the combo box.
9. Specify the Status of the task. By default the Status of the task is Open.
10. Specify any relevant comment about the task in the Comments field.
11. If you wish to be reminded of the task previously then select the Email me before option and select the number of days from the combo box. This option will be selected based on the scheduled start time.
12. **Save** the values. You can see the added tasks getting listed under My Tasks block in the home page as shown below. The tasks will be listed under the tasks tab in ascending order based on the scheduled start time.

To view the details of the tasks click the title of the task to be viewed. This opens the Tasks page and you can view the details.

**Closing Completed Tasks**

When you have completed the task, you can just close the task by selecting the radio button beside the task. Alternatively,

1. Click the **Show All** link on the right hand side of the block. This opens the **Show all Tasks** page.
2. Select the tasks which have been completed by enabling the check box.
3. Click the **Close** button to close the task. You can see the tasks moved under closed status and in the home page you can see the tasks deleted from the My task block.

**Viewing all Tasks**

To view all the tasks added to the list, click the **Show All** button on the down right hand side of the My Tasks block. This opens the **Show all Tasks** page as shown below,
You can also add new task through this page by clicking the **New Task** button available on the top right corner of the page.

To view the tasks based on the status—> click the **Filter Showing** combo box and select the task status from the list. You can see the tasks getting listed based on the selected status.

Alternatively, you can view **All tasks** and **tasks assigned to you** in Quick Actions under the Task block.

**Viewing tasks based on Filters**

Using the pre-defined filters in the Task details page, you can have a quick consolidated view of the tasks configured in the application.

- **My Open Tasks**
  Lists all the tasks assigned to the logged in technician with status as Open.

- **My Overdue**
  Lists all the tasks assigned to the logged in technician that has exceeded the due date.

- **My Due Today**
  Lists all the tasks assigned to the logged in technician that are due to be completed today.

- **Open Tasks**
  Lists all the tasks with the status as Open.

- **Overdue**
  Lists all the tasks that has exceeded the due date.

- **Due Today**
  Lists all the tasks that are due to complete today.

- **Pending - My Group Tasks**
  Lists all the tasks assigned to the group associated to the logged in technician that are to be completed.

- **All Tasks**
  Lists all the tasks that are configured in the application irrespective of the status.

**Deleting Tasks**

1. Click the **Show All** button on the down right hand side of the My Tasks block. This opens the Show all Tasks page as shown above.
2. Click the **Delete** button. A confirmation message pops up asking you confirm on the delete process.
3. Click **Yes** to proceed. You can see the task deleted from the Show all Tasks list as well as from the home page.
Publish Announcements

ServiceDesk Plus allows you to publish Announcements company-wide or just to the technicians group. The announcement board is available in the login home page of the My View tab, below the My Summary block. Any technician can add, edit, and delete announcements.

The recent announcements will be displayed in the box. To view all the announcements, even completed ones, click the **Show All** button. This will display the list of all announcements added till date.

To view an announcement, click the **Announcement Title** to open the complete announcement details in a pop-up. If there is more than one announcement, then you will notice a **Previous** and **Next** button in the pop-up. Using this you can navigate through the announcements list and view all the announcements without closing the pop-up window.

**Representation of Icons**

- Private Announcement i.e., announcements published to the technicians
- New Private Announcement
- Public Announcement i.e., announcements that are published to technicians and requesters.
- New Public Announcement
- Public Announcements restricted to certain User Groups
- Newly added Public Announcement restricted to certain User Groups

**Adding Announcement**

To add an announcement,

1. Click **Add New** button in the Announcements block. The Add New announcement window pops up.
2. Enter the **Announcement Title**. This can be a short statement that describes the announcement. This is mandatory field.

3. Type the **Announcement Content** in the text box provided for the same.

4. Select the **From** date and **To** date using the calendar icon beside the respective fields.

5. By default, the announcement is available to technicians. If you want to publish the announcement in the requester login, enable **Show to Requester** check box.

   If you have configured **User Groups**, then you can publish the announcement to requesters under the user group. Select the **User Group** from the available list, select >> button to move the list to the selected user group. The announcement is displayed in the home page with a lock beside it. Click here to know more on configuring User Groups.

6. If you wish to **Send this announcement as mail** then select the corresponding option by enabling the check box.

7. Click **Save**. At any point of time, you do not wish to add the announcement, click **Cancel**.

The announcement will be added and the pop-up will display the announcement details as entered by you. The announcement title will be displayed in the login home in bold text in the announcement box with a new icon beside it.

**Viewing All Announcements**

To view all the announcements that have been displayed in the application, click **Show All** button in Announcements block. The **Manage Announcements** page is displayed. From this page, you can Add Announcement, Edit Announcements and Delete Announcements.

By default, all the announcements are shown. You can select the announcements to display in the column view from **Filtering Showing** drop-down menu. You can view announcements that are **Currently Shown**, or announcements that are **To be shown** in the home page or announcements that are **Already displayed**.
Edit an Announcement

1. In the login home page, click the title of the announcement that you wish to edit. The announcement details are displayed in a View Announcement pop-up. If you have permissions to edit / delete the announcements, you will see an Edit and Delete button.
2. Click Edit button.
3. You can change all the fields of the announcement in the Edit Announcement form.
4. Click Save. At any point of time, you do not wish to edit the announcement, click Cancel.

All the changes made in the announcement will be saved.

Delete an Announcement

1. In the login home page, click the title of the announcement that you wish to delete. The announcement details are displayed in a View Announcement pop-up. If you have permissions to edit / delete the announcements, you will see an Edit and Delete button.
2. Click Delete button. A confirmation dialog pops up.
3. Click OK to delete, and Cancel to retain the announcement.

Alternatively,

1. In the login home page, click Show All button in the Announcements box.
2. In the announcements list view, select check boxes beside the announcement Title which you wish to delete.
3. Click Delete. A confirmation dialog pops up.
4. Click OK to delete, and Cancel to retain the announcements.
Scheduler

ServiceDesk Plus gives the provision of a schedule calendar showing the number of open requests, problems, changes, task and reminder for a technician in a given month. The availability of a technician can be viewed from the technician availability chart, depending on which, the task, requests, problems and change can be re-assigned to other technicians.

The following are available under Scheduler,
- My Schedule
- Technician Availability Chart
- Mark Unavailability
My Schedule

My Schedule is a calendar view displaying the number of open requests, problems, changes, tasks and reminders assigned to a technician for a given month. The calendar also shows the availability of the technician for a specific day in a given month.

Note: The My Schedule calendar can be viewed by All Technicians.

- The **administrator** has the ability to view the number of open requests/tasks/problems/changes and availability of **All Technicians** in All Site.
- The **Site Admin** has the privilege to view the number of open requests/tasks/problems/changes and availability of technicians only in his site.
- The Technician can view only his open requests/tasks/problems/changes and availability.

To view the My Schedule calendar,

1. Login to ServiceDesk Plus application using your username and password.
2. In the home page, click **Scheduler** tab beside My View tab (OR)

   Click **Quick Actions** -> **My Schedule** under the schedule block. This opens the **Schedule Calendar**. By default, the calendar shows the number of open requests, problems, changes, tasks and reminders assigned to you as shown below,
Schedule Calendar
- The Schedule Calendar shows the **current month** and **year** along with the navigation buttons on the left hand side of the page.
- The **Navigation buttons** helps to navigate to the previous and the forth coming months.
- The current date is marked in separate border.
- **For an administrator** all the sites should be listed along with its corresponding groups and technicians loaded in the drop down field.
- **For a Site Admin**, the site for which he is the administrator gets listed in the drop down box along with its corresponding groups and technicians.
- **Technician** can view only his open requests, problems, changes, tasks and reminders.
- The **number of Open Requests, problems, changes and task** assigned to the technicians for a specific date in a given month can be viewed.
- The unavailability of the technician is indicated in a different color.
- The company holidays and weekends is marked in a separate.

Using My Schedule, you can perform actions such as,

- Mark Leave
- Edit/Cancel Leave
- Add Task
- Add Reminders
- Viewing requests/task/problems/change
- Re-assigning requests/task/problem/change

Mark Leave

It is essential to keep a track of technicians on leave so that work is not assigned to them for that particular day. To mark leave,

1. From My Schedule, hover over the day on which you want to mark leave. The list of icons gets displayed on the right hand side below the date. Click **Mark Leave 🕒** icon. This opens the **Mark Unavailability** pop-up window as shown below,
2. The name of the **Technician** is displayed in non-editable text.
3. Select the **Leave Type** from the combo box. For ex. Casual Leave, Sick Leave etc.
4. Select the **From** and **To** date of leave from the calendar icon.
5. Specify any relevant **Comments** regarding the leave.
6. Click **Save**. The technician’s holiday is indicated in a different color.

Leave can be marked to other technicians using Technician Availability Chart. You can configure your leave by clicking **Quick Actions** -> **Mark Unavailability** under the scheduler block. This opens the Mark Unavailability pop up window. Follow the above steps to mark leave.

**Edit/Cancel Leave**

If you wish to edit or cancel a leave then,

1. From the schedule calendar, hover over on the day the technician is on leave. Click the **Edit leave** icon on the right hand side below the date. This opens the **Mark Unavailability** pop-up window.
2. Click **Save** on making the changes.
3. If you wish to cancel the leave then click **Cancel Leave**. The leave gets cancelled.

**NOTE**: For continuous holidays, the entire series gets cancelled.

**Add Task**

You can also add, view and re-assign the tasks to other technicians. The tasks can be added to technicians for the current day and the forth coming days. To add task refer **Add Tasks**.
Viewing Requests/Tasks/Problems/Changes

The number open requests, tasks, problems and changes assigned to you gets listed in the calendar, by default. To view the details of the request/tasks/problem/change, click the link corresponding to the requests/task/problems/changes to be viewed for a specific day.

Re-assigning Requests/ Tasks/ Problems/ Changes

The requests, tasks, problems or changes assigned to a particular technician can be re-assigned to other technicians. For example, if requests are assigned to a technician for a specific day and if the technician is unavailable on that day, then the request can be re-assigned to other technicians. Similarly tasks, problems and changes can be re-assigned.

To re-assign requests/tasks/problems/changes,

1. Click the requests/problems/tasks/changes on the day, of the corresponding technician you want to re-assign from the Schedule Calendar. This lists out all the open request for that day.
2. Enable the check box adjacent to the request which you want to re-assign.
3. Select the technician from the combo box to whom the task is re-assigned. Click Re-assign button. The task is re-assigned to the technician.

Reminders

The reminder option is available only for the logged in technician, that is, if the logged in technician is an administrator then the reminders of other technicians cannot be viewed by him. To know more on reminders refer Reminders.
Technician Availability Chart

The Technician Availability Chart displays the list of technicians, along with the number of open requests assigned to them and their availability for a given month. The chart is a matrix view, indicating the availability of the technician for a specific day. It allows technicians to apply for leave, edit/cancel leave and even configure backup technicians when a technician is unavailable.

**Note:** The Technician Availability Chart is available only for technicians with Admin privileges such as an administrator and Site Admin.

- The **administrator** has the ability to view the availability of technicians and the number of open requests assigned to **All Technicians** in **All Sites**.
- The **Site Admin** has the privilege to view the availability of technicians and the number of open requests of technicians only in his site.

To view the Technician Availability Chart,

1. Click **Scheduler** tab in the Home page. This opens the **Schedule Calendar** displaying the number of open requests, problems, changes, task and reminders assigned to the technician who has logged in.
2. Click **Tech Availability Chart** button on the right hand side of the page.
3. You can also choose **Tech Availability Chart** from the **Quick Actions** link under the header pane. This opens the **Technician Availability Chart**.
**Technician Availability Chart:**

- The Technician Availability Chart shows the **current month** and **year**.
- The **Navigation buttons** on the left top help to navigate to the previous and the forth coming months.
- The current date in the calendar is marked in blue border.
- By default, **for an administrator**, the list of all the technicians gets displayed, irrespective of the Site and Group. Using the "Site", "Group" and "Technician" combo boxes, the administrator can view the availability of a particular technician in a particular Site.
- **For a Site Admin**, the list of all technicians in his/her site is displayed irrespective of Groups. The number of **Open Requests** assigned to the technicians for a specific date is displayed in the Chart.
- Unavailability of a technician is indicated in pink color.
- Company holidays, weekends, logged-in technicians and backup technician are marked in other different colors.

---

Using the Technician Availability Chart, you can perform actions such as,

- Marking Leave
- Configuring Backup Technician
- Re-assigning Requests
- Editing/Cancelling Leave
- Viewing Request
- Viewing Logged-in Technician
- Backup Tech Chart

---

**Mark Leave**

The unavailability of a technician can be marked using the Technician Availability Chart. This is essential so that requests that are assigned to that particular technician on that day can be re-assigned to another technician.

To mark leave,

1. From the **Technician Availability Chart**, click on the day corresponding to the technician on leave. This opens the **Mark Unavailability** pop-up window as shown below,
2. The name of the Technician is displayed in a non-editable text format.
3. Select the Leave Type (Casual Leave, Sick Leave and so on) from the combo box.
4. Select the From and To date of leave by invoking the calendar icon.
5. Specify any relevant Comments regarding the leave in the Comments text box.
6. Click Save. The technician's holiday will be indicated in a different color.

Leave can also be marked by clicking Quick Actions -> Mark Unavailability under the Scheduler block. This opens the Mark Unavailability pop up window. Follow the above steps to mark leave.

Notifications rules can be configured to keep other technicians informed about the leave of absence of a technician. Once the technician applies leave, selected technicians or the group in which the technician is present will be notified about the leave when it is added, modified or cancelled.

Configure Backup Technician:

To configure a Backup Technician on the day of unavailability of a technician,

1. Click the name of the technician who will be on leave in the Technician Availability Chart. This opens the Technician Calendar for that month with the technician's days of unavailability indicated in a different shade.
2. Click Backup Tech link displayed in a different color. This opens Backup Technician Assignment screen.

3. Choose one of the 3 options provided to handle the upcoming requests assigned to the unavailable technician.

   - **Move requests to unassigned state** - The requests assigned to the technician on leave are moved to an unassigned state, which means, it is assigned to no technician. This is done so that the unassigned requests can be re-assigned to another available technician by the administrator or help desk coordinator.
Assign to following technician - This option allows you to configure a Backup Technician throughout the absence of a particular technician. On choosing this option, one can select the Backup Tech from the list of technicians displayed in the drop down box. If Sites are configured, this drop down box displays only the names of the technician who are associated with the same site as that of the technician who is on leave.

Don't take any action on the requests - This is the default option visible in the Backup Technician Assignment screen. In this case, no action is taken on the requests that are assigned to the technician. The request is assigned to the technician even if he is on leave.

4. Click Save after configuring the Backup Tech.
5. Once the Backup Tech is configured, an icon appears in the calendar indicating that the backup technician has been configured. By moving the mouse pointer over the icon, a description box appears indicating the status of the backup technician configuration.

If notification rules are configured, then notification e-mails will be sent to selected technicians or the group in which the unavailable technician is present.

**Note:** Backup Technicians can be configured only up to one level. This means, if the backup technician is on leave, another backup technician cannot be configured.

All information relating to unavailability of a technician, including the period of leave and backup technicians (if configured) are displayed in the Backup Tech Chart.

**Re-Assigning Requests:**

Requests assigned to a technician can be re-assigned to another technician through the Technician Calendar.
To re-assign requests to another technician,

1. Click the number of requests and this opens the Backup Technician Assignment screen along with the list of requests in the second half of the screen.
2. Select the requests that need to be re-assigned by clicking on the check boxes.
3. Select the Technician from the Technician drop down box.
4. Click **Re-Assign** button to assign the requests to another technician.
5. Click **Calendar View** to go back to the Technician Calendar.
6. You can also re-assign requests by clicking on the requests in the Technician Availability Chart and selecting Click here to view map from pop-up. Follow the above steps to re-assign the requests.

**Note:** Re-assigning requests is different from assigning requests through Backup Tech. Although Backup Tech can be configured only up to one level, in the absence of the backup technician, the pending requests can be assigned to another technician through this feature.

Click the name of the technician to have a detailed view about the number of requests, problems, changes and tasks assigned to the particular technician in My Schedule.

**Editing/Cancelling Leave**

To edit leave,

1. Click on the leave of the technician that needs to be edited from the Technician Availability Chart. This opens the **Mark Unavailability** pop-up window.

2. Make necessary changes (Leave Type or Leave Period).
3. Click **Save**.
To cancel leave,

1. Click on the leave of the technician that needs to be cancelled from the Technician Availability Chart. This opens the Mark Unavailability pop-up window.
2. Click on Cancel Leave button. The leave gets cancelled.

**Note**: If a continuous period of leave is applied, then the entire period will be cancelled.

### Viewing Requests
To view the requests assigned to a technician for a particular day,

1. Click on requests on the day of absence of the corresponding technician from the Technician Availability Chart.

2. From the drop down box, select Click here to view map. This opens the list of all open request due for that day.
3. Click on the request you wish to see and the request information is displayed in the same screen.

### Viewing Logged-in Technicians
If you are an SDAdmin, SDSite Admin or SD Co-ordinator, then the Technicians logged-in the application is indicated in the Technician Availability Chart. Click Logged-in Technician button to view the list of logged in technician irrespective of the associated sites. You can also view the logged-in technicians from Quick Actions drop-down.

### Backup Tech Chart
Backup Technician Chart displays information such as absence of leave of a technician, name of the technician and the backup technician configured through the period. This chart helps to keep a check on the backup technicians whenever a technician applies for leave. To view the Backup Technician Chart, click on the Backup Tech Chart link next to the My Schedule link.

Using the Navigation buttons at the left top of the screen one can navigate to the previous and the forth coming months to get a broader idea about the technicians on leave, their period of absence and the backup technicians configured for that period.
Reminders

ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus provides you with the option of tracking your tasks every day. The tasks that you add to the My Reminders list act as substitute for your sticky notes or post-it notes which you would use to remember your tasks for the day.

Add Reminders

To add new reminders,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password.
2. Click Quick Actions drop-down menu just below the header tabs -> select Add New option under the Reminders block. The Reminders form window pops up.

Alternatively, you can add a new reminder by clicking Quick Actions -> My Reminder (s). The My Reminder (s) form pops up as shown below,

Click +Add New link at the bottom of the My Reminders form. This opens Reminders window.

3. Enter the task summary in the text field provided.
4. Select the Date & Time for the reminder. The date field is set to the today's date and the time is set by default as 11:00 AM. Change the date and time settings. To change the date, click the calendar icon beside the date field and choose the date of your choice. From the time combo box, choose the time at which the task is scheduled. The values in the combo box are available in a gap of 5 min time interval.

5. Click Add. The new reminder is added and is listed along with the already existing reminders in the ascending order based on date and time.
Changing Status

When you have completed a reminder, you can just strike the reminder to indicate that it is completed by selecting the radio button beside the reminder.

1. From the My Reminders form, click the status radio button to change the task status from incomplete to Completed. The task is struck through to indicate that it is completed.

2. Alternatively, you can also change the task state by executing the following steps:
   1. Click Show all at the bottom right of the My Reminders pop up window. The All Reminders window opens as shown below,

      ![My Reminder(s) window]

      Complete the pending t... (Nov 8, 04:11 PM)
      Update Request ID: 60 ...
      Call John for assistance... (Nov 7, 09:11 PM)

      + Add New > Show All

   2. Select the check boxes beside the Reminder Summary for which you wish to change the state.
   3. Select the state from the Change Reminder State To combo box; select the reminder state to Completed.
   4. Click Change button to change the status of the task. To indicate the change the task would be struck of.
Deleting Reminders

The reminders can be deleted by,

1. From the **My Reminders** form, click **Delete this reminder** radio button available beside the status radio button. The reminder gets deleted from the list.
2. Alternatively, from **All Reminders** window, enable the check box beside the Reminder summary to be deleted. Click **Delete**. A pop up window confirming the delete operation appears. Click **OK** to proceed. The reminder gets deleted from the list.

The advantage of moving the reminder to completed state instead of deleting it completely is that, you can revert the state of the reminder to **Open** again and edit its attributes. But once you delete the reminder, it is completely removed from the application and cannot be retrieved.
Personalize

You can localize your personalization such as display language, time zone and so on, as well as change your login password using this option. Apart from the option of changing password from the user management configurations, you can also change your individual password.

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password.
2. Click the Personalize link available at the top right corner of the page. This opens Personalize page which has two tabs which are, Personalize and Change Password as shown below,

Personalize

The personalize tab consists of display language, time zone, data format, time format and e-mail signature.
• **Display Language**

Select the language of your choice from the Choose Language combo box. The selected language will be your default display language in the application. All the data will be displayed in the language selected by you.

• **Time Zone**

Since the organizations can be situated in various sites; every site has its particular time zone. Select the time zone of the site of your organization from the Select Time Zone combo box. The date and time will be set according to the selected time zone.

• **Date/Time Format**

Select the format of the date such as, Tue 16 Sep 2008, from the Set Date Format combo box. Similarly, you can also set the time format from Set Time Format combo box. The selected date and time format will be displayed wherever date/time is considered.

For Example: While creating a request, the request created on and due by time will be displayed in the selected date and time format corresponding to the selected time zone. The same can be viewed under Problem, Change, Solution and Purchase modules.

• **E-mail Signature**

You can have your own personalized signature while replying to the mails using this option. Enter your signature in the text provided. Click Save.

**Change Password**

1. Click the Change Password tab in the personalize page. This displays the Change Password form.
2. Enter your old password in the Current Password field.
3. Enter your new password in the New Password field.
4. In the Confirm New Password, enter the new password again.
5. Click Save button.
License Expiry Alert

The License Expiry Alert shows the number of days for the existing license (or the trial version) to expire. If you wish to renew the license, then a renewal request must be sent to our support team, and they, in turn will provide you with the license file. To send a renewal request, click the Renew button. The page navigates to a Renewal Form where the License ID and Customer ID are pre populated. Enter the Email Address and your Company Name, also specify the Number of Technicians and Nodes license you wish to avail, and enable the add-ons if required. Enter relevant comments in the provided field and click Submit.

An email notification is sent to our support team, and they in turn will provide you with the license file. Once the license file is obtained, click the License link to install the license file. To know more on applying the license file, click Registering ServiceDesk Plus.
Dashboard

The Dashboard is a visual display of real-time information, consolidated and arranged in a single view so that it can be easily monitored. The Dashboard displays various statistical data related to number of requests, changes, problems, assets, software, POs and contracts based on various criteria.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note: Information displayed on the Dashboard largely depends on the site and roles associated to the technician.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Data shown in the Dashboard is restricted to the site the technician is associated to. When a technician is associated to multiple sites, then a drop down option with sites he is associated to appear. By choosing the site, information and data associated with that site are displayed to the technician.

Similarly, data displayed on the dashboard is also restricted based on the roles associated to the technician.

Dashboards contain the following sub tabs:

1. Helpdesk
2. Problem & Change
3. Assets

Helpdesk:

Under the Helpdesk tab, 8 small widgets are available to provide request based information at one glance.

- The first widget displays a matrix chart. It shows the total number of requests in Open, On Hold and OverDue statuses. This information can be viewed based on the criteria provided in the drop down box. Number of requests can be viewed based on Technician, Category, Level, Priority and Mode. Clicking on the numbers in the chart opens the corresponding list of requests.
- The second widget displays a pie chart. It shows the number of open requests that can be viewed based on Level, Mode, Priority and Category. By clicking on the graph, you can view the requests corresponding to each shaded criteria.
- The third widget displays a bar graph. It shows the number of SLA violated requests. A drop down box provided allows you to view the number of SLA violated requests based on Priority, Group, Level, Technician and Category. By clicking on each bar, you can view the SLA violated requests corresponding to the selected criteria.
The next 3 are angular charts that show the number of unassigned and open requests, number of SLA violated open requests, and number of requests nearing SLA violation in the next 60, 120 and 180 minutes. Clicking on the number of requests present in the bottom of the widget opens the corresponding list of requests for viewing.

The last 2 bar graphs show the number of requests that were created and closed in the last 20 days. Clicking on the bars on the graph opens the corresponding requests for view.

Problem & Change:

Technicians who have permission to view the Problem and Change module can also view the Problem & Change widgets in the Dashboard.

The first widget in the dashboard is a pie chart that shows all the scheduled upcoming changes that are to be rolled out. The changes that are scheduled to be rolled out in the following time period (This week, Next week, This month and so on) by selecting the time period from the first drop down box. The changes can also be viewed based on criteria such as Change Type, Priority, Urgency and Impact.
• The second widget shows a list of Approved changes that are scheduled to be rolled out. The list can be viewed based on the time period during which the changes are scheduled to be rolled out (This week, Next week, This month and so on). The list indicates the Title of the change along with the Change Type. Clicking on the title of the change opens a pop-up with the change details. By clicking on the title of the change in the pop-up, the complete change details page can be viewed.

• The third widget shows a list of unapproved changes along with the change type. Clicking on the title of the change opens a pop-up with the change details. By clicking on the title of the change in the pop-up, the complete change details page can be viewed.

• The last widget is a pie chart displaying the problems. The chart can be customized to be displayed based on Priority, Urgency and Impact.

**Assets:**

Technicians who have permission to view Asset module can also view the Asset Dashboard and monitor the statistical data displayed on it. The widgets in the Asset Dashboard give complete summary of all physical assets (IT and non-IT), software assets, workstations and POs & contracts.
• The first widget shows a summary of all physical assets in the organization including IT and non-IT assets. By default only number of Workstations, Printers, Routers, Servers and Others are displayed. By clicking on “View All”, the Others category is expanded and other IT and non-IT assets such as Access points, Switches are displayed. The number of workstations failed to be scanned is also indicated in this widget along with the option to troubleshoot the failure operation. By clicking on the number displayed next to the assets, one can view the list of those assets under the Asset module.

• The second widget displays a bar graph indicating the number of workstations depending on various criteria. These criteria can be selected by clicking on the red drop down arrow at the top of the widget. By clicking on "View All", a pop-up showing the extended graph is displayed. Set of graph that is not included in the original widget is displayed in this pop-up. Mouse hovering over each bar displays the number of workstations corresponding to the selected criteria. By clicking on the bar, the list of workstations is displayed under the Asset module.

• The third widget shows software related information in a combination of pie charts and bar graphs. By clicking on the red drop-down arrow below the widget title, one can select the criteria based on which the graph should be displayed. By clicking on "View All", a pop-up showing the extended graph is displayed. Set of graph that is not included in the original widget is displayed in this pop-up. Mouse hovering over each bar/pie region displays the number of software corresponding to the selected criteria. By clicking on the bar/pie region, the list of software is displayed under the Asset module.

• The fourth widget shows a summary of Purchase Orders (POs) and Contracts. By selecting Purchase Order summary from the drop down, one can view the overdue POs, POs due in the next 7 days and the POs due in the next 30 days. By Selecting Contracts summary, one can view the contracts that have expired in the last 30 days, contracts expiring in the next 7 days and contracts expiring in the next 30 days.
Requests

The numerous help desk tickets raised in your organization are organized and tracked in the Requests module. The Requests module enables you to handle tickets promptly, assign tickets to technicians, merge similar requests and so on.

By keeping track of the outstanding and overdue requests, the Request module helps to improve the response time and resolution time by your IT help desk team. The Requests raised by your users are of two types namely, Incident Requests and Service Requests.

- **Incident Requests** are requests that denote the failure or degradation of an IT service. For example, Unable to print, unable to fetch mails and so on.
- **Service Requests** on the other hand are requests raised by the user for support, delivery, information, advice or documentation. Some examples are installing software in workstations, resetting lost password, requesting for hardware device and so on.

**NOTE:** Please note that a Service Request is not an Incident.

The Requests module allows you to add relevant notes pertaining to the request that is being handled. The notes may contain information like, the exact scenario of the request or how the issue was resolved. Also, every action performed on the request in the ServiceDesk Plus is stored in the Request History.

Clicking the Requests tab takes you to the request module. Here the term request denotes any service (both incident requests and service requests) that is requested by a user from the internal IT services team. The request is submitted to the system via mail or a web-based form. Sometimes, the request can also be placed through a phone call during which, the help desk agent has to record the details of the phone call in the web-based form, and assign priority and technician based on the urgency of the request. The various actions that one can perform in the request module are explained in the respective sections.

To ease the process of tracking the requests posted by individual requesters, a Self Service Portal has been provided. The Self Service Portal is used by the individual requesters to track the status of their requests and to look up solutions from the online knowledge base. To access the self-service portal, the requesters need to log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using their respective user name and password. For more details on self-service portal, refer to Self Service Portal topic.
Request List view

The Request List view organizes and manages the help desk tickets raised into ServiceDesk Plus. In the Request List view, you have the facility to,

- View requests (incident and service requests) based on default filters
- Customize your own filters
- View Archived Requests
- Customize the columns in the list view
- Perform operations like edit, delete, assign and merge requests from the list view.

Click Requests tab in the header pane. The page redirects to the request list view page displaying all requests in the Open status, by default. The term 'All Requests' denotes both the Incident Requests and the Service Requests.

- Filter drop-down menu: The Filter drop-down menu consists of default filter list which classifies requests into three categories namely, My Group, Requests and My Views. The filter has options to restrict the list view to display Service Requests, Incident Requests or both, and link to view Archive Requests.
- Searching Requests based on Request ID: View the details of a request instantly by entering the Request ID and click Go button.
- Settings: The Settings drop-down menu consists of options to Create Custom Views, Manage the Custom Views and set the frequency to auto refresh the request list view from every 3 minutes to 30 minutes.
  - Creating Custom Views: create filters to customize and organize your request list view. The filters created can be made public or private.
  - Manage Custom Views: View, Edit and Delete your customized views.
• **New Incident:** Create new incident requests instantly using the **New Incident** button.

• **Actions drop-down menu:** Perform operations to bulk **Edit Requests**, **Delete Requests**, **Pick up Requests**, **Close Requests**, **Merge Requests** and **Link Requests**.

• **Column-wise Search:** Perform column-wise search for specific Groups, Requesters, Departments, Sites and so on.
Create an Incident

When users detect a failure of an asset/resource or a degradation of IT service, then they can send an incident request to the system administration team.

Modes to report an incident

There are various modes of placing a request to the system administration team. Some of the most common modes are,

- Requesters call up the help desk agent and report an issue or explain the nature of their request. The help desk agent will then manually feed in the details into the application.
- Requesters log into the **Self Service Portal** and submit their requests, or
- Requesters email the request to the help desk team. The email is automatically converted to a new request in the application.

Apart from the above three modes, there are various other modes by which an incident request is created. For more information on adding additional modes, refer to Configuring Mode section.

Create Incident Requests from the application

A typical example for technicians to create an incident request from the application would be when a technician is on a call with the requester. The technician fills in the necessary details for future references.

There are three ways in which the new incident request form can be accessed in the application,

1. **New Incident drop-down menu**
2. **Quick Create - New Incident**
3. **Requests tab**

1. **New Incident drop-down menu**

The **New Incident drop-down menu** lists all the Incident Templates configured in the application. It is an instant means to quickly access the new incident form. For easy identification, the incident templates are grouped according to **Service Categories**. So all you need to do is browse through the available incident templates, select the one relevant to your issue and raise a new incident request.

The Incident Templates are configured in the **Admin** module under Helpdesk block.

**NOTE:** The New Incident drop-down menu is available only if the administrator has disabled the option "Merge Incident and Service Templates" in Self Service Portal Settings.
2. Quick Create - New Incident

**Quick Create - New Incident** is an instant mode to create new incidents when you are on a call with a requester or when you are loaded with a lot of work. This section is available only when the 'Quick Create Settings' is enabled in the Self-Service Portal.

In the Quick Create - New Incident block, you can either conduct a search for the existing requesters using the icon 🗝️ or enter the requesters name in the field provided. Next, you need to enter **Request Title** and **Description**. Click **Save**. The incident is saved and the request details page is displayed.

If you require additional details such as category, priority or assign a technician, click **Add More Details >>** link. This takes you to the New Incident form.

3. Requests Tab

To create a new request from the request tab,

1. Click **Requests** tab in the header pane.
2. From the Request List view, click **New Incident** button. By default, the 'Default Incident Template' form is displayed. From this form, you can select an incident template from the **Change Template** drop-down menu.
3. In the default request form, select the **Request Type** from the combo box. Request Type denotes the type of request sent by the requester to the help desk team. You can configure Request Type in the Admin tab.
4. Select the **Status** of the request, the **Mode** of request submission, **Level** and **Priority** of the request from the drop-down box.
5. Also, select the **Impact**, **Impact Details** and **Urgency** of the request from the corresponding drop-down box.
6. In the Requester Details block, specify the **Requesters Name**, **Contact Number**, **Job Title** and **Department** of the requester.
7. You can select the requester from the list of users configured in the application. Click **Requester lookup** icon 🔄 beside the requester name field. The **Requester List** window pops up.

To select a requester from the list, click the hyper-linked requester **Name**. The requester name and details associated with the requester are populated in the requester details block.

- 1. If the requester list is huge, then click on the **Alphabets** at the top of the page to view only a selected group of requesters.
- 2. Conduct an instant search for the requester by entering the search string in **Search Requester List** field and click **Go**.
- 3. If you are aware of any requesters details such as name, login name, department, email and so on, then conduct a column-wise search using the search icon 🔄.
- 4. In addition, add new requester directly by clicking the **Add Requester** button from the requester list page.
5. Also, you have an option to edit the requester details directly from this page. Click the edit icon beside the requester name to perform the edit operation.

8. The assets associated to the requester are populated in the Asset drop-down. Select the Asset from the drop-down. If the issue is caused by a network resource such as a router or an access point, then click the icon and select the asset.

In Select Assets pop-up window, you can filter the assets by selecting the Type of assets such as, access point, routers, workstation and so on, from the drop-down. Selecting All Assets lists all the assets available in the application, irrespective of the asset type. You can further filter the assets according to sites using the Site drop-down. Selecting a site lists the assets from that particular site. Say, for instance, if the site selected is "New York" and the asset type is "Access Point", then all the access points associated to the site New York are listed.

**NOTE:** The sites associated to the logged in technician are listed in the Site drop-down.
9. By default, if the location of the requester is configured in the application, then the same is populated in the Site field. In certain scenarios, the requester may raise a request from one site to a problem in another site. In this case, the site in which the issue persists should be selected.

10. On selecting the site, the groups corresponding to the site gets populated under the Group field. The request is routed to the particular group by selecting the Group name from the drop-down.

11. On selecting the Group, technicians associated with the Group alone are listed in the Technician drop-down list. Select a Technician to handle the request from the drop-down.

12. Select the Service Category which is affected by the incident from the drop-down.

13. Select the relevant category under which the request is classified from Category drop-down box.

14. Also, select the relevant Sub-Category and Item from the drop-down box.

15. If you wish to add a CC to the email loop, then select the Email Id(s) to Notify by clicking the icon. From the Requester List pop up window, enable the check box beside the requester name. Click Add Requester.

**Note:** Please note that the email address should be configured for the selected requesters.

16. Specify the subject line to be displayed while sending the request in the Subject text field. The subject line is displayed as the request title and is a mandatory field.

17. Provide a detailed description with any other associated details relevant to the request in the Description text box.

18. To add any attachments relevant to the request, click the Attach file button in the Attachments block. The Attach File pops up as shown below,

```
Attach file

File [ Maximum size of an attachment is 10 MB. ]

1. Click the Browse button and select the file to be attached from the file chooser window and click the Open button.
2. Click the Attach file button. The selected file is listed below the Attachments heading. If you have more files to choose, follow steps 2 and 3 repeatedly till you have attached all the relevant files. Please ensure that the maximum size of the attachment is 10 MB.

The attached document is indicated with an attachment icon beside the title of the request in the request list view page.

18. While entering the request details, if you have a solution for the request, then the same can be entered in the Resolution field. The purpose of resolution field in the new request form is, when you are reported a problem for which you are aware of the solution, then in this case, specify the solution in the resolution field, set the status as closed to close the request.
To add resolution, click the button beside Resolution title in the new request form. Specify the solution in the resolution text field. The entered resolution can be viewed by clicking the Resolution tab while viewing the request.

19. If there are any additional fields configured for the new incident form, then enter the values for the fields. To know more on adding user defined fields in the incident form, refer Incident - Additional Fields.

20. Click the Add request button. The request is added to the existing list of requests and can be viewed from the request list view.
Raise a Service Request

Service Requests are requests raised by the user for support, delivery, information, advice or documentation, and is not related to any failure in the IT structure. The two modes through which requesters can raise service requests to the system administration team are:

- Requesters can call up the help desk agent and request for service. The help desk agent will in turn raise a service request by conducting a search for the service item from the list and manually feed in the users details. OR,
- Requesters can log into the Self Service Portal and raise the service request by themselves.

The Service Catalog list

Similarly to the New Incident drop down menu, the Service Catalog drop-down menu lists all the service items configured in the application. The service items are grouped under a service category for easy reference and identification. From the list of service items available to you, you can browse and raise a service request.

NOTE: If New Request drop-down is displayed instead of Service Catalog drop-down menu, then the administrator has enabled the option Combine incident and service templates listing for the service in Self Service Portal Settings. The New Request drop-down menu groups both, the Incident Requests and Service Request Templates based on the category.

Click Service Catalog drop-down link to view the Template Categories and the Template List.
Raise a Service Request

Raising a new service request is as simple as creating a new incident request from the available templates. Browse through the Template List and select a service that is relevant to your needs.

1. Select the service item from the catalog. This takes you to the **New Service Request** form. The delivery time frame of the service is displayed. The delivery time frame is displayed only if an SLA is assigned to the service request.
2. Select the parameters such as Status, Level, Mode, Priority, Category, Sub category and so on, that is available in the template.
3. To select a **Requester** from the list of users configured in the application, click requester **lookup** icon beside the requester name field. The **Requester List** window pops up. Click the hyper-linked requester **Name**. The requester name and details associated with the requester are populated in the requester details block.

1. If the requester list is huge, then click on the **Alphabets** at the top of the page to view only a selected group of requesters.
2. Conduct an instant search for the requester by entering the search string in **Search Requester List** field and click **Go**.
3. If you are aware of any requesters details such as name, login name, department, email and so on, then conduct a column-wise search using the search icon **Q**.
4. In addition, add new requester directly by clicking the Add Requester button from the requester list page.
5. Also, you have an option to edit the requester details directly from this page. Click the edit icon beside the requester name to perform the edit operation.

4. The assets associated to the requester are populated in the Asset drop down. Select the Asset from the drop down. You can also select assets by clicking the icon.

In Select Assets pop-up window, you can filter the assets by selecting the Type of assets such as, access point, routers, workstation and so on, from the drop-down. Selecting All Assets lists all the assets available in the application, irrespective of the asset type. You can further filter the assets according to sites associated to the logged in technician using the Site drop-down. Selecting a site lists the assets from that particular site.

Say, for instance, if the site selected is "New York" and the asset type is "Access Point", then all the access points associated to the site New York are listed.

Tip: If the Service Request is "Installing Software", then select the workstation in which the software should be installed.
5. By default, if the site location of the requester is configured in the application, then the same is populated in the Site field.

6. On selecting the site, the groups corresponding to the site gets populated under the Group field. The request is routed to the particular group by selecting the Group name from the drop down.

7. On selecting the Group, technicians associated with the Group alone are listed in the Technician drop down list. Select a Technician to handle the request from the drop down.

8. If the editor field is enabled for the service request, then select the Editor from the icon. Refer the topic Service Request Editor to know the purpose of the editor and how to enable the editor field.

9. For a service request template, the subject line is already specified. You can change or modify the subject. The subject line is displayed as the request title and is a mandatory field.

10. Provide a detailed description with any other associated details relevant to the request in the Description text box.

11. To add any attachments relevant to the service request, click the Attach file button in the Attachments block. The Attach File pops up as shown below,

   ![Attach File Pop-Up]

   1. Click the Browse button and select the file to be attached from the file chooser window and click the Open button.
   2. Click the Attach file button. The selected file is listed below the Attachments heading. If you have more files to choose, follow steps 2 and 3 repeatedly till you have attached all the relevant files. Please ensure that the maximum size of the attachment is 10 MB.

   The attached document is indicated with an attachment icon beside the title of the request in the request list view page.

11. While entering the request details, if you have a solution for the service request, then the same can be entered in the Resolution field.

12. Click Add New Request button. The request details page is displayed from where you can perform further actions on the service request.

**NOTE** Please note that the following operations cannot be performed on a service request - Merging requests, Duplicating requests, Associating Problems to a request and Associating Changes to a request.
Custom Views

The Settings drop-down menu consists of options to Add Custom Views and Manage Custom Views. Custom Views helps you sort requests by customizing the request list view to display requests based on certain criteria. The Custom Views are listed in the Filter drop-down menu.

Say, you are a technician who is concerned only with the high priority requests from a particular site. Instead of performing a search in the request list view, each and every time, you can create a custom view that will filter requests based on your specified criteria.

Add Custom Views

You can add custom views by specifying the criteria to filter requests accumulated in your request list view.

NOTE:

1. If you are logged in as the administrator, then you have the privilege to mark a custom view as private or public. Public Custom Views can be viewed by all the technicians but Private Custom View can only be viewed by the technician who has created the view.
2. If you are logged in as a technician, then the custom views created by you are marked as private, by default.

To create custom view,

1. Click Requests tab in the header pane. The Request List view page is displayed.
2. Click Settings drop-down menu and select New Custom View option. The Add Custom Views page is displayed.
3. Specify a name for the custom view in View Name text field. This field is mandatory.
4. Select the Columns and its Criteria from the drop-down box.
   1. Click Choose to select a value for the column.
   2. Click Add to Filter button. The filter criteria details is saved and listed in the Filter Set block. You can add more filter conditions to this view by selecting the column, criteria and condition of the filter.
   3. If you have more than two criteria, then select the AND or OR conditions by enabling either of the two radio buttons.
5. If you are logged in as the administrator, then you have the privilege to make your view as private by selecting **Make this view as private custom view** check box.

6. Click **Save** button. The custom view is saved and listed in Custom Views List view page.

7. Click **Save and Add New** button, to save and add another custom view.

The Custom Views are listed in the **Filter drop-down menu**. The Custom View marked as **Private** is listed under **My Views**, and the Views marked as Public is listed along with the remaining filters.

**Manage Custom Views**

Manage Custom Views helps manage your views by providing a consolidate view of all your public and private views. While viewing the custom views, you can edit, delete and add custom views.

1. Click **Requests** tab in the header pane. The **Request List view** page is displayed.
2. Click **Settings drop-down menu** and select **Manage Custom Views** option.

**Edit a Custom View**

To edit a custom view,

1. In the **Custom Views List** view, click the **Edit** icon beside the filter name to edit. The **Edit Custom Views** page is displayed.
2. Edit the details and save the changes.

**Delete Custom Views**

1. In the **Custom Views List** view, select the check box beside the custom views to delete.
2. Click **Delete** button. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **OK** to proceed. The Custom View is deleted from the list.

**NOTE:** The Public Views can be deleted by a technician with Administrator privileges.
View Request Details

To view a request available in the ServiceDesk Plus Request module,

1. Click Requests tab in the header pane.
2. In the Request List view, click the Subject link of the request to view. The Request Details page is displayed showing the following tabs by default namely, Request, Resolution, Work Log and History.

NOTE:

1. The Conversations and Discussion Notes block are displayed when the same are added to the request.
2. The Approvals sub tab appears when the request is submitted for approval. The Approval Status of the request is shown on the top right corner of the page below the Status and Priority. To know more refer Submit For Approval.
3. The Tasks sub tab appears when tasks are added to the request.
4. You can also associate Problems and Changes to the incident requests. Refer the topics Associating Problems to Incident and Associating Changes to Incidents to know more.

Request Tab

In the Request tab, the data is grouped in a logical manner. By default this page displays the Subject and Description of the request, Request Details and Requester Details blocks. The Request ID is displayed on the top left corner of the page below the tabs. The Status and Priority of the request is displayed on the top right corner of the page.

Request Details block

The Request Details block displays the Request fields like Status, Priority, Technician handling the request, Due Date and so on. You have inline edit option to edit all the request details under this block.

To edit a request field using inline edit option, click the link available for each of the request details against the request fields. Say for example, to change the Level of the request from Tier 2 to Tier 4, select Tier 2 link of the Level field. The field is displayed as a drop-down menu. Select the level from the drop-down menu.

If there are any additional user-defined fields that have been added to the new request form, they are grouped under the Additional Request Details head and displayed just below the Request Details block.

Requester Details block

In the Requester Details block, the details of the requester such as the Requester Name, Contact Number, Department, E-mail Address and Mobile Number of the requester are displayed. You have inline edit option to edit all the requester details under this block. To edit the details click the link available for each of the requester details against each field.
Asset belonging to the User, while adding users to ServiceDesk Plus in the Admin tab, you have an option to Associate Workstation to the user. If you have associated workstation to the user, you can view the list of all associated workstations under this block.

**Conversations block**

The **Conversations** block is displayed only if there are any mail transactions or threads exchanged between the technician and the requester. The Conversation block is displayed above the Request Details block.

By default, the conversation between the technician and the requester is displayed. Click **View All Conversations** to view mail transactions between technicians, and also the threads between the technician and requester.

**NOTE:** If any mail transactions/threads have an attachment, then the same can be viewed in the Conversations block. To know more refer Request Conversation.

**Discussion Notes**

The **Discussion Notes** block appears only when a note is added to the request. The notes are displayed in descending order of their date of creation. If you select the option "Show this notes to requester" then the note will be listed as Public. Else it is listed as private. You also have an option to edit or delete the discussion notes.

**Resolution Tab**

The Resolution tab displays the resolution added for the request along with the date and time. You can edit the resolution using the **Edit** icon.

**NOTE:** Editing a resolution requires permissions that can be enabled under Admin tab -> Roles.

If there are no resolutions available for the request, then you can add a resolution in the text field. You can either manually enter the resolution or add a resolution using the Resolution Template. You can also search for resolutions from the solutions database by clicking **Search Solutions** button.

The resolution is documented information of how the issue was resolved and this documented can be very useful for future reference. You can add the resolution to the knowledge base by clicking **Save and Add to Solutions** button.

The status of the request can be modified while adding a resolution on selecting the status from **Change Status To** combo box.

You also have an option to **Add Time Entry** to the resolution. Select **Add Time Entry** check box and specify the details.
Work Log Tab

The time spent by a technician on a request is recorded in the Work Log tab. The Time Elapsed block list details such as the executed time of the request, the time elapsed, the technician handling the request and his charge. You can also add Work Logs from this tab.

Tasks Tab

The Tasks tab is displayed beside the Request tab and appears when tasks are added to the request. From this tab you can Add Tasks from the Template, Delete existing tasks and also Organize tasks.

Approvals Tab

The Approvals tab is displayed next to the History tab when a request is submitted for approval. It displays all the mails sent for approval in ascending order with the Approver e-mail address, Sent On, Status and acted on details of the request.

When the request is approved by the manager, the status of the request is changed to Approved. If rejected, then the status of the request is changed to Denied.

History Tab

To view the request history from the time of its creation, click the History tab in the view request page. The details that are displayed in the history are in the ascending order with the earliest performed action shown at the top of the page and the latest action at the bottom of the page.
Edit Request

To edit a single request available in the ServiceDesk Plus Request module

1. Click the Requests tab in the header pane. This opens the Requests list.
2. Click the Title of the request which you want to edit from the view list page. This opens the View Request page. Click the Edit tab on the top of the page to modify the request details. [OR]

From the request list view page, click the edit icon beside the request to be edit. This opens the Edit Request form where you can add resolution while editing, and change the status of the request from open to close, and so on.

Alternatively, you also have an inline edit option to modify the request details in the view request page. Click the edit button beside each block which opens the request form fields in editable format. This comes in handy when you need to edit the values of the entire block say Request Details one by one.

Note: While editing the request details block, the SLA, department and the template is in non-editable mode. The SLA of the corresponding site selected on editing the request gets applied. The department of the corresponding technician selected on editing the request gets displayed.

4. On modifying the values, click Update Request to save the changes. If you do not want to save the changes, click Cancel.

Edit more than one Request

You have an option to edit more than one request simultaneously. For instance, you want to assign a group say, Printer to ten requests relating to Printer Problem or you want to assign a Category to bulk requests. Instead of editing the requests individually you can perform a bulk edit to edit the requests instantly.

1. Select the check box beside the requests to be edited from the request list view page.
2. Click Edit Request button. The Edit Request page opens. The title displays the request IDs that are grouped together to edit.
3. Edit the fields, say Category into Desktop. This will replace the categories of all the requests grouped together.
4. Specify the Reason for Updating the request in the given text field.
5. Click Update button to save the changes.
Close Request

When a requester is completely satisfied that his/her request has been completely attended to and the reported problem has been resolved, then the request can be moved to closed state. You can close a single request or multiple requests from the request module.

While closing a request in ServiceDesk Plus, you need to check if Request Closing Rule and Request Closure Code are configured and enabled in Admin tab -> Helpdesk Configurations.

Request Closing Rule imply certain rules while closing a request like confirming the users acknowledgement of the resolution and setting the mandatory request parameters for closing the request. Whereas, Request Closure Code denote the reason behind closing the request.

Close a single request

To close a request from the request details page,

1. Click Requests tab in the header pane. The request list view page opens.
2. Click the Subject link of the request.
3. From the details page of the selected request, click Close sub tab.
4. The request is closed and a success message appears.

NOTE:

- If you have selected the mandatory fields to be filled while closing the request in Request Closing Rule, then enter the mandatory fields and close the request.
- If you have enabled the option "Yes, prompt a message" to confirm a users acknowledgement in Request Closing Rule, then a Close Request dialog box appears.
1. If the requester has acknowledges the resolution, select 'Yes' radio button. Else, enable 'No' radio button.
2. Enter relevant Comments in the field provided.
3. Select the Request Closure Code from the drop down. The Request Closure Code denotes the reason for closing the request.
4. Enter relevant Request Closure Comments in the field provided.
5. Click Close to close the request. If you do not wish to close the request then click Cancel.

Alternatively, you can also change the status of the request to "Closed" through in-line edit or when the request is in editable mode.

Close more than one request

You can close bulk requests from the request list view. To close more than one requests,

1. In the Request list view page, enable the check box beside requests to close.
2. Click Close button. The selected requests are closed followed by a success message in the request list view page.

If you have selected Request Closing Rules like setting the mandatory fields before closing a request or prompting a message to confirm user’s acknowledgement, then refer the steps in the above NOTE to close the requests.

View Closed Requests

You can view all the closed requests from the list view. To view the closed/completed requests,

1. From the Request list view page, select Completed Requests from the Filter drop-down menu. This lists all the closed and resolved requests.
2. Select **My Completed Requests** from the **Filter drop-down** to view the list of closed/resolved requests that were assigned to you.

**Reopen Closed Requests**

Requests can be reopened from the closed state. You can reopen bulk requests or a single request. To reopen a single request,

1. From the **Request list view** page, select **Completed Requests** from the **Filter drop-down** to view the list of closed/completed requests.
2. Select the **Subject** link of the closed request to reopen. Click **Edit**. You can also bring the request in editable mode through in-line edit.
3. When the request is in editable mode, change the status field from **Closed** to **Open**.

When a request is opened from the closed state, you can also change the **Due By time** of the request. Also, the completed date is removed once the request is reopened. When this request is finally closed, the **completed date** is updated and the **Time taken to close** is recalculated taking the reopened period into account.

To reopen bulk requests from the list view,

1. From the **Request list view** page, select **Completed Requests** from the **Filter drop-down** to view the list of closed/completed requests.
2. Enable the check box beside the requests to reopen.
3. Click **Edit Request** button. The **Editing Requests** window pops-up specifying the Request ID. All the fields in this pop-up window are editable.
4. Change the status field to **Open**.
5. Click **Save**.
6. A success message appears indicating that the selected requests are reopened.
Pick up Requests

ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus provides the option of self-pick up of requests that are received in the requests module. If there are unassigned requests in the application, then the technicians can themselves pick up requests. This increases the efficiency in the turnaround time of the IT help desk team as the requests are assigned and answered sooner and waiting time of the request till it is assigned is reduced.

To pick up requests,

1. Click the **Requests** tab in the header pane. The unassigned requests will be in bold font.
2. Select the requests you would like to pick up by enabling the check box. Click **Pick up** button. The selected request will be assigned to you. (Or)
3. You can also pick up requests after viewing the request details. Click the title of the request to open **View Request** page.
4. Click **Assign** tab. Select **Pick Up** option to pick up the request.
Assign Request to Technician

Each request will be owned by a technician, who would be responsible for handling the request till it is closed.

To assign request to technician,

1. Click Requests tab in the header pane. This opens the Requests list.
2. Click the Title of the request for which you have to assign a technician. This opens the view request page.
3. The View Request page lists the Tasks that can be performed on the requests on top of the page. Here click the Assign link and select the assign option. This opens Assign Group and Technician page as shown below.

   Based on the issue you can assign this request to the appropriate Group and as well as to the Technician who belongs to that group. Or you can select either of the one. If you wish to select the technician alone then choose the technician from the list and click Assign button to assign the technician to handle the request. And when the technician logs into ServiceDesk Plus, he/she would see this request in the My Open Requests list.

4. Alternatively, you can also assign technician using inline edit option. Click the technician name shown in the request details block. This opens the drop down box as shown below. Select the technician from the list and click the icon to select the technician name else click cancel icon.

Bulk assign requests to technicians

You can also assign more than one request at a time to a technician.

1. In the Requests list view, select the requests to be assigned a technician by enabling the check box beside left side of each of the request title.

   Select the Technician from the drop down menu.

   Click Assign button to assign the selected requests to the technician.
Unassign Technician from Request

Each request will be owned by a technician, who would be responsible for handling the request till it is closed. You can unassign a request from the request and move it back to unassigned status.

To unassign a technician,

1. Click the Requests tab in the header pane. This opens the Requests list.
2. Click the Title of the request for which you have to unassign a technician. This opens the view request page.
3. The View Request page lists the Tasks that can be performed on the requests on top of the page. Click the Assign link and select the Assign option from the list. Alternatively, you can also unassign technician using inline edit option. Click the technician name shown in the request details block. This opens the drop down box as shown below. Select the technician name from the list and click the icon to select the technician else click cancel icon.
4. Now select the NONE option and click Assign. The request will be unassigned. If you do not wish to unassign the technician then you can just close the pop-up by clicking Cancel.
**Start / Stop Request Timer**

In certain scenarios, technicians may be unable to close a request due to lack of necessary information or awaiting a certain response from the requester to continue work on the request. In such circumstances, the request remains in the open state, eventually leading to the violation of SLA that governs the request. Also, the time taken to close the request reflects the efficiency of the technician handling the request.

With the **Start/Stop Timer** option, you can move the request status to On Hold until you are ready to resume work on the same.

**NOTE:** When requests are sent for approval to the concerned authority, the helpdesk team may not be held responsible for the delay in approval process. In order to minimize the SLA violations by the helpdesk team, you can stop the timer automatically for requests with status as ‘pending approval’ using the option available in Self Service Portal Settings.

The Start/Stop Timer is available under the Actions drop-down menu in the Request details page. To access the option,

1. Click the **Requests** tab in the header pane.
2. Click the **Subject** link of the request in the **Requests** list page. The Request details page is displayed.

**Stop Timer**

To stop timer for a request,

1. Click **Actions** drop-down menu and select **Stop Timer** option. A pop-up window opens, requesting the reason for stopping the timer.
2. Enter the relevant reason to stop timer in the text area provided for the same.
3. Click **Add** button. The status of the request is changed to **On Hold** and the reason gets appended to the request history.

**Start Timer**

To restart timer for the request,

1. Click **Actions** drop-down menu and select **Start Timer** option. A pop-up window opens, requesting the reason for starting the timer.
2. Enter the relevant reason to stop timer in the text area provided for the same.
3. Click **Add** button. The status of the request is changed to **Open** and the reason gets appended to the request history.
Add a Note

When you would like to add some additional information including technical information to a particular request based on your observations, you can use Add Notes. You can also use notes to update the status of the request.

To add notes to a request,

1. Click Requests tab in the header pane.
2. Click the Subject link of the request to add the note.
3. In the Request Details page, click Actions drop-down menu and select Add Notes link. The Add Notes form pops up.
4. Enter your content in the text field.

There are two types of notes that can be added to the request namely, Public Notes and Private Notes.

Public Notes: Public notes can be viewed by the requesters and technicians.

Private Notes: Private notes can be viewed only by the technicians (all the technicians).

5. If you want the notes to be visible to the requesters (public), then select the Show this notes to Requester also check box. Else only the technicians will be able to view the notes (private).
6. If you want to notify the technician about the addition of the note, then select the check box, E-mail the technician for notes addition.
7. Click the Add Note button. The note is added at the bottom of the request along with a date and time stamp. The name of the person who added the note is also displayed.
8. You can add any number of notes to a request. The added notes will be displayed in the descending order with recently added note first. You can also edit or delete the notes that have been added.
Add a Work Log

Using this option, the time spent by a technician on a request can be recorded. The total time spent excludes the time that the request was kept on hold. It takes the time of creation to till the request is closed.

To add Work Log,

1. Click Requests tab in the header pane. From the request list view page, select the request for which the time spent details should be entered.
2. From the request details page, click Actions drop down menu and select Add Work Log link.
3. In the Add Work Log pop up, select the Technician resolving this request from the drop down.
4. Enter the Time (in Hours and Minutes) taken to resolve the request.
5. The Technician Cost per hour will be fetched automatically from the technician details, which is a non-editable field. If you have already entered the per hour cost of the technician while adding the technician details, then the details will be fetched automatically. If you wish to change these values, you can do so manually.
6. The Incident Cost will be automatically calculated taking the (total time spent to resolve the request * Technician’s cost per hour).
7. Specify the Executed Time (date & time) taken to resolve the problem from the calendar button.

![Add Work Log Form](image-url)
8. Specify any relevant information about the time spent in the **Description** field.
9. Click **Save** button. The work log is listed in the Work Log tab.
Add a Task

Sometimes, a request might involve multiple technician work. In that case, the request can be divided into several tasks and each task can be assigned to a technician/group.

For example, consider a scenario where a new employee joins the organization. There is a list of tasks that need to be performed such as seating location, providing a computer/laptop, installing necessary software, connecting telephone links, entering the employee's name in the active directory and so on. These operations can be considered as separate tasks and can be assigned to different technicians.

To add a task,

1. Click **Requests** tab in the header pane.
2. Click the **Subject** link of the request to which you would like to add tasks.
3. Click the **Actions** drop-down menu -> select **Add Task** option. The Tasks form opens in a pop up window.
4. To add routine tasks instantly, choose a Template from **Use Task Template** drop-down menu. The details added in the Template are populated in the Task form. Refer Task Template to know how to configure Task Template.
5. If you are manually adding a task in the Task form, specify the **Title** of the task in the given text field. This is a mandatory field.
6. Specify relevant information about the tasks in the **Description** field.
7. Select the **Scheduled Start Time** for the task based on the SLA from the calendar button. Also select the **Scheduled End Time** for the task from the calendar button.
8. The **Actual Start Time** and **Actual End Time** of the task can be selected later by the technician who works on the task.
9. Select the **Group** to which task has to be assigned. Select the **Technician** of the task from the combo box. Tasks can be assigned either:
   - to a **Group** alone,
   - to a **Group** and a specific **Technician** in the group,
   - to a **Technician** alone without selecting the group,
   - to no **Group** and no **Technician**.
10. Specify the **Status** of the task.
11. Specify any relevant comment about the task in the **Comments** field.
12. If you wish to be reminded of the task previously then select the time duration from the **E-mail me before** drop-down menu.
13. Click **Save**. The task is saved and listed in the Tasks tab. All the tasks created for the request will be listed under the tasks tab in descending order. The tasks assigned to other technicians can be viewed in their Task summary list in the home page.

Organize Tasks

In specific cases, certain tasks have to be completed in a hierarchical order either depending on priority or on dependency. This can be done by the administrator after the creation of the tasks.
NOTE:

1. Ordering Tasks is essential to set the dependencies of the task.
2. Re-ordering tasks will remove all dependencies associated with that task.

To organize tasks,

1. Click the Requests tab in the header pane.
2. Click the Title of the request under which the task to be organized is present.
3. Click Tasks tab. This will show the list of tasks for the particular request.
4. Click Organize Tasks. This opens the Organize Tasks window with the list of tasks.
5. In the Organize Tasks window, click the task that has to be moved. Re-organize the task by clicking the Up or Down Arrow buttons and change the order of the tasks in the list.

![Organize Tasks](image)

**Task Dependencies**

In some cases, the implementation of one task may depend on the execution of one or more tasks.

For example, consider the same scenario when a new employee is joining your organization. The tasks that need to be performed are,

- Entering the employee's name in the active directory
- Setting up email address
- Arranging Seating location
- Setting up user computer
- Installing necessary software and so on.
Most of these tasks are dependent on each other, like the software can be installed only when the employee is provided with a laptop. These two tasks are interdependent on each other. In this case, the task "install necessary software" depends on the execution of the task "setting up user computer".

- **Depend on Task(s):** If the current task depends on the execution of a task, then select the task from Depend on Task(s) block.
- **Dependent Task(s):** Dependent Task(s) are tasks which depend on the current task.

To set Task Dependencies, edit the task to set the dependency.

In the snapshot above, the task "Setting up user computer" doesn't depend on any other task so the **Depends on Task List** is not checked. However, the task "Installing software" depends on the current task "Setting up user computer". It is therefore marked in the **Dependents List**.
When a task is completed, an e-mail notification will be sent to group/technician of the next dependent task to alert them about the completion of the previous task.

**NOTE:** Before you enable Task Dependencies you need to Organize the Tasks. Organizing Tasks sets the order in which the task should be executed and simultaneously sets the order of dependencies of the tasks.

**Edit a Task**

Task editing consists of capturing dependencies among tasks, and appending/removing/changing other task parameters. To edit a task,

1. Click the **Requests** tab in the header pane.
2. Click the **Title** of the request under which the task to be edited is present.
3. Click **Tasks** tab. This will show the list of tasks for the particular request.
4. Click the task that you need to edit. The task configuration window opens.
5. Edit the necessary task parameters.
6. **Save** the parameters.

**Delete Tasks**

To delete tasks,

1. Click the **Requests** tab in the header pane.
2. Click the **Title** of the request under which the task to be deleted is present.
3. Click **Tasks** tab. This will show the list of tasks for the particular request.
4. Select the check boxes next to the tasks that need to be deleted.
5. Click **Delete** button.
6. Deleting a task will also delete all the dependencies associated with the task.
Add a Reminder

You can add reminders to the request using this add reminders option. All the pending tasks specific to the request can be added as reminders. The technician can add these task lists as a personal reminder to himself/her. On adding these reminders they get displayed in the My Reminders page.

To add a reminder,

1. Click the Request tab in the header pane.
2. Click the Title of the request to add reminders. This opens the View Request page.
3. Click on the Actions tab on the top right side of the page. Click Add Reminder link. This opens the Reminders page.
4. Specify the content in the given text field on the left side of the page.
5. Select the Date on clicking the calendar button to remind you of the task.
6. Select the Time of reminder from the combo box.
7. Select the buffer time from the Remind me before combo box.
8. Click Add button to add the reminder. You can see the reminder getting listed in the My Reminders page.
Merge Requests

You can merge two or more requests when a requester raises two similar requests for the same incident.

Consider a scenario where a requester sends an e-mail to the help desk for his desktop problem. He then calls the help desk to reconfirm his incidents registry but, in turn, the help desk creates another request for the same issue. The request, thus, is duplicated with the same requester and same incident.

In such cases, the requests can be merged and the requests/conversations would continue as a conversation thread under one request i.e., the parent request.

NOTE:

1. Please note that the purpose of merging requests is to avoid duplicate entries of an incident created by a requester.
2. Do not merge incident requests if multiple requesters have reported the same issue. Such incidents are usually analyzed and moved to Problem Management.
3. The merge operation requires special permission that can be enabled under Admin tab -> Roles.

In ServiceDesk Plus, you can merge requests from the Request List view or from the Request Details page.

Merge Requests from the List View

While merging requests from the list view, the oldest request is the parent request and the other requests are attached as conversation thread under the parent request.

To merge two or more requests from the list view,

1. Click Requests tab in the header pane.
2. In the Request List View, select the check box beside the requests to merge.
3. Click Actions drop-down menu and select Merge link.
In the above image, on merging, the oldest request (Request ID: 82) becomes the parent request. While the other request (Request ID: 83) is attached as a conversation thread in the parent request.

**NOTE:**

1. If two different technicians or groups are assigned to the requests before the merging process, then the technician or group handling the oldest request is the owner of the parent request.
2. Similarly, the parent request inherits the due date and the request fields of the oldest request.
3. The conversation threads of the child request are continued as conversations in the parent request.
4. The Notes and Work Logs of the child request will be moved to the parent request.

**Merge Requests from the Details page**

To merge two or more requests from the Request Details page,

1. Click Requests tab in the header pane.
2. Click the subject link of the request to merge.
3. In the Request Details page, click Actions drop-down menu and select Merge Request link. The Merge this Request window pops up.
4. You can search for specific request by providing a search string in Search for Request field. Or, you can also select request based on filters from the Show drop-down menu.
5. To confirm if the request to be merged is the correct one, you can view the request details by clicking the subject link of the request. Click <<Back link to go back to Merge this Request page.
6. Click Merge Request icon beside the request to merge. A dialog box confirming the merge operation appears.
7. Click OK to proceed. The selected request is merged and becomes the parent request.
For example: Say, you are in the request details page of Request ID: 82. You choose Merge Request option from Actions drop down menu to merge this request with Request ID 65. On merging, Request ID 65 becomes the parent request while Request ID 82 is attached as conversation thread to the parent request.

When the requests are merged (either from the List View or from the Details page), the details about the merged request, the technician who merged the requests and the date and time of the merge can be viewed in the History tab of the parent request.

NOTE: You can split a conversation thread of a request into a new request. Refer the topic Request Conversations - Split as new Request to know how to split a conversation into a new request.
Duplicate a Request

When a single request has multiple issues in it that requires more than a single technician to handle them, then the request can be duplicated and each of the duplicated requests can have only one issue. This makes it easier for the technician to take ownership and complete the task independently.

To make multiple copies of a request,

1. Click the Requests tab in the header pane. This opens the request list view page.
2. Click the Subject link of the request that you want to duplicate in the view list page. This opens the Request details page.
3. Click Duplicate Request option under Actions combo box. A Duplicate Request pop-up window opens, requesting you to give the number of copies.
4. Enter the number of copies in the text field provided beside the Number of Copies label. The maximum value you can enter is 9. If you need more than 9 copies of the request, then you need to invoke Copy Request again.
5. Click Copy to make the copies of the request. The new copies of the request will be assigned new request ID that will uniquely identify them. The rest of the information such as the request details and description remains as it is.

Once you have created the copies of the request, you can edit the same to contain only the necessary information and assign appropriate technicians. You can modify the request copies by editing the copy of the request.

NOTE: While copying the request, the Notes, Tasks, Reminders, Resolution and Approval status of the original request (if any) will not be present in the duplicated requests. Also, the Created Date and Due by Date will be different from that of the original request.
Link Requests

Linking Requests is a feature that primarily provides an option to relate requests to one another and set some references between them. Secondly, certain common operations such as adding notes, creating resolutions and adding work logs can also be linked between them.

When two or more requests are linked, one of the requests becomes the "Reference request" and the other requests are the "Linked requests".

Link requests from the Request List View page

To link two or more requests from the Request List view page,

1. Click Requests tab in the header pane.
2. From the Request List View page, select the requests that need to be linked by enabling the check boxes.
3. Click Actions drop-down menu -> Link Requests option.

Here, among the selected requests, the oldest created request becomes the "Reference request" and the other requests become the "Linked requests".

In the above example, the oldest request (Request ID 25) is the Reference request while the other requests later created (Request ID 26, 27 and 28) become its Linked requests.
Link requests from the Request Details page

To link two or more requests from the Request details page,

1. Click the **Subject** link of the request you want to link. This opens the Request Details page.
2. In the request details page, click **Actions** drop-down menu and select the **Link Requests** option. This opens a pop-up window with a list of requests.
3. Select the requests that need to be linked by enabling the check boxes.
4. Click the **Link Requests** button to link the requests.

In this case, the request through which the linking is done becomes the "Reference request" and other requests are its "Linked requests". This option is useful when you want to choose a specific request as the Reference request instead of the oldest created request. A relatively new request can be made as Reference request with older requests related to it as Linked requests.

In the above example, linking is done through the details page of Request ID 27 and so it is made as the Reference request. Other older and newer requests (18, 25 and 28) linked to it are its Linked requests.

**Note:** Linking requests is different from "Tasks" that are created within requests. Tasks are created in a request so that the request can be split into various activities and can be assigned to different technicians. All the tasks inside a request will be considered as a single request. However, Reference requests and the Linked requests are independent requests with only references set between them.

**Attributes of Reference Request and Linked Requests:**

1. Any Linked request can be associated with only one Reference request at any time.

Zoho Corporation
2. Even though Linked requests are linked to a Reference request, they will still be considered as independent requests with their own SLA, Business Rules, and so on.

3. If a Reference request (A) is made as the Linked request of a new Reference request (B), then all the Linked requests earlier associated to Reference request A will be linked the new Reference request B.

4. Linked requests have their own independent work logs, resolutions and notes. Operations performed over the Linked requests have no impact over the Reference request. However, any work log, resolution or note added to the Reference request can be linked to all the Linked requests by enabling corresponding check boxes.

5. Notes added to a Reference request can be made available to the Linked requests by enabling the **Add notes to all linked requests** check box. The **Discussions Notes** section in the Linked request details page will show its own notes and the notes that have been linked from the Reference request. Editing notes in the Reference request has no impact on the notes that have been earlier linked to the Linked requests.

6. Similarly, work logs added to a Reference request can be made available to the Linked requests by enabling the **Add work log to all linked requests** check box. When work log from a Reference request is added to the Linked requests, the **Time Elapsed** section in the Linked request details page will show sum of time elapsed and sum of charges for the Linked request and the Reference request. However, any changes made to the work log in the Reference request will not change the work logs that were earlier linked to the Linked requests.

7. If a resolution written for a Reference request is linked to the Linked requests, then it overwrites any resolutions earlier added to the Linked requests. Editing resolutions for a Reference request will change the same in the Linked requests. All resolutions written for a particular Linked request can be viewed under the **History** tab of that Linked request. The **Click here** link opens a pop-up with all resolutions associated with that request. Also, **Change Status to** option applies only to the Reference request and does not have any impact on Linked requests upon linking.

8. While viewing a request's details page, indications are shown if there are any requests linked to the current request. By clicking on this indication, a description box opens and by clicking on the Request ID of the linked requests, one can navigate to the requests linked to the current request. Options to remove links between requests are also provided here.
9. Links between requests can be added, modified and also removed. Each of these operations will be recorded in the request History.

10. Links can be created between requests belonging to different request templates and even different sites. But, if the technician who has permissions in the site where the Base request is present does not have permission in the sites where the Linked requests are present, then the technician will not be able to perform operations on those Linked requests.

11. Closing and re-opening of requests is independent to both Reference and Linked requests.

12. Requests cannot be linked through API or E-Mail Command features.
Delete Request

You may receive lots of mails of which some may not qualify as requests at all and hence need to be removed from the ServiceDesk Plus application completely. In such cases, you can delete those individual requests in the view request page or select a group of requests in the list view page and delete them together.

To delete individual requests,

1. Click the Requests tab in the header pane. This opens the request list view page.
2. Click the Subject link of the request that you want to delete. This opens the request details page.
3. Click Actions combo box -> Delete option. A confirmation dialog pops up.
4. Click OK to proceed deleting. The notes, work logs and conversations (if any) added to the request gets deleted. Click Cancel to abort deletion.

To delete more than one request at a time

1. In the requests list view page, select the check boxes beside the request that you wish to delete.
2. Click the Delete button. A confirmation dialog pops up.
3. Click OK to proceed deleting. Click Cancel to abort deletion.
Associate Problem to Request

You have an option to add, associate, view and detach problem to requests. Similar problem occurred to Incidents (requests) can be associated in order to track the problem occurred for the same request. You can also add new problem or detach the existing problem to a request. While adding/associating/detaching a problem the approval status of the request does not change.

- Associating Problem to request
- Add Problem to request
- Viewing Associated problem
- Detach Request from Problem

Associate Problem to Request

You can also associate the existing problem to the request. To associate problem,

1. Click the **Requests** tab in the header pane. This opens the request list view page.
2. Click the **Subject** link of the request for which you want to add a problem. This opens the request details page.
3. Click the **Actions** drop-down menu -> select **Search Problems** link. The **Associate Incidents to problem** window pops up showing the list of Open Problems with Incident Category by default.
4. Select the type of problem to be displayed by selecting from the **Filter Showing** combo box on the top left hand side of the page. Ex: Open Problems or All Problems and so on. On selecting the problem type the corresponding problems gets listed.
5. Select any one problem to be associated with the request by enabling the radio button beside the title of the problem.

6. Click **Associate** button to associate respective problem to the request (particular selected request). You can associate the same problem to different requests.
Once the problem is associated to the request, the View Problem and Detach from Problem option appears under Actions combo box.

Add Problem to requests

You can add new problem to requests. To add new problem,

1. From the request list view page, click the Subject link of the request for which you want to add a problem. This opens the request details page. Click New Problem button on the right hand side of description field.

[OR]

Alternatively, you add a new change from the Associate Problem to Incident pop up page. Click New Problem button below the filter showing combo box. This opens the New Problem form.

2. The details such as Status, Impact, Urgency, Priority, Category, Sub category, Item along with Subject and Description remains the same as of the request. If required, you can modify the same on selecting from the combo box.

3. Select the Reported By requester from the list by clicking on the Requester icon. This opens the requester list page and click the requester title.

4. Select the Technician from the combo box.

5. Select the Due by Date and the Closed Date from the calendar button.

6. Select the affected IT Services from the list by clicking on the icon. This opens the Services Affected pop up box. Select the affected IT services and Save the changes.

7. Select the Assets Involved with the problem by clicking the icon. This opens the Select Assets page. Select the Type of Assets or the category of assets to be involved from the combo box. Ex: Workstations, Routers, Switches and so on. Select the Available Assets under the selected type from the list and move to Assets involved using >> button. And Save the changes.

8. If you have any file attachments for the problem click the Attach File button and attach files. The maximum size of an attachment is 10 MB.

9. Save the changes. A new problem gets added in the problem list view page.

View Associated Problems

You have an option to view the newly added problems or the problems associated to the request.

To view the problem,

1. From the request list view page, click on the request for which you wish to view the problem. This opens the request details page.

2. Click View Problem button on the right hand side of the request description.

[OR]

Click Actions drop-down menu -> select View Problem option. This displays the Problems Details page of the problem added/associated to the request.
Detach Request from Problem

If you want to add another problem to the request then the existing problem has to be detached. To detach a problem,

1. From the request list view page, click the request you wish to detach the problem. This open the request details page.
2. Click Actions combo box -> Detach from Problem option. The request is detached from the problem.
Associate Change to Request

In some cases, a change may arise due to a request or a change may lead to the creation of a request. In either case, you can associate change to the request.

**NOTE:** While associating change to a request, the status of the request does not change.

To associate change to a request,

1. Click **Requests** tab in the header pane.
2. In the Request List view, click the **Subject** link of the request to associate the change.
3. In the Request Details page, click **Change Request** link. The **Change Request** dialog box pops up.

From the Change Request dialog box you can,

- **Associate the change initiated due to this request**
- **Associate the change due to which this request is raised.**

4. To associate the change, click the associate link icon. The **Associate Change to Incident** window pops up showing the list of Open Changes with Incident Category by default.
5. Select the type of change to be displayed by selecting from the **Filter Showing** combo box on the top left hand side of the page. Ex: Open Change or All Change and so on. On selecting the change type the corresponding changes gets listed.
6. Select any one change to be associated with the request by enabling the radio button beside the title of the change.
7. Click **Associate** button to associate change to the request. The Change ID of the change is displayed. Once the change is associated to the request, the **Detach Change** icon 🍏 appears beside the Change ID.

**NOTE:**

1. If a change needs to be initiated due to a request, then you can add change from **Change Request** pop up. Click the **New Change** icon 🌟 to access the form. Refer Create New Change to know how to add a change request.
2. In the Request Details page, an Associated Change link appears indicating that a change is associated to this request.
3. You can associate a change to different requests.

**Detach Change from Request**

If you want to associate another change to the request, then the existing change has to be detached.

To detach a change,

1. From the Request Details page, click **Associated Change** link. The **Change Request** dialog box pops up.
2. Click **Detach Change** icon 🍏 beside the Change ID. The change is detached from the request.

**Viewing the Change**

To view the change associated to the request,

1. From the Request Details page, click **Associated Change** link. The **Change Request** dialog box pops up.
2. Click the **Change ID** link to view the change details. The details of the change are displayed.
Print the Request

You can customize the print preview of the request to satisfy your needs. To print a request,

1. Click the Requests tab in the header pane.
2. Select the Title of the request you wish to print.
3. Click Actions drop down list -> Print Preview option. The print preview of the request opens in a pop-up window.
4. By default, all the check box is enable under Select the required information block. To customize the print preview, disable the check box of the information that is not required. The disabled information disappears from the print preview.
5. Click the Print menu item from the browser File menu.
6. The default printer associated with your workstation is invoked. Set the required options and click OK. You can collect the printed copy of the request at the printer that is linked to your workstation.
Add a Resolution

You can add resolutions for the issues reported in the requests.

To add a new resolution,

1. Click the Requests tab in the header pane. This opens the request list view page.
2. Click the request Title for which you want to add the resolution.
3. Check if a resolution already exists for the request by clicking the Resolution tab in the Request details page.
4. If no resolution is available for the request, then the plain html text page is displayed. Specify the resolution in the text field.
5. On specifying the resolution the status can be changed by selecting the status from the combo box.
6. You can also add Time Spent Entry details for the request in this page.
7. Save the resolution. You can see the resolution is displayed in this page.
8. If you wish to add the specified resolution to the solutions database, then click Save and Add to Solutions, or else click Save.
9. On selecting Save and Add to Solutions, you get a New Solution form. The title of the solution is automatically filled with the title of the request. The Contents is filled with the resolution. If you wish you can edit the contents.
10. From the Topic drop-down list which contains all the available topics, select the relevant parent topic for the solution.
11. Enter relevant keywords for the solution in the Keywords text box. Separate each keyword by a comma. This option is provided for the users to improve the search capability and get appropriate solution for the problem.
12. If needed you can also attach files to the solution.
13. Click Add. This also adds the resolution to the list of solutions.

These added resolutions can be used for various purposes. One of them is to add these resolutions as knowledge base articles which can be used for future reference to solve the same issue if reported. The resolution of the request also helps other technicians to know the kind of solution provided to the reported issue. This serves as a documented proof of the way a reported issues was resolved.
Search for a Solution

From the request, you can search for solutions that might help you solve the issue described in the request.

To search for a solution,

1. Click the Requests tab in the header pane. This opens the request list view page.
2. Click the request Title for which you need to look up the solution.
3. In the View Request page, click the Resolution tab.
4. Click Search Solution link. Alternatively, you can also click the Search Solutions option under Actions combo box in the task block.
5. In the Search Solutions page, provide a search string in the Search field and click Search or press Enter. The solutions that match the search string are displayed.
Submit for Approval

For some incident and service requests you may want approval from higher officials before you proceed with resolving the request. The **Submit for Approval** option enables you to send an e-mail notification to the user to approve the request.

While most incident requests do not require an approval process, the service requests, on the other hand, may go through multiple stages of approval. These multiple stages are usually configured while configuring the work flow of a service item. Refer Service Item - Work Flow under Admin Configurations -> Service Catalog to know more on configuring multiple stage approval.

**NOTE:**

1. The Approvers may be technicians or requesters with permission to Approve Service Request and should possess an e-mail address in the application.
2. Apart from multiple stage approval, the steps to submit incident and service requests are similar. The topic explains steps to submit service request for approval.

**Submitting Service Request for Approval**

The Approval Details is usually configured while configuring the Service Request. You can configure up to 5 stages of approvals for a service request. Each stage may possess one or more approvers.

If you have not configured the Approval Details for a service request and want to submit the request for approval, then

1. Click **Requests** tab in the header pane.
2. Click the **Subject** link of the request to submit for approval.
3. In the Request Details page, click **Actions** drop-down menu and select **Submit for Approval** option. The **Submit for Recommendation** window pops up.
4. Specify the **To** address in the field. If you want to specify more than two e-mail addresses then use comma as the separator.
5. By default, the **Subject** of the e-mail is specified. You can edit the same, if required. The Subject is a mandatory field.
6. Specify the relevant **Description** in the given text field. The **$ApprovalLink** is a variable and should be available in the mail to replace the variable with the link where you have the request details.
7. Click **Send**. An e-mail notification is sent to the users specified in the To address. Using the link in the mail, the approver can approve/reject the request.

Simultaneously, the **Approvals** tab appears between the Work Log tab and History tab. The Approvals tab lists the e-mail address of the approvers, the status of the approval, the date and time of the approval notification, the date and time when the approver had approved/rejected the request and the comments provided by the approver.

**NOTE: Submitting Incident Requests for Approval** follows similar steps (Step 1 to Step 7) as Submitting Service Request for Approval.
From the Approvals tab of a service request, you can either add the next consecutive approval stages or add another approver for a stage. You can also resubmit notification to an approver, if required.

**Adding Approver to Stage**

To add another approver to a stage,

1. Click **Add** button. The **Submit for Recommendation** window pops up.
2. Follow Step 4 to Step 7 in Submitting Service Request for Approval to send an e-mail notification to the approver.

**Adding an Approval Stage**

To add the next approval stage,

1. Click **Add Stage** button. The **Submit for Recommendation** window pops up.
2. Follow Step 4 to Step 7 to send an e-mail notification to the approver.

**Multiple Stage Approval**

The multiple stage approval are based on the notifications enabled in Work Flow.

If **Send approval notification automatically when a service request is raised** is enabled, then an approval notification is sent to the concerned authority each time a service request is raised. If you have configured multiple stages of approvals, then the notification is sent to the next consecutive stage only on approval from the previous stage i.e., any one approver can approve the service request.
If **All configured approvers have to approve the Service Request** is enabled, then its mandatory for all the configured approvers to approve the service request. If anyone of the approver (at any stage) rejects the service request, then the request does not proceed to the next stage.

**NOTE:** If you have selected more than one approver in a stage, then all the approvers in that stage should approve the request.

### Resubmitting approval notification

To resubmit the notification to an approver,

1. Select the check box beside the approver and click **Send** button. A dialog box confirming the operation appears.
2. Click **OK** to proceed. An e-mail notification is resubmitted to the selected approver.

### Deleting an Approver

You can delete an approver from any stage before the approver records his decision. If the approver has recorded his decision, then the delete icon would not appear.

1. Click the **Delete** icon beside the approver e-mail address. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
2. Click **OK** to proceed. The approver is deleted from the list. The deleted approver will not be able to access the link provided in the e-mail notification.

---

**Zoho Corporation**
View Requester Details

When attending to a request, you may want to contact the requester to get additional information. You can view details such as the **Requester Name**, **Employee ID**, **Department** and **Site** to which the requester belongs, **Designation**, **E-mail ID**, **Phone** and **Mobile number** of the requester.

To view the requester details,

1. Click the **Request** tab in the header pane. The **Request List view** page is displayed.
2. Click the **Subject** link of a request.
3. In the Request Details page, click **Actions drop-down menu** and select **View Requester Details** link. The **Requester Details** window pops up.

4. **Close** the window after viewing the details.

Alternatively, you can also view the Requester details by clicking the **Requester Name** link as shown below,
Unable to login to self service portal

Requested by Gail McDonal on Jul 6, 2011 05:25 PM

Subject
Unable to login to self service portal

Description
E-mail the Requester

Sending a response to the requester is required when a new request is received. Also, when a technician is ready to close a request, the same can be notified to the requester so that if the requester has any concerns about the same, he/she can raise. The technician can then address the same and close the request after the requester is completely satisfied with the way his/her request has been attended to.

To respond to the requester,

1. Click the Requests tab in the header pane.
2. Select the Subject link of the request in the requests list page.
3. In the Request details page, click Reply button just below the description of the request. Alternatively, you can reply to the requester from Reply drop down -> Reply. The Mail to the Requester window pops up.
4. The To field is pre-populated with the e-mail ID of the requester. If you wish to send the same information to more than one person then enter the e-mail IDs of those people in the CC field with comma as a separator.
5. Edit the Subject of the request, if required.
6. You can reply to a request using the Reply Template configured under the Admin section. Select the Reply Template from the drop down list.
7. Click Attach File button to add files as attachments to the mail.
8. Click Send to send the email to the requester. You can save the email and send it later to the requester by clicking Save. The email is saved as draft, in the request details page, above the title of the request along with Send for review and Delete button. To send the draft for review to the concern authority, click Send for review. A pop up as shown below appears,

![Send for review](image)

9. Enter the e-mail ID in the To field. Click Send. The draft is sent for review.
The responses that have been sent to the requester can be viewed as conversations in the request details view.

**NOTE:** While editing the subject of the e-mail, ensure that the request ID value remains intact with the # symbols beside it. Else, the threading of requests may not be proper.
Forward the Request

If the technician is unable to resolve a request and requires further assistance, then the technician can forward the request to other technicians. The conversation threads between the technicians are private and hence cannot be viewed by the requester.

To forward a request,

1. Click the Requests tab in the header pane. This opens the request list view page.
2. Click the Title of the request in the requests list page.
3. In the View Request page, click Forward button just below the Request Description. Alternatively, you can click Forward the Request option under Reply combo box. This opens the Forward Request form.
4. Enter the e-mail ID of the person to whom you wish to forward the request in the To field. You can also mark a copy of the forward to others. To do this, enter their e-mail IDs in the CC field.
5. Edit the Subject and Description of the e-mail.
6. Click Attach a File button to add files as attachments to the mail
7. Click Send. The request is sent to the e-mail IDs mentioned in the To and CC field. The forwarded requests will be shown in the conversation block.
E-mail the Technician

To e-mail a technician

1. Click the Requests tab in the header pane.
2. Click the Title of the request from the requests list page.
3. In the View Request page, on the right-side Tasks block, under Notify, click Email the Technician. This opens the Mail to Technician form.
4. Enter the E-mail ID in the To field. This is a mandatory field.
5. Edit the Subject and Description of the e-mail.
6. Click Attach a File button to add files as attachments to the mail. All the newly attached files will be listed in the Newly attached files field.
7. Click Send. An e-mail is sent to the technician. To send the information to more people, enter their e-mail IDs in the To field or CC separated by comma.
8. You also have an option to Save the mail as draft copy for later use.
9. If you wish to send the drafted mail for review to the higher authority then click Send for review button.

A technician can be notified when a new request is assigned or an already existing request is reassigned to him/her.
SMS the Technician

ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus enables you to notify technicians through SMS. This option is available to the technicians assigned to requests.

To send an SMS to a technician,

1. Click the Requests tab in the header pane.
2. Select the Subject link of the request. Make sure that a technician is assigned to the request.
3. From the Request details page, click Reply sub tab -> SMS the Technician option. A Mail to Technician window pops-up with the To address as the SMS Mail ID configured for the technician in the admin tab.
4. Add your message in the Description field.
5. Click Send. The notification is added as a request conversation.

Before sending the SMS alert to technician, you can send it for review to your higher officials. Click Send for Review button in Mail to Technician pop up window. A Send for Review dialog pops-up. Enter the To mail address and click Send.

To automatically alert the technician when a new request is assigned to them, click Alert Technician by SMS when a request is assigned option in Notification Rules under Admin tab. You can also modify the default content for Subject and Description by selecting Customizing Template link in Notification Rules.
Request Conversations

ServiceDesk Plus displays the mail transactions happening between the technician handling a request and the requester, as conversations. At times, the technicians can converse with other technicians regarding the request which also gets listed in the conversation block. The conversations are listed one below the other in the ascending order of the time when the notification (response) was sent (received). You can choose to view either All conversation or Requester conversations.

To view all the conversation details, click the View All Conversation link at the top of this block. This shows all the conversation between the technician and the requester and between the technicians. If the conversation has any attachments, then the attachment icon can be viewed in this block. To view only the requester conversation, click View Requester Conversation link.

Split As New Request

You can choose to split the requester’s conversations into a new request. To split the conversation as a new request,

1. Expand the conversations by clicking on the View All Conversation link or by clicking the button on the left of the row which you wish to expand.
2. Click Split as New request button at the right bottom of that conversation.

This splits the conversation into a new request.

Delete Conversation

You can delete a specific requester’s conversation. To delete a conversation,

1. Expand the conversations by clicking on the Expand all link or by clicking the > button on the left of the row which you wish to expand.
2. Click Delete button at the right bottom of that conversation. A confirmation pop-up opens.
3. Click OK in the confirmation pop-up to delete the thread/conversation.
View Requests based on Filters

The Filter drop-down menu consists of default filter list which classifies requests into three categories namely, My Group, Requests and My Views. The filter has options to restrict the list view to display Service Requests, Incident Requests or both, and link to view Archive Requests.

To view requests under the filter categories,

1. Click Requests tab in the header pane.
2. Select the Filter drop-down menu to view the list of filters.

My Groups

The support groups to which you are assigned is listed under My Groups. You can view all the requests raised for a group using the filters.
Requests

The Requests consists of default filters which classifies requests based on the status.

- **My Open Or Unassigned Requests**
  
  All your open requests and the requests that are not assigned to any technicians will be listed under this option.

- **Unassigned Requests**
  
  All the requests that have not been assigned to any technician will be listed under this option.

- **My Open Requests**
  
  Lists all the open request assigned to the logged in technician.

- **My Requests On Hold**
  
  All your assigned requests that are kept on hold will be listed under this option.

- **My Overdue Requests**
  
  Lists the requests assigned to the logged in technician that has exceeded the due date.

- **My Pending Requests**
  
  Lists the requests assigned to the logged in technician that is unfinished.

- **My Requests Due Today**
  
  Lists the requests assigned to the logged in technician that is due to complete on that day.

- **My Completed Requests**
  
  Lists the requests assigned to the logged in technician that are completed and closed.

- **Requests Pending My Approval**
  
  Lists all the request that require approval from the logged in technician.

- **All My Requests**
  
  Lists all the requests assigned to the logged in technician.
• **Open Requests**
  Lists all the open request irrespective of the technician.

• **Requests On Hold**
  Lists all the request that are in on hold status.

• **Overdue Requests**
  Lists all the request that have exceeded the due date.

• **Requests Due Today**
  Lists all the request that are due for the day.

• **Requests Pending Approval**
  Lists all the request that are pending for approval.

• **Pending Requests**
  Lists all the unfinished request irrespective of the technician.

• **Completed Requests**
  Lists all the closed request irrespective of the technician.

• **All Requests**
  Lists all request irrespective of the status (closed, pending, open, on hold) and technician.

**My View**

The customized private views are listed under **My Views**. You can create a custom view from **Settings** drop-down menu -> **New Custom View** option.
Customize Request List View

You can customize the request list view to display the columns of your choice.

To customize the list view,

1. Click the **Requests** tab in the header pane.
2. Click the **column edit** icon available at the corner of the request list headers. This opens the available columns that can be displayed in the list view. All those that are visible currently, will have the check box beside them selected.

3. To remove a column, remove the selection from the respective check box beside the column name.
4. To add a column to the list view, select the unchecked select box beside the column name.
5. To change the column order, click the up and down arrow after selecting the column that you wish to move.
6. Click **Save**.

This will add only those columns which you have chosen in the list view.
Search for a Request

You can search for a request using the **Keyword Search** or the **Column-wise Search** option.

**Keyword Search**

In **Keyword Search** option, you can search for requests based on a keyword, say laptop or printer. The keyword can be from the subject or description of the request or a value of the request fields (Priority, Status, Group and so on) like High, Open, Printer Team and so on. You can also search for requests assigned to a technician by entering the name of the technician as the keyword. The search results in a list of requests which matches the keyword.

You can further sub divide the request module to search based on **Notes**, **Work Log**, **Resolution** and **Request ID**.

To perform **Keyword Search**,

1. Click **Requests** tab in the header pane.
2. In the **Search** block, select **Requests** in **Search in** drop down menu.
3. You can further fine grain your search by selecting the **Sub Modules**. You can search for requests based on Notes, Work Log, Resolution and Request ID.
4. Enter a keyword relevant to the request in **Enter Keyword** text field.

**NOTE:**

- If you have selected the sub module as **Notes**, then you can either enter a relevant keyword from the notes content or the name of the technician who has added the note.
- If you are searching requests based on **Work Log**, then enter the technician's name as the keyword.

5. Click **Go**. The search results in requests that match the keyword.
Column-wise Search

Column-wise Search allows you to search for requests using two or more keywords. For example, if you want to search for all the High priority requests assigned to the Printer Group with Subject as Printer, then you can do so using column-wise search option.

**NOTE:** You cannot search for requests based on any of the date fields of the request.

To perform column-wise search,

1. Click Requests tab in the header pane.
2. In the Request List view page, click Search icon at the end of the request list view headers. This opens the search field just below every column that is visible in the list view.
3. Enter the search key in field under the column of your choice.
4. Click Go. The search results matching the search string(s) are displayed.
Multi-site on Requests

An organization can have branches spread across different regions and sites of the globe to handle various specialized activities. In this globally distributed environment, a request can be raised from a site to a technician located in another branch of the organization. The request is resolved based on the admin configurations (operational hours, holidays, SLA and business rules) of the site from which the request was raised. Hence with site base configuration, the request module experiences an immense change.

If an organization has no branches and hence no sites configured, then while creating a new request then the default admin configurations gets applied to resolve the request.

Key entities in Request module

Creating Requests

- The admin configurations of the selected site in the new request form will get applied to the request.
- The Groups and Technicians corresponding to the selected site will be listed. Groups act as a filter in choosing the technician to resolve the request.
- A request template with the group and technician pre-filled with values needs to be re-selected on choosing the requester, if the group/technician is not associated to the requester's site.

Editing Requests

If a request needs to be routed to a technician in another site, then on selecting the site, the SLAs and business rules for the site will be applied and the due by time recalculated accordingly.

Viewing Requests

Technicians can view all the requests of a site if,

- The technician is associated to the site and has the viewing permission as 'All' in Configuring Roles.
- The technician is associated to the site with the viewing permission as 'All in associated sites'.
Assigning Technicians

ServiceDesk Plus provides you with an option to bulk assign requests to technicians. The request can be assigned to the technician if,

- The technician is associated to the site where the problem persists.
- The technician has the permission to view the requests in all sites. This can be done in Configuring Roles.

If the technician is not associated to the site where the problem persist and if the technician has restricted view permissions then an error message occurs while assigning the request to the technician as shown below,

---

**Scenario : Roles on Requests**

A requester from London raises a demo related request persisting in Sydney through self-service portal of the ServiceDesk Plus application. By default, the admin configurations for London will be applied to the request. The request is handled by John, a technician in London. John can view and re-assign the request,

- If John is only associated to London with the viewing permissions as ‘All’, then he will be able to view the requests in all the sites of the organization. He will be able to assign the request to technicians associated in other sites but if he assigned the request to himself, then the site field automatically changes to London.
• If John is only associated to London with the viewing permissions as 'All in associated sites', then he will be able to view all the requests raised in London. He will not have the privilege to re-assign the request to technicians in other sites.

• If John is associated to London and Sydney with the viewing permissions as 'All in associated sites', then he will be able to view all the requests raised in London and Sydney. He can re-assign the request to request to a technician in Sydney but not to technicians in other sites of the organization.

On assigning the request to Amy, the technician in Sydney, the SLAs and business rules configured for Sydney will be applied to the request and the due by time re-calculated. If Amy is assigned to a Group say, Support, then she can view and re-assign the request,

• If Amy is associated to Sydney along with the viewing permissions as 'All in Group and assigned to him', then she will be able to view all the requests raised in the groups to which she is assigned.

• If Amy is associated to Sydney and London with the viewing permission 'All his requests', then she will be able to view only the requests assigned to her. She will be able to re-assign the requests to other technicians in London and Sydney but will not be able to view the request as it does not fall under their permitted scope.
Mobile Client

ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus Mobile Client improves the efficiency and productivity of your help desk system by providing technicians with the ability to instantly access their requests while they are away from their desk through their mobile devices.

It is a complete browser based web application supporting various request features like viewing requests, adding requests, closing resolved requests, assigning request, adding work log, adding resolution and deleting requests.

ServiceDesk Mobile Client is compatible with mobile devices such as Blackberry and iPhone, and is accessed through the mobile browser on typing the URL http://<machine-name>:<port-number>, which redirects to the 'mc' context.

Features

- A browser based web application to access tickets from any location.
- Supports request module features such as, creating incident request, viewing request details, adding resolution to a request, adding work log, assigning technician to a request, closing completed requests and deleting requests.
- Any actions performed on the requests are based on the Roles assigned to the technicians.

Limitations

- Currently, ServiceDesk Plus Mobile Client supports only request module.
- Editing/Modifying requests cannot be performed.
- Compatible with mobile devices such as Blackberry and iPhone.

Logging into ServiceDesk Plus

On connecting your mobile device to http://<machine-name>:<port-number>/mc, the screen opens to displays the login page.

- **Username:** Username of the technician.
- **Password:** Password of the technician.
- **For Domain:** Choose the domain of the logged in technician. If the domain is not selected then it is considered as 'Not in any domain'.
- **Is AD Auth:** Select the check box for AD authentication.

**NOTE:** ServiceDesk Plus Mobile Client does not support Single Sign-On (SSO)
Click **Login** button.

On logging into the application from your mobile device, the home page displays the **Dashboard**, **Requests** and **Log out** options.
- **Dashboard:** Displays the number of Overdue Requests, Requests Due Today and Pending Requests of the logged in technician.

- **Requests:** Displays the request list view with options to select, My Pending Requests, All Pending Requests and Incident/Service Requests.

- **Log out:** To log out from the mobile client.

### Dashboard

The dashboard of the logged in technician comprises of the number of all overdue requests, requests due to be completed today and the pending requests. Click an option to display the list of request under it.

To revert back to the Home page click **Home** link on the top right corner of the page.
Requests

Selecting **Requests** from the dashboard takes you to **My Pending requests** by default. The requests view options comprises of My Pending Requests, All Pending Requests and Incident/Service Requests.

**NOTE:** The request list view and the actions performed on the requests are based on the roles assigned to the logged in technician.

**Request List View**

Request List View displays the title of the request, requester, status of the request, created date and time, technician assign icon, priority color code, first response time overdue flag, request overdue flag, and first response and resolution overdue flag.

![Request List View](image)

**Representation of icons from the Request List View**

- ⚠️- Indicates that the First Response Time is overdue
- 📅- Indicates that the request is overdue
- ⚠️📅- Indicates that the First Response Time and the Resolution Time are overdue
- 🖤- Indicates unassigned requests i.e., technician is not assigned to the request
- 🧑‍🔧- Indicates technician is assigned to the request.
- 🧑‍🔧绿水青山- Indicates request assigned to the logged in technician
Operations performed from the Request List View

- **Search Requests based on Request ID**: Search for requests instantly by entering the Request ID in the Search field
- **New**: Option to create new incident requests
- **Pick**: Option to pick up unassigned requests
- **Assign**: Option to assign requests to other technicians
- **Close**: Option to close completed requests

The request list view displays a total of five requests in a page. You can navigate to other pages using the navigation options below the page. To revert back to the Home page, click the **Home** link on the top right corner of the page.

Creating Incident Request

Creating incident requests is simple and instant. All you need to do is enter the **Requester Name**, **Request Title** and **Description** of the issue. To create new request, click **New** button from the Request List View.

- **Requester Name**: Enter the name of the requester raising the request. To select and search for available requesters, click **Select**.
- **Request Title**: Enter a brief summary of the request
- **Description**: Enter detailed description of the request
Click **Add** to save and add the request in the request list view.

**NOTE:**

- Requests cannot be created through Request Template though templates are configured in the server.
- Request details such as request type, priority, urgency, group, category, subcategory and item cannot be added while creating a new request.

**Viewing Request Details**

Click the request you want to view from the request list view page. The request details page displays the **Request ID**, **Requester**, **Status** of the request along with the overdue flag, **Technician** assigned to the request, **Priority** along with color code, **Due by Time** of the request, **Subject** and **Description**.

Click **More details...** link to get the entire detail of the request such as, request type, impact, status, due by time, response due by time and so on.

If the description exceeds 250 characters then **(More...)** link appears. Click the link to view the entire description.

Click **More..** button to Add Resolution and Work Log.
If the request is resolved, click **Close**. Click **Delete** to discard the request completely from the application.

**Assigning requests to technicians**

If you are assigning requests to technicians using your mobile device, then the list of all the available technicians are displayed. Requests can be assigned to technicians provided the technician is associated to the site where the issue exists.

1. Select the check box beside the request.
2. Click **Assign**. Select the radio button beside the technician.
3. Click **Assign**.

**NOTE:** Please note that an error message does not occur if a request is assigned to a technician with restricted access permission and if the technician is not associated to the site. Instead the request is not assigned to the technician.

**Adding Resolution to a request**

1. From the request details page, click **More..**
2. Click **Add** beside Resolutions. Enter the resolution in the text field.
3. You can also change the status of the resolution from **Change State to** drop down list.
4. Click **Save**.

**NOTE:**

- Resolutions can be added only as plain text.
- Resolutions cannot be created through resolution templates though the templates are configured in the server.
- Resolutions cannot be searched from Solutions module.

**Viewing/Editing Resolutions for a request**

1. Click **More..** from the request details page.
2. If the resolution is added to the request then the **Edit** and **View** link appears.
3. Click **View** to view the resolution. The resolution along with the technician submitted the resolution is displayed.
4. From the view resolution page, click **Edit** to modify the resolution. You can edit the request from **More.. - > Edit** link.
5. Edit the content and if necessary change the status.
6. Click **Save**.

**Adding Work Log for a request**

You can add the time spent details for a request from your mobile device.
Click **More..** from the request details page.

![Add WorkLog](image)

- **Technician**: The name of the logged in technician is displayed in a non-editable text by default.
- **Time Taken**: Enter the time taken to resolve the request in hours and minutes.
- **Incident Cost**: Enter the Incident Cost. The Incident Cost is *Time Taken x Technician's cost per hour*. The Technician Cost per hour is mentioned while adding a technician under **Admin -> Technician**.
- **Execution Time**: By default, the execution time displays the current date. Select the date and month from the drop down box.
- **Description**: Enter description about the time spent entry.

Click **Save**. The name of the technician along with the time taken to resolve the request and the cost is displayed. To know more on Adding Work Log refer **Cost of Request**.

**NOTE:**

- Work Log cannot be added for other technicians.
- The logged in Technician's Cost per hour should be configured in the server.
ServiceDesk Plus iPhone App

The ServiceDesk Plus iPhone App helps you perform requested related operations such as adding requests, editing requests, assigning requests to technicians, replying to requests, adding resolutions and work logs, and closing completed requests.

Features

- An iPhone App which helps access tickets from any location.
- Support Request Management features such as, creating new request, viewing request details, adding resolution to a request, adding work log, assigning technician to a request, closing completed requests and deleting requests.
- Any actions performed on the requests are based on the Roles assigned to the technicians.

The following Topics are discussed under this section,

- Downloading the ServiceDesk Plus iPhone App
- Configuring ServiceDesk Plus Server Settings
- Logging into ServiceDesk Plus iPhone App
- Request List View
- Adding Requests
- Performing Request Related Operations
- Limitations of ServiceDesk Plus iPhone App

Downloading the ServiceDesk Plus iPhone App

You can download the ServiceDesk Plus iPhone App from the iPhone App Store by searching for "ServiceDesk Plus". This will list out the ServiceDesk Plus iPhone App. It is a free App and does not require any licenses to be purchased.

After installing the App in the iPhone, a ServiceDesk Plus icon is displayed. Tap the icon to view the Login screen.
Configuring ServiceDesk Plus Server Settings

Before you login to ServiceDesk Plus iPhone App, you need to configure the **Server Name** and **Port Number** of the ServiceDesk Plus server.

To configure the server settings,

1. In the Login screen, tap **Server Settings**.
2. Enter the **Server name** of ServiceDesk Plus server. For example: demo.servicedeskplus.com
3. Enter the **Port Number** of ServiceDesk Plus server. For example: 80
4. Tap the **Protocol** of the ServiceDesk Plus server, whether server is running in HTTP or HTTPS mode.
5. Tap **Done** to save the server settings. The Login screen is displayed again.

**Logging into ServiceDesk Plus iPhone App**

To login to the ServiceDesk Plus iPhone App, you need to generate an API Key. This API Key can be generated in the ServiceDesk Plus server. The generated API Key serves as authentication between ServiceDesk Plus server and the iPhone.

**Generating API Key for Technician**

To generate API Key for a technician,

1. Login to **ServiceDesk Plus** using the username and password of an Admin user.
2. Click **Admin** tab in the header pane.
3. Click **Technicians** icon under **Users** block.
4. Click the **Edit** icon beside the technician for whom you want to generate the API Key.
5. If the technician does not have login permissions, then you can provide the same by entering the **Login Credentials** and assigning **Roles** to the technician.
6. Under API Key details, click **Generate** link. Select a time frame for the key to expire or simply retain the same key perpetually.
7. Click **Generate** button. The API Key is generated.

![API Key Generation](image)

8. Close the API Key Generation dialog box and click **Save** button.

**NOTE:**

1. Please note that the technician should be enabled with login permissions.
2. A logged in technician cannot generate an API Key for himself.
Logging into the iPhone App

1. Enter your **User Name** and **Password**.
2. Tap **Login**.

**NOTE:**

1. Please note that Technicians with an API Key can access the iPhone App through their iPhone.
2. As of now **Multiple Domain Authentication** is not supported. Say, if two technicians have similar login names in two different domains, then the technician will not be able to login in the iPhone App since the option to select the Domain in the login screen will not appear.
3. If AD Authentication is enabled in ServiceDesk Plus, then the technician should login to the ServiceDesk Plus iPhone App using his AD credentials.

Request List view

The **Request List view** displays the **Open or Unassigned requests** by default. The Request List view displays a maximum of 250 requests and each page displays a total of 50 requests. The requests are displayed along with the **Request Title**, **Requester Name**, **Due by Date** and **Priority** of the request.

Using the **Filter** drop-down menu, you can select requests based on filters. From this page, you can also **Add Requests** and configure **Request Settings**.
Configuring Settings

Settings help you consolidate your request views by displaying only selected Request Filters in the request list view and selected Request Fields in the request details page. Apart from this, you can select Logout Options to automatically logout of the application; know more about ServiceDesk Plus and a Logout button to manually logout of the application.
Filters

You can select the request filters which you want to display in the request list view. And also, select the request fields that you want to view in the request details page.

To select Request Filters,

1. Tap Request Views.
2. Select the filters you want to show in the Filter drop-down menu in the request list view. The selected filters are indicated with a tick mark.
3. Tap Settings to go back to the Settings page.

**NOTE:** If you do not select any request filters, then the default filter My Open or Unassigned requests are listed.

To select Request Fields,

1. Tap Request Fields.
2. Select the fields you want to show in the Request details page. The selected fields are indicated with a tick mark.
3. Tap Settings to go back to the Settings page.

**NOTE:** If you do not select any request fields, then the Request details page displays only the Status, Priority and Due By Date of the request.

Log Out

You can set the logout options to automatically logout of the ServiceDesk Plus application when the application is closed, or logout every 7 days or never logout of the application. Select the Logout Options.

![Logout Options](image-url)
If you want to manually logout of the application, tap **Logout**.

**Adding Requests**

To add request using ServiceDesk Plus iPhone App,

1. In the Request List view, tap the **Add Request** icon. The **Add Request** form is displayed.

2. Select **Requester** to assign a requester to this request. In the Requester List page, you can either search for an existing requester or add a new requester.

   **To search for a requester,**
   
   1. Enter the search string of the requester in the search field.
   2. Tap **Search** button. The search result matching the search string is displayed.
   3. Select the requester from the search result.

   **To add a new requester,**
   
   1. Tap the **Add Requester** icon. The Add Requester form is displayed.
   2. Enter the name of the Requester in the field provided.
   3. Tap **Done**. The Requester name is displayed in the Add Request form.

---

*Zoho Corporation*
3. Enter the **Subject** of the request. The subject is a one liner which gives a brief summary of the incident. The subject is displayed as the request title and is a mandatory field.

4. Enter the detailed **Description** of the request. Tap **Done** to go back to the Add Request form.

5. Select the **Site** where the issue persists. The Sites configured in ServiceDesk Plus server are displayed. Select the site from the list.

**NOTE:** Please note that you cannot add sites using the iPhone App.

6. Tap **Save**. The Request is displayed in the Request list view along with the Requesters Name and the Due by Date.

**Performing Request related operations**

**Viewing Request Details**

The Request Details page lists the details of the request such as the **Request Title**, **Request ID**, **Requester**, **Technician assigned to this request** and the **Request Fields**.

**NOTE:** Please note that only the request fields selected under **Settings** are displayed in the Request details page.
From the request details page, you can perform operations such as,

- Editing Request
- Picking up Request
- Assigning Technician to a request
- Closing Request
- Replying to the requester
- Deleting Request
- Adding and Editing Resolution
- Adding, Viewing, Editing and Deleting Work Log

### Editing Requests

You can edit the **Subject**, **Description**, **Requester Name**, **Status**, **Priority**, **Due By Date** of the request and the **Technician** handling the request.

To edit a request,

1. In the request details page, tap the **Edit**. The Edit Request form is displayed.
2. Edit the request fields in the form.
3. Tap **Save**.

**NOTE:**

1. Please note that while editing, you will not be able to change the status of the request to Closed. The status can only be moved to On Hold or Resolved.
2. The fields to edit are limited to **Subject, Description, Requester Name, Status, Priority, Due By Date** of the request and the **Technician** handling the request.
3. While editing the Requester Name you can only search for an existing requester. You cannot add a new requester.
4. You can select only the default values for Status and Priority fields. Any custom fields added for Status and Priority will not be displayed.

**Picking up Requests**

You can self-pickup requests from the Request details page.

To pick up requests,

1. In the Request details page, tap **Pickup Request** icon.
2. Tap **Pickup Request**. The request is assigned to you. If you do not want to pick up the request, then tap **Cancel**.

**Assigning Technician to a Request**

To assign technician to a request,

1. In the Request details page, tap **Assign Request to Technicians** icon. The **Technician Groups** are listed.
2. Selecting a Technician Group lists all the technicians associated with that group.
3. Choose the **Technician** you want to assign the request.
4. A message appears stating the request is successfully assigned to the selected technician. Tap OK.

**Closing Request**

When the requester is completely satisfied that his/her request has been completely attended to and the reported problem has been resolved, then the request can be moved to closed state.

**NOTE:** In ServiceDesk Plus Server,

1. If you have selected the mandatory fields to be filled while closing the request in Request Closing Rules, then enter the mandatory field and close the request. Else an error message appears and the request cannot be closed unless the field value is entered.
2. If you have enabled the option "Yes, prompt a message" to confirm a user’s acknowledgement in Request Closing Rule, then a Close Request page appears.

To close the request,

1. In the Request details page, tap Close icon.
2. If you have enabled User’s acknowledgement in ServiceDesk Plus server, then the Close Request page is displayed.
3. If the requester has acknowledges the resolution, tap Yes.
4. Enter relevant Comments in the field provided.
5. Tap Done. A success message appears stating that the request is closed successfully. Tap OK.

**Repying to the requester**
1. In the Request details page, tap **Reply** icon. The **Reply** form is displayed.

2. Enter the **To** address of the requester.
3. If you want to send the same information to more than one person then enter the e-mail address of those people in the **CC** field with comma as a separator.
4. The **Subject** is pre-populated. You can edit the subject if required.
5. Enter your comments in the **Comments** field.
6. Tap **Send**. An e-mail is sent to the requester.

**Deleting Requests**

1. In the Request details page, tap **Delete** icon.
2. Tap **Delete Request**. The request is deleted from the list.

**Resolution**

Using Resolution option, you can enter resolution for a request, view existing resolution and edit them if required.

**NOTE:**

- Resolutions cannot be created through resolution templates though the templates are configured in the server.
- Resolutions cannot be searched from Solutions module.

**Adding Resolution**

1. In the Request Details page, tap **Resolution**.
2. Enter the **Resolution** in the field provided.
3. Tap **Save**.
4. A message appears stating that the resolution is saved successfully. Tap **OK**.
5. Tap **Close** to go back to Request Details page.

**Editing Resolution**

1. In the Request Details page, tap **Resolution**.
2. Tap **Edit**. The Edit option is available only if a resolution is added to the request.
3. Edit the resolution and tap **Save**.
4. A message appears stating that the resolution is saved successfully. Tap **OK**.
5. Tap **Close** to go back to Request Details page.

**Work Log**

Using Work Log option, you can record the total time spent on resolving a request. In ServiceDesk Plus iPhone App, you can **Add Work Log**, **Edit Work Log** and **Delete Work Log**.

**Adding Work Log for a request**

1. In the request details page, tap **Work Log**. The **All Work Logs** List view is displayed listing all the Work Logs added for the request. If no Work Logs are added to the request, then a **No Work Log Found** message is displayed.
2. From this page, tap the **Add Work Log** icon. The **Add Work Log** form is displayed along with the Request ID.
3. Tap **Select Technician** and select the **Technician** who had resolved the request.
4. Enter the **Time Taken to Resolve** the request in Hours and Minutes.
5. Enter the **Incident Cost** of the request.
6. Select the **Time** (Date and Time) taken to Execute the request using the calendar. Tap **Done** once you select the date and time.
7. Enter any relevant information about the time spent in the **Description** field.
8. Tap **Save**. The Work Log is added in the All Work Logs List view.
9. Tap **Close** to close the Work Log window.

**Viewing Work Logs for a request**

1. In the request details page, tap **Work Log** button. The **All Work Logs** List view is displayed listing all the Work Logs added for the request.
2. The Work Logs are displayed along with the name of the Technician who had resolved the request and the **Time taken to Execute** the request.
3. Select a Work Log to view the details.
4. The Work Log details page displays the data entered while adding the Work Log.
NOTE: From the Work Log details page, you can edit and delete the Work Log

**Editing Work Log**

1. In the Work Log details page, tap **Edit**. The fields in the Work Log form turn editable.
2. All the fields in the form are editable. You can select the **Technician**, edit the **Time Taken to Resolve** the request, edit the **Incident Cost**, select the **Execution Time** and edit the **Description** of the Work Log.
3. Tap **Save**. The details are saved and listed in the All Work Logs List view.

**Deleting Work Log**

1. In the Work Log details page, tap **Delete Work Log**.
2. Tap **Delete**. The Work Log is deleted from the All Work Log List view.

**Limitations of ServiceDesk Plus iPhone App**

Currently, the ServiceDesk Plus iPhone App,

- Supports only the Request module
- Supports only Incident Requests and not Service Requests
- Does not provide an option to view Archived Requests
- Lists a maximum of 250 requests in the Request List view
- Does not support to view the entire Description of a request
- Inline edit for changing the status of a request to Closed is not supported.
• While replying to a request, the e-mail address of the requester should be manually entered
• Supports only the default values for all the Helpdesk Customizer fields
• Renaming the default values for any Helpdesk Customizer field does not change the values in the iPhone App
• Does not support Multiple domain login i.e., if two technicians have similar login names in two different domains, then the technician will not be able to login in the iPhone App since the option to select the Domain in the login screen will not appear.
• Does not support LDAP login
• Log on to drop-down menu does not appear in the login screen when Active Directory Authentication is enabled. If AD Authentication is enabled in ServiceDesk Plus, then the technician should login to the ServiceDesk Plus iPhone App using his AD credentials.
Problems

Problem Management

This module is available only in the ServiceDesk Plus Enterprise edition.

A problem is an unknown underlying cause of one or more Incidents. The objective of Problem Management is to minimize the adverse impact of Incidents and Problems on the business that is caused by errors within the IT infrastructure, and to prevent recurrence of Incidents related to these errors. In order to achieve this goal, Problem Management seeks to get to the root cause of Incidents and then initiate actions to improve or correct the situation.

The Problem Management process has both reactive and proactive aspects. The reactive aspect is concerned with solving Problems in response to one or more Incidents. Proactive Problem Management is concerned with identifying and solving problems and known errors before incidents occur in first place.
Create New Problem

The goal of problem management is to minimize the adverse impact of incidents and problems on the business that are caused by errors within the IT infrastructure and to prevent recurrence of incidents related to these errors.

The new problem form can be accessed by two ways in ServiceDesk Plus application,

a. Quick Actions drop down

b. Problems Tab

Quick Actions drop-down menu

The Quick Actions drop-down menu is a quick navigator to instantly access the New Problem form. Click Quick Actions drop-down menu -> Problem under Create New block.

Problems Tab

1. Click the Problems tab in the header pane.
2. Click the New Problem button to open the New Problem form.
3. Specify the user who has requested the problem in the Requested By field. You can also select the user by conducting a search in the requesters list using the icon.
4. Select the Technician from the drop down. If you have configured Sites in the application, then Sites drop down appears. Select the Site in which the problem has occurred. The Technicians associated to the sites gets listed in the technicians drop down.
5. Select the Category, Sub Category and Item from the drop down.
6. Select the Status of the problem, say Open from the drop down.
7. Select the Impact, Urgency and Priority of the problem from the drop down.
8. Select the Due by Date and the Closed Date from the calendar button.
9. Select the affected IT Services from the list by clicking on the icon. This opens the Services Affected pop up box as shown below. Select the affected IT services and Save the changes.
11. Select the **Assets Involved** with the problem by clicking the icon 🏛️. The **Select Assets** page pops up. Select the asset category from **Type of Assets** drop down. Say, Workstations, Printers, Routers, Switches, all assets, all site assets and so on. **All Assets** lists the assets within your permission scope.

Say, John, a technician, is associated to Site1 and Site2. John has the privilege to view the assets associated to Site 1 and Site 2. So, if John is creating a problem arising in Site 1, the Type of Assets - All Site Assets lists the assets available only in the selected Site 1 and All Assets lists the assets available in Site 1 and Site 2.

Select the **Available Assets** under the selected type from the list and move to **Assets involved** using >> button. Click **Save**.

12. Specify the **Title** of the problem. The title is a mandatory field.

13. Specify the details of the problem in the **Description** field.

14. If you have any file attachments for the problem click **Attach File** button and attach files. Maximum size of an attachment can be 100 MB.

15. **Save** the details.
View Problem Details

1. Click the Problems tab. This opens the problems list view page.
2. Click the Title of the problem to view the problem details. This opens the problem details page. By default the problem details page opens in the Problem tab.

Problem Tab

The problem tab shows general details of the problem such as, Category, Technician, Status, Priority, Urgency, Impact, Requester, Reported Date, Due By Date, Closed Date, affected IT Services and Assets Involved.

Click the Edit button to edit all the details of the change. You also have inline edit option for all the details. To modify the details of the problem click the details and choose the option from the combo box.

Analysis Tab

In the Analysis tab the technicians analyze the root cause and impact of the problem and attach the same in SDP as part of the problem. Also they specify the symptoms of the problem to identify the same problem in the future.

Solution Tab

In the solutions tab resolution for the problem is given as Workarounds and Solutions. Workarounds are temporary solutions that can be used by the technician till the actual solution is ready. Solutions are the permanent fixes to the problems raised.

Incidents Tab

The incidents tab shows the list of all associated incidents with the problem. You have Attach option to attach the incident with the problem. And the Detach Incidents option to detach associated incidents with the problem.

History Tab

The History tab shows the problem history from the time of its creation. It shows all the actions performed in the problem. The history tab also shows the incidents and the changes associated to the problem on clicking the Property View link available on the right hand side. The details that are displayed in the history are in the ascending order with the earliest performed action shown at the top of the page and the latest action at the bottom of the page.
Edit Problem

To edit a problem available in the ServiceDesk Plus Problem module

1. Click the Problems tab in the header pane. This opens the problems list view page.
2. Click the Title of the problem which you want to edit. This opens the Problem details page which lists the Tasks that can be performed on the problem.
3. Click the Edit link on the top of the page to modify the problem details. This opens the Edit Problem page. From this page you can add status of the problem from open to close, and also change the entire template to a new one apart from the regular editing of the problem details.

Alternatively, you also have an inline edit option to modify the problem details in the view problem page. Click the edit icon on the right side of each block which opens the problem form fields in editable format. After modifying the values, save the changes. This comes in handy when you need to edit the values of the entire block say Problem Details one by one.

Edit the Problem Details

In the editable problem form you can change the problem details, such as Status of the problem as Closed or Open, Impact details, Urgency and Priority details. You can also modify affected IT Services and Assets Involved in the problem.

Edit the Owner Details

You can modify the owner details and technician details of the problem. If you have configured Sites in the application, then Sites drop down appears. You can modify the site in which the problem has occurred. The corresponding technicians associated to the site are listed. You can also edit the Reported Date and Due by Date of the problem. If the problem has been closed, then the Closed date will be displayed beside this due by date.

Edit the Problem Category

You can change the Category, Sub Category and Item of the problem. If the same was not appropriately chosen at the time of submitting then the problem can be selected now from the drop down list.

Edit the Problem Description

You can modify the title and description of the problem to completely capture the actual nature of the task at hand.

Append Attachments

If you wish to attach more files to the problem, click the Attach a File button and attach as many files as you wish and click Done. You can also delete the attachments that were already available in the problem by clicking the delete icon available beside the attachment.
Close Problem

If a requester is completely satisfied that his/her problem has been attended and completely solved, then the problem can be closed.

To close a problem,

1. Click the Problems tab in the header pane.
2. Click the Title of the problem in the Problems list page. This opens the problem details page.
3. Click the Close Problem link under the Tasks block. This closes the problem.

**NOTE:** If the mandatory fields are not entered then an error message is shown asking you to enter the value in the fields.

You can reopen a problem from the closed state to open state. To do this, open the closed problem that you wish to reopen by clicking the edit button. Then change the status field from **Closed** to **Open** and save the changes. When a problem is opened from the closed state, you can change the Due by time of the problem. Also, the closed date is removed once the request is reopened. When this request is finally closed, the completed date is updated and the time taken to close is recalculated taking the reopened period into account.

**To close more than one problem at a time:**

1. In the Problem list page, select the problem from the list by enabling the check boxes available beside the Problem Name.
2. Now click the Close button.

**To view the closed requests:**

1. From the Problem list page, select Closed Problems from the Filter drop-down menu. This lists all the closed problems.
2. To view the closed problems which were assigned to you, select My Closed Problems.
Pick up Problems

ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus provides an option to the technicians to self-pick up problem. If there are unassigned problems, the technicians can pick up any of the unassigned problems from the list. As the problems are picked up and answered quickly the waiting time to assign the problem to each technician and then closing the problem will be reduced. This in turn will increase the turnaround time and the efficiency of the IT help desk team.

To pick up problems,

1. Log in to ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password.
2. Click the Problems tab in the header pane. The unassigned problems will be in bold font.
3. Select the problems you would like to pick up by enabling the check box. Click Pick up button. The selected problem will be assigned to you. (Or)
4. You can also pick up problems after viewing the problem details. Click the title of the problem to open View Problem page.
5. Click Assign tab. Select Pick Up option to pick up the problem.
Assign Technician to Problem

Each problem will be handled by a technician, who would be responsible for closing the problem.

To assign a technician to the problem,

1. Click the Problem tab in the header pane. This opens the Problems list page.
2. Click the Title of the problem for which you have to assign a technician. This opens the problem details page.
3. Click the Actions combo box on the right hand side of the page -> Click Assign Technician link from the list. This opens Assign Technician to this Problem pop up page as shown below. Select the technician from the list and Assign the problem to the technician.

4. Alternatively, you can also assign technician using inline edit option. Click the technician name shown in the problem details block. This opens the drop down box as shown below. Select the technician from the list and click the icon to select the technician name else click cancel icon.

You can also assign more than one problem at a time to a technician.

To bulk assign problems to technicians

1. In the Problems list page, select the problems to be assigned a technician by enabling the check box beside left side each of the problem title.
2. Click the **Select Technician** check box. Select the technician from the drop down list.
3. **Assign** the technician.
Problem Analysis

The goal of Problem Management is to find the root cause of the incidents and reduce the impact on the business by providing solutions and workarounds. In the problem analysis the technicians analyze the root cause and impact of the problem and attach the same in SDP as part of the problem. Also they can specify the symptoms of the problem to identify the same problem in the future. The following are the steps to understanding the cause of the problem,

- Symptoms - Evidences helping in identifying the problem.
- Root Cause - Detecting the underlying cause of the incident.
- Impact - Adverse effect of the problem on the business.

To specify the Problem Analysis,

1. Log in to ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password.
2. Click the Problems tab -> click the title of the problem for which you need to specify the analysis. This opens the problem details page.
3. Click the Analysis tab.

Add the Impact details

1. Click the Add button. You can see the text area getting displayed for the impact details.
2. Specify the impact details in the text field and Save the changes. You can see the details getting displayed below the title. (OR)
3. If you like to attach a file on the impact details instead of entering the details in the text field then click Attach File button to attach a file for the impact details. The maximum size of the attachment should be 10MB.

Add the Root Cause

1. Click the Add button. You can see the text area getting displayed for the root cause.
2. Specify the root cause in the given text field and Save the changes. You can see the details getting displayed below the title. (OR)
3. If you like to attach a file on the root cause instead of entering it in the text field then click Attach File button to attach a file for the root cause. The maximum size of the attachment should be 10MB.

Add the Symptoms

1. Click the Add button. You can see the text area getting displayed for the symptoms.
2. Specify the symptoms in the given text field and Save the changes. You can see the details getting displayed below the title. (OR)
3. If you like to attach a file on the symptoms instead of entering it in the text field then click Attach File button to attach a file for the symptoms. The maximum size of the attachment should be 10MB.
Problem Solutions

Resolution for the problem can be given as Workarounds and Solutions in ServiceDesk Plus. Workarounds are temporary solutions that can be used by the technician till the actual solution is ready. Solutions are the permanent fixes to the problems raised. The problem is considered as a known error when a solution or work around is added to a problem.

To add resolution,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your **user name** and **password**. This opens the ManageEngine ServiceDesk plus home page.
2. Click the **Problems** tab. This opens the problems list page.
3. Click the **Title** of the problem for which you like to view the reminder. This opens the problem details page.
4. Click the **Solution** tab.

To Add Workaround,

1. Click the **Add** button. You can see the text area getting displayed for the **Workaround** details. Specify the temporary solutions for the problem.
2. **Save** the details. You can see the details getting displayed.
3. Click **Attach File** button to attach a file for the impact details. The maximum size of the attachment should be 10MB.

To Add Solution

1. Click the **Add** button. You can see the text area getting displayed for the **Solution** details. Specify the permanent fixes to the problems.
2. **Save** the details. You can see the details getting displayed.
3. Click **Attach File** button to attach a file for the impact details. The maximum size of the attachment should be 10MB.
Add a Note

If you like to add additional information including technical information based on your observations to a particular problem, then you can Add Notes to that problem. You can also use notes to update the status of the problem.

To add a note to the problem,

1. Click the Problems tab in the header pane.
2. Click the Title of the problem to which you would like to add a note. This opens the problem details page.
3. Click the Add New combo box -> Select Note option. The Add Notes text pops up.
4. Enter your content in the text box. These notes are public.
5. Save the details. The note is added at the bottom of the problem along with a date and time stamp. The name of the person who added the note is also displayed.

You can add any number of notes to a problem. The added notes will be displayed in the ascending order. You can also edit or delete the notes that have been added.
Add a Task

Using this option you can assign different tasks to different technicians. Task is a sub-unit of an activity. If a problem involves multiple technicians work, then the technician whoever receives the problem (owner of the problem) can assign different tasks to different technicians.

To add a task,

1. Click the Problems tab in the header pane.
2. Click the Title of the problem to which you would like to add tasks.
3. Click the Add New menu -> select Task option. This opens the Tasks window.
4. You can either select the task template from Select Template drop down list or you can add a new task.
5. Specify the Title of the task in the given text field. This is a mandatory field.
6. Specify relevant information about the tasks in the Description field.
7. Select the Scheduled Start Time from the calendar button. Also select the Scheduled End Time for the task from the calendar button.
8. The Actual Start Time and End Time of the task will be entered by the technician doing (owning) the task.

The actual start time and end time is the real time schedule of the task. The scheduled start time and end time specified by the problem owner is a tentative time schedule.

10. Select the Group to which the task needs to be assigned. Select the Technician of the task from the combo box. Tasks can be assigned either:

- to a Group alone,
- to a Group and corresponding technician from the group,
- to a Technician alone,
- to no Group and Technician.

11. Specify the Status of the task.
12. Specify any relevant comment about the task in the Comments field.
13. If you wish to be reminded of the task previously then select the Email me before option and select the number of days from the combo box. This option will be selected based on the scheduled start time.
14. Save the values. You can see a Tasks tab getting created next to the solution tab. All the tasks created for the problem will be listed under the tasks tab in descending order. The tasks assigned to other technicians can be viewed in their Task summary list in the home page.

Add bulk Task to a Problem

Certain problem may require more than one task involving different technicians. In this case, rather than adding tasks one by one, you can add bulk tasks to the problem from the task template.

1. From the problem details page, click the Task tab. The task details page opens.
2. Click **Add Task from Template** button. The Task Template window pops up listing all the active templates.
3. Select the check box beside the templates and click **Add Template** button. The tasks selected are added under Task Details.

Delete Tasks

1. From the tasks details page, select the check box beside the task you wish to delete.
2. Click the **Delete** button. A confirmation message appears.
3. Click **OK** to continue. The task is deleted from the list.
Add a Work Log

You can enter the technicians time spent details for the problem using this option. The total time spent will exclude the time that the problem was kept on hold. It takes the time of creation to till the problem was closed.

To add a Work Log,

1. Select the Technician Name from the combo box.
2. Specify the Executed Time (date & time) taken to resolve the problem from the calendar button.
3. The Technician Cost per hour will be fetched automatically from the technician details, which is a non-editable field. If you have already entered the per hour cost of the technician while adding the technician details, then the details will be fetched automatically. If you wish to change these values, you can do so manually.
4. The Incident Cost will be automatically calculated taking the (total time spent to resolve the problem * Technician's cost per hour).
5. If there are any extra charges specify in the Other Charges field.
6. Using the above two data the Total Charges (Technician Charges + Other Charges) will be displayed automatically.
7. Specify any relevant information about the time spent in the description field.
8. Save the details.
Delete Problem

You have an option to delete individual problems or group of problems together.

To delete a problem,

1. Click the Problems tab in the header pane.
2. Click the Title of the problem to be deleted in the problems list view page. This opens the Problem Details page.
3. Click the Actions combo box on the top right hand side of the page.
4. Click the Delete link from the list. A dialog pops up asking you to confirm on the delete process.
5. Click OK to proceed. You can see the problem deleted from the list.

To delete more than one problem at a time,

1. In the Problem list view page, select the problems to be deleted by enabling the check boxes.
2. Click the Delete button. A dialog pops up asking you to confirm on the delete process.
3. Click OK to proceed deleting Or click Cancel to abort deletion.
Associate Incidents to Problem

You have an option to associate Incidents to the problem. Similar Incidents to problem can be associated in order to track the number of incidents occurred for the same problem and also to track the priority and severity of the problem based on the number of incidents.

To Associate Incidents to a Problem,

1. Click the Problems tab. This opens the Problem List View page. Click the problem title to be associated with the Incidents. This opens the problem details page.
2. Click the Actions drop-down menu on the top right side of the page. Click Associate Incidents option. The Associate Incidents to problem window pops up.
3. Select the type of requests to be displayed by selecting from the Show combo box on the top left hand side of the page. Ex: Open Requests or All Requests and so on. On selecting the request type the corresponding requests gets listed.
4. Select the Incidents from the list by enabling the check box beside each incident.
5. Click Associate Incidents to associate respective requests to the problem (particular selected problem). The associated incidents get listed in the Incidents tab in the problem details page.
Associate Changes to Problem

You have an option to associate Changes to the problem. Similar Changes to problem can be associated in order to track the number of changes occurred for the same problem.

To associate Changes to a problem,

1. Click the Problems tab. This opens the Problem List View page.
2. Click the problem Title to be associated with the Incidents. This opens the problem details page.
3. Click the Actions combo box on the top right side of the page. Click Search Changes option. This opens Associate Problem to Changes window pops up.
4. Select the type of change to be displayed by selecting from the Filter Showing combo box on the top left hand side of the page. Ex: Open Change or All Change and so on. On selecting the change type the corresponding changes gets listed.
5. Select the Changes from the list by enabling the check box beside each change.
6. Click Associate button to associate respective changes to the problem (particular selected problem).
Add a Reminder

You can add reminders to the problems using this option. All the pending tasks specific to the problem can be added as reminders. The technician can add these task lists as a personal reminder to himself/herself. On adding these reminders they get displayed in My Reminder(s) under Quick Actions.

To add a reminder,

1. Click the Problems tab in the header pane. This opens the problems list page.
2. Click the Title of the problems from the list. This opens the problems details page.
3. Click on the Add New combo box on the top right side of the page. Click the Reminder link. This opens the Reminders page. Specify the content in the given text field.
4. Select the reminder Date and Time by invoking the calendar icon.
5. To be reminded of the task in advance, select the time from the Email me before combo box.
6. The problem id is shown in non-editable mode.
7. Click Add button to add the reminder. You can see the reminder getting listed in the My Reminder(s) pop up window in ascending order.
View Reminders

You can view the reminders specific to each problem in this module.

To view reminders,

1. Click the Problems tab. This opens the problems list page.
2. Click the Title of the problem for which you like to view the reminder. This opens the problem details page.
3. Click the Actions combo box -> Click the View Reminders option. This opens the Showing All Reminders Page as shown below. This lists all the reminders in ascending order based on the date.
4. Once the task is completed you can change the state of the reminder from Open to Completed. To do this, select the reminder from the list to be closed by enabling the check box beside each of the reminder.
5. Select the Change Reminder State To Completed then -> click Change button to change the state. The reminder is stroked off to indicate the change.

Alternatively, you can also view the reminders by, clicking Quick Actions link -> My Reminder(s) option under the Reminders block. This opens the My Reminders pop up window as shown below. This shows all your reminders irrespective any specific module.

You can also add new reminders by clicking +Add New link at the bottom of the My Reminders form. The new task is added and is listed along with the already existing tasks in the ascending order based on date and time.

When you have completed the task, you can just strike out the task to indicate that it is completed by selecting the radio button beside the task summary.

You can also delete the task by clicking the delete icon beside the task.
Publish Announcements

ServiceDesk Plus gives you an option to publish announcements while fixing the problem without breaking the work flow. Say if you want to inform the company that, the mail server will be down for next five hours and you are fixing the problem then in this case you need not go to the home page to make an announcement you can publish the announcement from the problem module.

To publish an announcement,

1. In the Problem details page click the Actions combo box and select the Make an announcement option. This opens the Add New page.
2. The announcement Title and Description of the problem gets displayed automatically. This is a mandatory field. You can also modify the title and description of the problem.
3. Specify any relevant information about the announcement in the Description field. Also specify the result under the Resolution title.
4. Specify the date and time to Show this announcement between these dates from the calendar button. If this field is not entered the announcement will be displayed in the home tab for ever.
5. Select Show to Requester check box to make this announcement visible in the self-service portal.
6. To Send this announcement as mail select the check box.
7. Save the changes. You can see the announcement page as shown below. To view the next and previous announcement in the dash board click the Next and Previous buttons on the right side of the page.

You can also edit and delete the announcement in the same page.

To edit the announcement,

1. Click Edit button. This opens the Edit Announcement form.
2. Change the details of the announcement in form.
3. Save the changes. All the changes made in the announcement will be saved.

To delete an announcement,

1. To delete the announcement click Delete button. A dialog pops up asking you confirm on the delete operation.
2. Click OK to delete. Or click Cancel to retain the announcement.

Alternatively you can also publish Announcements company-wide or just to the technicians group from the Home page. The announcements are displayed just below the My View Requests tab in the home page.

All recent announcements will be displayed first based on the date. To view all the announcements (even completed ones), click the Show All button on the right side of the page. You can also add new announcements from the home page.
Send Notifications

To send notifications specific to the problem to the CAB members, technicians or to any concerned person then,

1. Click the Problems tab in the header pane. This opens the problem list view page.
2. Click the title of the problem to which the notification has to be sent. This opens the problem details page.
3. Click the Actions combo box and select the Send Notification link. This opens the Send Notification page.
4. Specify the To and CC address in the given text field.
5. Specify the Subject of the notification in the given text field.
6. Specify relevant information about the notification in the Description field.
7. Send the notification.
Print the Problem

To print a problem,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password.
2. Click the Problems tab in the header pane.
3. Click the Title of the problem you would like to print.
4. Click the Print Preview link on the right side Tasks block. The print preview page of the problem opens in a pop-up window.

In the print preview page you can view the Impact Analysis, Root Cause, Symptoms, Workaround, Solution, Problem Details Notes and their attachments.

5. Click the Print menu item from the browser File menu.
6. The default printer associated with your workstation is invoked. Set the required options and click OK. You can collect the printed copy of the problem at the printer that is linked to your workstation.
Changes

Change Management

Changes arise as a result of problems. But, a lot of changes can come from pro-actively seeking business benefits such as reducing costs or improving services. The goal of Change Management is to ensure that standardized methods and procedures are used for efficient, and prompt handling of all changes, in order to minimize the impact of change-related incidents upon service quality and consequently to improve the day-to-day operations of the organization.

The change is initiated by creating a change request, entering values in the defined additional fields, selecting the time duration and assigning the change to a technician. The status of the change is updated at every stage by the technician handling the change. The Approval Status is set to 'Pending Approval', when the change is sent for recommendation to the CAB members. The Approval Status is an automated and sets the status to "Approved" or "Rejected".

Since the change request is initiated from one or more Problems, the related Incidents and Problems are associated with the change. A Change Plan is formulated to get started with the change process. After which, tasks are assigned to various technicians to go ahead with the change. A Work Log is entered by the technicians specifying the time taken to resolve the change, the cost of the incident and the total charges.

Changes are site specific, meaning; a change is intended to occur in a particular site which should be handled by technicians associated to that site. Technicians can view the changes made at a site to track any likely cause of future problem.

A change request entails a considered approach to assessment of risk and business continuity, change impact, resource requirements and change approval. This approach is important to maintain the balance between the need for change against the impact of change.
Create New Change

Changes arise as a result of problem and hence there are different types of changes that can occur in an organization. The change can be Major, Minor, Standard, Significant or a configured change type. To initiate a change, a request for change has to be sent to the change management team upon which specific actions and tasks are carried out.

The new change form can be accessed by two ways in ServiceDesk Plus application,

   a. Quick Actions drop down

   b. Changes tab

Quick Actions drop down

The quick actions drop down is a quick navigator to instantly access the New Change form. Click Quick Actions -> Change under Create New block.

Changes tab

1. Click on Changes tab in the header pane to open the change list view page.
2. Click New Change button to access the new change form.
3. Specify the user who has requested the change in the Requested By field. You can also select the user by conducting a search in the requesters list using the icon.
4. Select the Technician assigned to the change from the drop down. If you have configured Sites in the application, then Sites drop down appears. Select the Site for which the change is intended to occur. The Technicians associated to the selected site is listed in the technicians drop down.
5. Select the Category, Sub Category and Item from the drop down.
6. Select the Status of the change from the drop down. The status is updated at every stage by the technician handling the change.
7. Select the Impact, Urgency and Priority of the change from the drop down.
8. Select the Change Type from the combo box. Say Major.
9. Select the Scheduled Start Time and Scheduled End Time from the calendar button.
10. Select the affected IT Services by the change from the list by clicking on the icon. This opens the Services Affected pop up box as shown below. Select the affected IT services and Save the changes.
11. Select the Assets Involved with the change by clicking the icon. The Select Assets page pops up. Select the asset category from Type of Assets drop down. Say, Workstations, Printers, Routers, Switches, all assets, all site assets and so on. All Assets lists the assets within your permission scope.

Say, John, a technician, is associated to Site1 and Site2. John has the privilege to view the assets associated to Site 1 and Site 2. So, if John is creating a change...
arising in Site 1, the Type of Assets - All Site Assets lists the assets available only in the selected Site 1 and All Assets lists the assets available in Site 1 and Site 2.

Select the Available Assets under the selected type from the list and move to Assets involved using >> button. And Save the changes.

12. Specify the Title of the change. The title is a mandatory field.

13. Specify the details about the change in the Description field.

14. If you have any file attachments for the change click the Attach File button and attach files. Maximum size of an attached file can be 10MB.

15. Save the details. You can see the new change created in the change list view page.
Forward Schedule of Change

The change home page shows two types of views, **List View** and **Calendar View**. The list view shows the list of all changes to be made. And the Calendar View shows the changes with start & end schedule time marked in different colors based on the type.

To view the schedule,

1. Log into ServiceDesk Plus using your **user name** and **password**.
2. Click the **Changes** tab in the header pane. This opens the change list view page by default as shown below.

**List View**

![List View](image)

**Forward Schedule of Change (Calendar View)**

1. Click the **Calendar View** tab next to the list view tab in the home page. This opens the calendar view of change as shown below.

To display the changes in the **Calendar View**, the changes should have the scheduled start time and end time.

![Calendar View](image)
• The Calendar View displays all the scheduled changes for the entire month. Click the forward arrow to go to the next month. Click the backward arrow to go to the previous month.

• You can choose the type of change from the Filter Showing combo box. You can view the Open Changes, Approved Open Changes, All Changes and Completed Changes.

• If Sites is configured in the application, then the Site drop down appears. List of sites associated to the logged in technician appears. Here, the logged in technician can view the sites to which he is associated and the changes raised for a specific site.

• A thick strip will be running across the scheduled start date and end date of the change. The outward curve at the beginning of the strip indicates the start date. And the inward curve at the end of the strip indicates the end date.

• The color of the strip depends on the type of the change. Say standard, major, minor and so on.

• At the bottom of the page you have all the four change types with one N/A type displayed along with the check boxes. For example: If you wish to view only the standard changes for the month in the calendar view, then select the Standard check box and de-select the other change types. If you wish to view all the change types then select all the change type by enabling the check box.

• The backward arrow in the strip indicates the previous week continuation of the change.

• And the forward arrow in the strip indicates that the change will be continued for the next week.

• On clicking at any part of the strip you will be able to view the change details page.

In the change details page,

- If there are any tasks associated with the change then the task status bar will also be displayed.
- If all the tasks are completed then the status bar would be in green color.
- Out of two tasks, if one task is complete and the other task is incomplete then the status bar would show half green color.
- You will be able to view the number of tasks completed / the total number of tasks. Say 1 tasks completed out of 2 tasks.
- You will also be able to see the Status of the task and owner at the bottom of the page. If the status is completed then the bullet point would be in green color. If the status of the task is incomplete then the bullet point would be in red color.

- The calendar can show only three changes in a particular date. If there are more than three changes in a date, then the calendar will show the extra more changes in the text form as \textbf{+n more} as shown below.

- Clicking the \textbf{+ n more text link}, will list all the displayed changes in the calendar, plus the extra more changes in the left hand side of the page as shown below. They can also be viewed by clicking the \textbf{dates of the marked changes} in the calendar. Say by clicking the date 22 you will be able to view the list.

- A calendar on the top left hand side of the page, shows the current date marked in a box. All the changes in the current month will be underlined and bold. On clicking any of the underlined date will list all the scheduled change for the particular date below the calendar.

- Click the \textbf{Week} link at the Top of the page to view the weekly change schedule as shown below. Click the forward arrow to view next week change schedules. Click the backward arrow to view the previous week change schedules.
View Change Details

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password. This opens the ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus home page.
2. Click the Changes tab. This opens the changes list page.
3. Click the title of the change to view the change details. This opens the change details page. By default, the change details page opens in the General tab.

General Tab

The general tab shows general details of the change such as, Category, Technician, Status, Priority, Urgency, Type, Impact, Requester, Start Time, End Time, affected IT Services. The Status field holds the state of the change such as Requested, Approved, Implemented, Reviewed, and Closed. The approval status denotes whether the change is approved or rejected. The change will be considered as approved and listed in the change calendar only if the Approval Status is ‘Approved’. The approval status is given in non-editable mode.

Click the Edit button to edit all the details of the change. You also have inline edit options for all the details. To modify the details of the change click the details and choose the option from the combo box.

Problems Tab

The problems tab shows the list of all the associated problems with the change. You have Attach option to attach the problem with the change. And the Detach Problem option to detach associated problem with the change.

Incidents Tab

The incidents tab shows the list of all associated incidents with the change. You have Attach option to attach the incident with the change. And the Detach Incidents option to detach associated incidents with the change.

Planning Tab

The planning tab shows the planning phase of the change on how to go about the change. It shows the Impact details, Roll Out, Back Out plan and finally the Check List for the plan.

Approvals Tab

From the Approvals tab, the administrator can Add CAB Members and Send the change for Recommendation to the CAB members. Thus it helps to show the approval status of the change.
Implementation Tab

Implementation page shows the task details of the change and the work log details of the change. You can also add, edit and delete new Task and new Work Log details.

Review Tab

From the review tab you can add post change assessment details or the evaluation results on how the change is made details are specified. It is basically a recap of the change.

To add review details, click the Add button. This opens the review text box.

Specify the details in the text box and Save the details. You can see review details getting displayed under the title. And the name of the person who entered the details with date and time will be displayed on the right hand side of the page.

To edit the review details click the Edit button next to the title. Edit the details and save the changes.

If you would like to attach a file on the review details of the change, click Attach a File option and attach files.

History Tab

The History tab shows the change history from the time of its creation. It shows all the actions performed in the change. The history tab also shows the incidents and the changes associated to the problem on clicking the Property View link available on the right hand side. The details that are displayed in the history are in the ascending order with the earliest performed action shown at the top of the page and the latest action at the bottom of the page.
Edit Change

To edit the change available in the ServiceDesk Plus,

1. Click the **Changes** tab in the header pane. This opens the changes list view page.
2. Click the **Title** of the change to be edited. This opens the **change** details page which lists the **Tasks** that can be performed on the change.
3. Click the **Edit** link on the top of the page to modify the change details. This opens the **Edit change** page. From this page you can add status of the change from open to close, and also change the entire template to a new one apart from the regular editing of the change details.

Alternatively, you also have an inline edit option to modify the change details in the view change page. Click the edit icon on the right side of each block which opens the change form fields in editable format. After modifying the values, save the changes. This comes in handy when you need to edit the values of the entire block say **change Details** one by one.

**Edit the Change Details**

In the editable change form you can change the change details, such as **Status** of the change as **Closed or Open**, **Impact** details, **Urgency**, **Priority** and **Change Type** details. You can also modify **affected IT Services** and **Assets Involved** in the change.

**Edit the Owner Details**

You can modify the **Requested by** details and **Technician** details of the change. If you have configured **Sites** in the application, then **Sites** drop down appears. You can modify the site for which the change is intended to occur. The corresponding technicians associated to the site get listed. You can also edit the **Scheduled Start Time** and **Scheduled End Time** of the change.

**Edit the Change Category**

You can change the **Category**, **Sub Category** and **Item** of the change. If the same was not appropriately chosen at the time of submitting then the change can be selected now from the drop down list.

**Edit the Change Description**

You can modify the title and description of the change to completely capture the actual nature of the task at hand.

**Append Attachments**

If you wish to attach more files to the change, click the **Attach a File** button and attach as many files as you wish and click **Done**. You can also delete the attachments that were already available in the change by clicking the delete icon available beside the attachment.
Print the Change

To print a change,

1. Click the Changes tab in the header pane.
2. Click the Title of the change you would like to print.
3. Click the Print Preview link on the right side Tasks block.

In the print preview page you can view the Impact Analysis, Roll Out Plan, Back Out Plan, Checklist and Review. Then the Change details, Approval status and Notes and their attachments.

5. The print preview page of the change opens in a pop-up window. Click the Print menu item from the browser File menu.
6. The default printer associated with your workstation is invoked. Set the required options and click OK. You can collect the printed copy of the change at the printer that is linked to your workstation.
Add a Note

If you would like to add additional information including technical information based on your observations to a particular change, then you can Add Notes to that change. You can also use it to update the status of the change.

To add a note to the change,

1. Click the Change tab in the header pane.
2. Click the Title of the change to which you would like to add a note. This opens the change details page.
3. Click the Add New combo box -> Select Note option. This opens Add Notes text pops up.
4. Enter your content in the text box. These notes will be added to the change only by the technicians. The requesters will not be able to add the notes. These notes are public.
5. Save the details. The note is added at the bottom of the change along with a date and time stamp. The name of the person who added the note will also be displayed.

You can also add any number of notes to a change. The added notes will be displayed in the descending order with recently added note first. You can also edit or delete the notes that have been added.
Add a Reminder

You can add reminders to the changes using this option. All the pending tasks specific to the change can be added as reminders. The technician can add these task lists as a personal reminder. On adding these reminders they get displayed in My Reminder(s) under Quick Actions.

To add a reminder,

1. Click the Changes tab in the header pane. This opens the changes list page.
2. Click the Title of the change from the list. This opens the change details page.
3. Click the Add New drop-down menu and select Reminder option. This pops up the Reminders window. Specify the content in the given text field.

4. Select the reminder Date and Time by invoking the calendar icon.
5. To be reminded of the task in advance, select the time from the Email me before combo box.
6. The change ID is shown in non-editable mode.
7. Click Add button to add the reminder. You can see the reminder getting listed in the My Reminder(s) pop up window in ascending order.
View Reminders

You can view the reminders specific to each change.

To view reminders,

1. Click the **Changes** tab. This opens the changes list page.
2. Click the title of the change for which you like to view the reminder. This opens the change details page.
3. Click the Actions tab -> Click the **View Reminders** option. This opens the **Showing All Reminders** page as shown below. This lists all the reminders in ascending order based on the date.
4. Once the task is completed you can change the state of the reminder from Open to Completed. To do this, select the **reminder** to be closed from the list by enabling the check box on the left side of each reminder.
5. Select the **Change Reminder State To Completed** then -> click **Change** button to change the state. The reminder is stroked off to indicate the change.

Alternatively, you can also view the reminders by, clicking **Quick Actions** link -> **My Reminder(s)** option under the Reminders block. This opens the **My Reminders** pop up window as shown below. This shows all your reminders irrespective any specific module.

You can also add new reminders by clicking **+Add New** link at the bottom of the My Reminders form. The new task is added and is listed along with the already existing tasks in the ascending order based on date and time.

When you have completed the task, you can just strike out the task to indicate that it is completed by selecting the radio button beside the task summary.

You can also delete the task by clicking the delete icon beside the task.
Add a Task

Using add tasks option you can assign different tasks to different technicians. Say if a change is reported by a requester involves multiple technicians work. The change owner (manager) whoever received the change can assign different tasks to the different technician.

If Sites are configured in the application, then the change owner should assign tasks to the technicians who are associated to the site for which the change request is created.

To add a task,

1. Click the Changes tab in the header pane.
2. Click the Title of the change to which you would like to add tasks.
3. Click the Add New drop-down menu -> select Tasks option. This opens the Tasks window.
4. Specify the Title of the task in the given text field. This is a mandatory field.
5. Specify relevant information about the tasks in the Description field.
6. Select the Scheduled Start Time for the task from the calendar button. Also select the Scheduled End Time for the task from the calendar button.
7. The Actual Start Time and End Time of the task will be entered by the technician doing the task.
8. Select the Owner of the task from the combo box.
9. Specify the Status of the task.
10. Specify any relevant comment about the task in the Comments field.
11. If you wish to be reminded of the task previously then select the Email me before option and select the number of days from the combo box.
12. Save the values. You can see the tasks getting displayed in the Implementation tab. All the tasks created for the change will be listed under the implementation tab under the Task Details title in descending order. The tasks assigned to other technicians can be viewed in their Task summary list in the home page.
Add a Work Log

Work Log is the time spent on a change by a technician. The technician assigned to the change can add work log once the change request is completed. If the change involves multiple technicians, then the time spent details should be entered by each technician.

To add a work log,

1. Click the Changes tab. This opens the changes list page.
2. Click the title of the change for which you like to enter the work log. This opens the change details page.
3. Click the Add New combo box -> Select Work Log option from the list. This opens the Add Work Log page
4. Select the Technician Name from the combo box.
5. Specify the Executed Time (date & time) taken to resolve the change from the calendar button.
6. The Technician Cost per hour will be fetched automatically from the technician details, which is a non-editable field. If you have already entered the per hour cost of the technician while adding the technician details, then the details will be fetched automatically. If you wish to change these values, you can do so manually.
7. The Incident Cost will be automatically calculated taking the (total time spent to resolve the problem * Technician's cost per hour).
8. If there are any extra charges specify in the Other Charges field.
9. Using the above two data the Total Charges (Technician Charges + Other Charges) will be displayed automatically.
10. Specify any relevant information about the time spent in the description field.
11. Save the details.
Assign Technician to Change

Each change will be handled by a technician, who would be responsible for closing the change. If a change is created for a particular site, then the technician associated to the site is assigned to the change.

To assign a technician,

1. Click the Change tab in the header pane. This opens the Changes list page.
2. Click the Title of the change for which you have to assign a technician. This opens the change details page.
3. Click the Actions drop-down menu on the right hand side of the page -> Click Assign Technician option from the list. This opens Assign Technician to this Change pop up page as shown below. Select the technician from the list and Assign the change to the technician.

4. Alternatively, you can also assign technician using inline edit option. Click the technician name shown in the change details block. This opens the drop down box as shown below. Select the technician from the list and click the icon to select the technician name else click cancel icon.

You can also assign more than one change at a time to a technician.

To bulk assign changes to technicians,

1. In the Changes list page, select the changes to be assigned a technician by enabling the check box beside left side each of the change title.
2. Click the Select Technician check box. Select the technician from the drop down list.
3. Assign the technician.
Pick up Change

ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus provides an option to the technicians to self-pick up change. If there are unassigned changes, the technicians can pick up any of the unassigned changes from the list. This in turn will increase the turnaround time and the efficiency of the IT help desk team.

To pick up changes,

1. From the change list view page, select the changes you would like to pick up by enabling the check box. The unassigned changes will be in bold font.
2. Click **Pick up** button. The selected change will be assigned to you.
Close Change

To close a change,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password.
2. Click the Changes tab in the header pane.
3. Click the Title of the change in the Changes list page. This opens the change details page.
4. Click the Close Change link under the Tasks block. This closes the change.

*Note:* If the mandatory fields are not entered then an error message is shown asking you to enter the value in the fields.

To reopen the change

You can reopen a change from the closed state to open state. To do this,

1. Click the title of the change. This opens the change details page.
2. Click the Edit button. This opens the form in the editable format.
3. Change the status field from Completed to Requested and save the changes made.

When a change is opened from the closed state, you should change the Created Time, Scheduled Start time and End time of the change. When the request is finally closed, the completed Time will be automatically updated.

(OR)

4. Click the Status of the change in the form you have inline edit option for each of the change details.
5. Select the status from the list and immediately the status of the change gets updated.

To view the closed changes

1. From the change list page, select Closed Changes from the Filter drop-down menu. This lists all the closed changes.
2. To view the closed changes which were assigned to you, select My Closed Changes.
Delete Change

You have an option to delete individual change or group of changes together.

To delete individual changes

1. Click the Changes tab in the header pane.
2. Click the Title of the change to be deleted in the changes list view page. This opens the Change Details page.
3. Click the Actions combo box on the top right hand side of the page.
4. Click the Delete link from the list. A dialog pops up asking you to confirm on the delete process.
5. Click OK to proceed. You can see the change deleted from the list.

To delete more than one change at a time

1. In the Change list view page, select the changes to be deleted by enabling the check boxes.
2. Click the Delete button. A dialog pops up asking you to confirm on the delete process.
3. Click OK to proceed. Or click Cancel to abort deletion.
Associate Incidents to Change

You have an option to associate Incidents with the change. Similar Incidents as in Change can be associated in order to complete the requests quickly rather than doing it one by one.

1. Click the Changes tab. This opens the Change List View page. Click the change title to be associated with the Incidents. This opens the change details page.
2. Click the Actions combo box on the top right side of the page. Click Associate Incidents option. The Associate Incidents to Change window pops up.
3. Select the type of requests to be displayed by selecting from the Show combo box on the top left hand side of the page. Ex: Open Requests or All Requests and so on. On selecting the request type the corresponding requests gets listed.
4. Select the change from the list by enabling the check box beside each change.
5. Click Associate Incidents to associate respective requests to the change (particular selected change). The associated incidents get listed in the Incidents tab in the change details page.
Associate Problems to Change

You have an option to associate problems with the change. Similar problems as change can be associated in order to complete the requests quickly rather than doing it one by one.

To associate problems to change,

1. Click the Changes tab. This opens the Change List View page. Click the change title to be associated with the problems. This opens the change details page.
2. Click the Actions combo box on the top right side of the page. Click Associate Problems option. This opens Associate Problems to Change page as shown below,
3. Select the type of problems to be displayed by selecting from the Show combo box on the top left hand side of the page. Ex: Open Problems or All Problems and so on. On selecting the problem type the corresponding problems gets listed.
4. Select the change from the list by enabling the check box beside each change.
5. Click Associate Problems to associate respective problems to the change (particular selected change). The associated problems get listed in the Problems tab in the change details page.
Publish Announcements

ServiceDesk Plus gives you an option to publish announcements while doing the change without breaking the work flow. Say, if you have to make an announcement to the company that the mail server will be down for next five hours and you are doing the change then in this case you need not go to the home page and make an announcement. You can directly publish the announcement from the change module.

To publish announcements,

1. In the Change details page, click the Actions drop down and select Make an announcement option. This opens the Announcements pop-up.
2. Specify a title for the announcement in the Announcement Title text field. This is a mandatory field.
3. Specify the detailed description about the announcement in the Announcement Content.
4. Specify the date and time to Show this announcement between these dates from the calendar button. If this field is not entered the announcement will be displayed in the home tab for ever.
5. Select Show to Requester check box to make this announcement visible in the self-service portal.
6. Select the check box to Send this announcement as mail.
7. Save the changes. You can see the announcement page as shown below. To view the next and previous announcement in the dash board click the Next and Previous buttons on the right side of the page.

You can also edit and delete the announcement in the same page.

To edit the announcement,

1. Click Edit button. This opens the Edit Announcement form.
2. Change the details of the announcement in form.
3. Save the changes. All the changes made in the announcement will be saved.

To delete an announcement,

1. To delete the announcement click Delete button. A dialog pops up asking you confirm on the delete operation.
2. Click OK to delete. Or click Cancel to retain the announcement.

Alternatively, you can also publish Announcements company-wide or just to the technicians group from the Home page. The announcements are displayed in the home page.
All recent announcements will be displayed first based on the date. To view all the announcements (even completed ones), click the **Show All** button on the right side of the page. You can also add new announcements from the home page.
Send Notifications

To send notifications specific to the change to the CAB members, to change managers, technicians or to any concerned person then,

1. Log in to ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password.
2. Click the Changes tab in the header pane. This opens the change list view page.
3. Click the title of the change to which the notification has to be sent. This opens the change details page.
4. Click the Actions combo box and select the Send Notification link. This opens the Send Notification page.
5. Specify the To and CC address in the given text field.
6. Specify the Subject of the notification in the given text field.
7. Specify relevant information about the notification in the Description field.
8. Send the notification.
Change Planning

The change plan is formulated to get started with the change process. It needs to have complete details about the reasons for considering the change that how this change can impact the business. The change planning stage needs to have following information so that change managers and CAB has all the details to make informed decisions.

- Impact Analysis - Risk involved in implementing the change.
- Roll Out Plan - How the plan will be implemented.
- Back Out Plan - Plan to restore things back to original state if plan fails.
- Checklist - List of mandatory items required for the plan to succeed.

To specify the change plan,

1. Log in to ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password.
2. Click the Changes tab. This opens the Change List view page. Click the title of the change for which you need to plan to make decisions. This opens the change details page.
3. Click the Planning tab. You can view the change planning stages one below the other.

To add the Impact details,

1. Click the Add button. You can see the text area getting displayed for the impact details.
2. Specify the risk involved in implementing the change in the given text area.
3. Save the details. You can see the details getting displayed.
4. Click Attach File button to attach a file for the impact details. The maximum size of the attachment should be 10MB.

To specify the Roll Out Plan

1. Click the Add button. You can see the text area getting displayed for the roll out plan.
2. Specify how the plan will be implemented in the given text area.
3. Save the details. You can see the details getting displayed below the title.
4. Click Attach File button to attach a file for the impact details. The maximum size of the attachment should be 10MB.

To specify the Back Out Plan

1. Click the Add button. You can see the text area getting displayed for the back out plan.
2. Specify the plan to restore things back to original state if plan fails in the given text field.
3. Save the details. You can see the details getting displayed below the title.
4. Click Attach File button to attach a file for the impact details. The maximum size of the attachment should be 10MB.
To enter the **Checklist**

1. Click the **Add** button. You can see the text area getting displayed for the check list.
2. Specify the list of mandatory items required for the plan to succeed in the given text field.
3. **Save** the details. You can see the details getting displayed below the title.
4. Click **Attach File** button to attach a file for the impact details. The maximum size of the attachment should be 10MB.
Recommending Change by CAB

The Change Advisory Board (CAB) is a body that exists to recommend changes and to assist Change Management in the assessment and prioritize of changes. As and when a CAB is convened, its members should be chosen who are capable of ensuring that all changes are adequately assessed from both the business and technical viewpoint. A technician or a requester can be a CAB member based on the organization structure.

General Work Flow for approving a change

- The CAB should be convened for a change. The CAB members can differ for each change. The CAB member can be a requester or a technician whoever is capable to assess from both the business and technical viewpoint.
- Once the CAB is convened the change should be sent to the CAB members for recommendation.
- The technician whoever receiving the change or assigned a change will be the owner of the change and he will send the change for recommendation to the CAB.
- If the change is recommended by the CAB members, the CHANGE MANAGER should approve the change. The change manager can approve or reject the change irrespective of the recommendation of the CAB.
- Only the approved change will be taken further by the technician to take necessary steps.

To add CAB members and send for recommendation,

1. Log in to ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password.
2. Click the Changes tab. This opens the Change List view page.
3. Click the Title of the change which you need to send for recommendations. This opens the change details page.
4. Click the Approvals tab. You have to add CAB members, and send the change for recommendation. The CAB members has the authorization to recommend the change.

To Add CAB Members

5. Click the Add CAB Member button.
6. Select the CAB from the combo box.
7. Select the members list for the committee. The selected members will be responsible for approving the changes.
8. Save the changes. You will get a confirmation message saying members added to the CAB successfully.

Send the change for Recommendation

9. Click Send for Recommendation button to send the change for approval to the CAB members. Only the members of the CAB can recommend a change. This opens the submit change for approval page.
10. If the e-mail id is already configured for the CAB members then the Id would get automatically get listed in the To text field. This is a mandatory field. If the mail id is not configured refer Configuring Technicians.
11. Specify the Subject in the given text field. This is a mandatory field.
12. Specify the Description about the change in the given text field.
13. Send the mail to the CAB members for approval. Once the mail is sent the CAB members would get a mail with the link to the form to approve the changes as shown below.

"Administrator has requested your recommendations for this Change - Change Cards in the Server. Click here to view Change details http://shawnadams/approval/Approve.jsp?ITEMID=2&MODULE=Change&KEY=21187331524593&USERID=4 "

14. Click the link in the mail to open the form as shown below,

15. Select Approve Recommend or Reject radio button based on the change details listed below the form.
16. Specify the Comments in the given text field.
17. Save the changes.

**Recommending the change directly from the Approval page**

If you are a member of the CAB after logging into ServiceDesk Plus, you can recommend the change from the Approvals tab using the Approve and Reject buttons.
Approve Change

Only the Change Manager has the authority to approve the change. Any technician with the SD change manager role permissions can approve the change. A change manager can or could not be a member of the CAB. If needed the change manager can reject the change though the change is recommended by the CAB members. It is to the change manager’s discretion whether to approve or reject the change.

Once the change is recommended by the CAB members the Change Manager should Approve or Reject the change. Except for the Standard Change type all other change type should be approved the change manager. The standard change type is a pre-approved change type hence it does not require any approval from the change manager. Only the approved changes will be taken further to solve the issue.

Approve the Change by the Change Manager

1. Click the Changes tab -> click the title of the change to be approved. This opens the change details page.
2. Click the Approvals tab, you get a link on the top right hand side of the page to approve or reject the change as shown below,

   ![Approve or Reject Link]

4. Click the Approve link to approve the change. This opens a dialog box.
5. Specify the comments in the box and Save the details.
6. Text in the link changes as Approved with the change manager name, date and time will also be displayed as shown below. At any time to reject the change, you can click the reject link next to the approve link.

   ![Approved Link]

In the change details page Approval status of the change would show as Approved in a non-editable format. Also on the top right hand side of the page the Approval status of the change would change as Approved.
Solutions

The ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus application provides a facility to record the solutions for the received requests. The recorded solutions function as a knowledge base of solutions. Thus, when you receive a request, refer to the recorded solutions and solve it. This reduces the turnaround time in attending to the requests generated by the requesters and closing the same.

All requesters and technicians who have permissions to view the solutions module can access this section of the application. The ServiceDesk Plus administrator can assign access privileges to the various technicians for the solutions section. This access privilege can vary from just view only privilege to full control privilege. For setting the access privileges to technicians, refer to the Configuring Technicians and Configuring Roles sections. Moreover, new technicians joining the organization can browse through these recorded solutions to have an idea of the frequently resolved problems.

You can access the approved solutions even without logging in to the application, but will be able to view only those solutions that are published in the Self Service Portal. To access the knowledge base directly without having to login to the application, type the URL provided below in the address bar of the browser:

http://<server name>:<port number>/sd/SolutionsHome.sd

where, the <server name> is the name of the server where ServiceDesk Plus is installed and <port number> is the port where the application is running.
About Solutions

1. Click the Solutions tab. This brings up the Solutions list view page. By default, the list of All Solutions is displayed.
2. Select the corresponding filter option from the Filter Showing combo box. You can view the solutions with different status levels using filters. They are,

   - All Solutions
     All the solutions irrespective of the status can be viewed under this category.
   - Approved Solutions
     All the approved solutions are listed under this category.
   - Approval Pending Solutions
     The solutions which are sent for approval are listed under this category.
   - Unapproved Solutions
     The solutions which are not approved and have to be sent for approval are listed under this category.
   - Rejected Solutions
     All the rejected solutions are listed under this category.
Add New Solution

The solutions module is a knowledge base with resolutions for the problems encountered by your help desk team. The solutions can be grouped under topics to access the solutions with ease. In addition, the solutions can be restricted to specific user groups. The requesters under the user group can view the solutions on logging into the application.

To add new solutions to the existing knowledge base,

1. Click the **Solutions** tab in the header pane. This opens the solutions list view page. By default, the list of all solutions gets displayed. Click **New Solution** button. (OR)

   Click **Quick Actions** drop-down menu -> select **Solutions** under the Create New block. This opens the New Solutions page. The title, contents and the topics fields are mandatory fields.

2. Enter a title for the solution you wish to add in the given text field. This can be a summary of the complete solution in one line that will exactly tell what the solution is all about.

3. Enter the complete solution in the **Contents** text field.

4. If this solution requires any additional files to support the article, then you can attach the same by clicking **Attach File** button. The **Attach File** window pops up as shown below,

   ![Attach File](image)

   i. Click **Browse** and select a file from the file chooser window. Click **Open**.
   
   ii. Click **Attach File** button. The attached file gets listed along with its size.
   
   iii. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to attach another file.

6. The **topic** field is a combo box that lists all the available topics and sub-topics. Select the topic in which you wish to add the current solution.

7. The **keywords** are optional, but the presence of a keyword for the solution will help in improving the search capability and will provide accurate search results. While entering multiple keywords, separate them with comma.

8. To make this solution available in the self-service portal for the logged in and non-logged in users, select **Publish this solution in Self-Service Portal also** check box.

   If you have configured **User Groups**, then you can restrict the solutions to a specific user group by selecting the user group from the available list, use >> button to move it to the selected user group block. The solution will be available to the user group on logging into the application.

9. Click **Add**. If you do not wish to add the solution then click **Cancel**.
View Solution Details

To view the details about a solution, click the **Subject** link or the **Solution ID** from the Solutions module. The Solution Details page, displays the **Solution ID** and the **Status** of the solution on the right hand side. Along with the **Subject** of the solution, the **Type** and **Category** of the solution is displayed. The list of **Keywords** for the solution is displayed just below the description. Other solution details such as, Created By, Created On, Last Updated By, Last Updated On, Type, Views, View Type (whether Public or Private) and Status of the solution is displayed in the **Solution Details** block. The **Comments History** lists the history and comments about the solution. The updated status of the solution is also displayed.

From the Solution Details page, you can Edit the solution, Delete the solution and **Forward the solution**. If you are the administrator, then you would be able to perform **Approval Actions** such as, Submit the solution for approval to higher authorities and Approve or Reject the Solution.
Edit Solution

To edit a specific solution,

1. From the solutions list view page, click the Subject link of the solution which you want to edit.
2. Click **Edit** button available on the right hand side of the View Solutions Details page.
3. In **Edit Solutions** page, make the necessary modifications. The title, contents, and the topic under which you wish to place the solution are mandatory fields. You can also add more attachments or delete existing ones.
4. Click **Save** button. If you do not want to save the changes and get back to the solutions listing, click **Cancel**.
5. On saving the solution, the status of the solution shows **Unapproved**. The solution has to be submitted for approval to the concerned technician. To know more on refer Submit for Approval.
Submit for Approval

The newly added solutions have to be approved by the concerned technician, in order to be viewed by the requesters in the self-service portal. To provide access permission to approve solutions refer Configuring Roles.

To submit for approval,

- From the solutions list view page, select Unapproved Solutions from the filter showing combo box. The list of all unapproved solutions gets displayed.
- Click the subject of the solution which you want to submit for approval. This opens the View Solutions page. The Status is shown as Unapproved below the Solution Id.
- Select Submit for Approval under the Approve Actions combo box on the right hand side of the page. The Submit for recommendation window pops up.
- Select the To address by invoking the icon. The Add users for Approval pops up as shown below,

![Submit for recommendation](image)

- Enable the check box adjacent to the user whom you want to submit the solution for approval.
- The To text field gets filled with the mail id of the corresponding administrator.
5. The **Subject and Description** is entered as given in Notification Rules email template. If needed you can modify the subject and description content manually, else you can change the same from the Notification Rules email template under Helpdesk.

6. If there are any relevant files to be attached then, click **Attach File** button.

7. Click **Send** to submit the solution for approval.

The mail notification is sent to the person who was addressed in the To field of the notification. The mail contains the link to the specific solution which needs approval. On clicking the link, it leads you to the login screen, where on providing the proper credentials, the solution awaiting approval opens. To approve/reject solutions refer Approve/Reject Solutions.
Approve/Reject Solution

On submitting the solutions for approval, a mail notification is sent to the concerned technician requesting the approval of the solution along with the solution link. The solution can be either approved or rejected. The approval access permission is given in Configuring Roles.

To approve/reject solution,

1. Click the link to open the solution.
2. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your username and password. This opens the view solution details page of the solution pending for approval. The status of the solution shows Approval Pending on the right hand side of the page.
3. Click Approve Actions combo box -> Approve Solution. This opens the Approve Comments pop up window. Specify any related Comments in the field provided. Click Approve.
4. If you wish to reject the solution then, select Reject Solution under Approve Actions. This opens Reject Comments pop up window. Specify comments, such as reason to reject the solution in the Comments field. Click Reject.

To approve/reject bulk solutions,

1. From the solution list view page, select Unapproved Solutions from the filter showing combo box. Enable the check box adjacent to the solutions which you want to approve/reject.
2. Click Approve Actions combo box -> Approve Solution. This opens the Approve Comments pop up window. Specify any related Comments in the field provided. Click Approve.
3. If you wish to reject the solution then, select Reject Solution under Approve Actions. This opens Reject Comments pop up window. Specify comments, such as reason to reject the solution in the Comments field. Click Reject.

The approved solutions can be viewed by the requesters in the self-service portal. The rejected solutions can be edited and sent for approval to the concerned technician. Thus the solution is not completely deleted from the list.
Delete Solutions

To delete a specific solution,

1. From the solutions list view page, click the subject link of the solution which you want to delete.
2. Click the **Delete** button. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **OK** to proceed with the deletion.

To delete multiple solutions,

1. **Select** the check box beside the solution to delete.
2. Click **Delete** button. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **OK** to continue. The solution gets deleted from the list.
Search for a Solution

ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus allows you to search for solutions using the **Keyword Search** or the **Column-wise Search**.

To perform **keyword search**,

1. Click **Solutions** tab in the header pane.
2. In the Search block, enter a keyword relevant to your solution like laptop or printer.
3. Click **Search Solutions** button or press the **Enter** key in your keyboard. The search results display all the solutions that match the search string.

To perform **column-wise search**,

1. Click the **search** icon at the end of the solution list view headers. This opens the search field just below every column in the list view.
2. Enter the search key in field under the column of your choice. You can enter keywords in more than one column to perform a combined column search.
3. Click **Go**. The search results matching the search string(s) are displayed.
Browse Solutions by Topic

To browse for solutions using topics,

1. Click the **Solutions** tab in the header pane. This opens the Solutions list view page.
2. Hover over **Browse By Topics** drop-down menu. This opens the **Categories** window listing all the topics and their sub topics as shown below,

![Categories Window](image)

3. To view all the sub topics, click **Show All** link on the right hand side of the page. This lists out the topics and sub topics in a logical manner.
4. On clicking the topic, the solutions of the topic and its corresponding sub topics gets listed. Click the sub topic to view the solutions only in that sub topic.
Manage Topics

You can add new topics, rename an existing topic, and move topics and subtopics to a different parent topic. This provides you the ability to organize your solutions in a logical manner that would meet your organization's needs.

To manage topics

1. Click the Solutions tab in the header pane.
2. In the Actions block, click Manage Topics link (OR) Click the Manage Topics link available in the Solutions list view page adjacent to the Browse by Topics combo box. The manage topics page is displayed with the available topics and their subtopics listed in the hierarchy. From here you can add, rename, move, and delete topics.

Add New Topic

To add a new topic,

1. In the Manage Topics page, click the Add New Topic button. The Add New topic form is displayed just above the available topics list with the Topic Name and the list of parent topics as the two fields. If there are no topics available then the Choose a parent topic field will have the /Topic Root alone.
2. Enter the name of the topic in the Topic Name field and choose the parent topic under which you want to place the new topic. For example - if you want to add the new topic as a main level topic, choose /Topic Root as the parent topic. Or else, choose any other topic as the parent topic.
3. Click Add. The topic is added as subtopic to the parent that you chose and is displayed in the available topics list. A message is displayed stating that the new topic is added successfully.

Rename a Topic

To rename a topic,

1. In the Manage Topics page, click the Rename link of the topic that you wish to rename. The Rename topic form is opened.
2. Type the new name for the topic in the topic name field.
3. Click Save.

The changes made to the topic name are displayed in the available topics list and a message is displayed above the list.

Move a Topic

To move a topic to a different parent,

1. In the Manage Topics page, click the Change Parent link in the row of the topic that you wish to move. The Change Parent Topic form is displayed. In the
Choose the parent topic text box, by default, the current parent topic of the topic that is to be moved is selected.
2. Select the new parent topic.
3. Click Save. If you do not want to move the topic to a different parent topic, then click Cancel.

NOTE: You cannot move a topic as a subtopic to its current child topic itself

Delete a Topic

To delete a topic,

1. In the Manage Topics page, click the Delete link in the row of the topic that you wish to delete. A confirmation page opens.
2. Click Confirm to delete the topic or click Cancel to retain the topic. If you click Confirm, then the topic is deleted and a message is displayed stating that the topic is deleted.

When a topic is deleted, by default, the solutions present under the topic are also deleted and if there are any subtopics, then these are moved to the /Topics Root. You can later choose to move the topics as child topics to other parent topics. But if you want to override the default actions performed during the delete operation, move the subtopics of the topic which you plan to delete, under a different parent topic of your choice. Also, if you do not wish to delete the solutions that are available under the topic to be deleted, then you can move the solutions to other topics. For this, when you click the Delete link and are led to the confirmation page,

1. Select the check box below the first point. This opens the topic list box, and enables you to move the reference of the solutions of the topic to a different parent topic of your choice.
2. Select the parent topic of your choice from the list box.
3. To move the subtopics to a different parent topic, select the check box below the second point in the confirmation page.
4. In the topic list box, select the parent topic of your choice under which the subtopics of the current parent topic that is being deleted can be moved.
5. Click Confirm.

This deletes the topic after moving the solutions and subtopics from the deleted topic to the parent topic you selected.

Note: You cannot move a subtopic of the topic that is going to be deleted, as a subtopic to another child topic of the same parent topic which is going to be deleted.
Assets

ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus helps in managing all your IT and Non-IT assets. ServiceDesk Plus offers a single view to track and manage all your assets with ServiceDesk Plus, you can track and manage ownership of

- IT, Non-IT and Asset Components.
- Software Asset Management

IT & Non-IT Asset Management

ServiceDesk Plus helps you to manage,

- IT assets such as, workstations, switches, routers, printers, and access points
- Non-IT assets such as basic fixtures, furniture, chairs, tables, projectors, and desk phones
- Asset Components such as keyboards, Mouse and even your printer inks.

Software Asset Management

Software License Management

ServiceDesk Plus helps you to manage software licenses installed across the enterprise. You can consolidate and manage all your software licenses from a single screen. ServiceDesk Plus will scan and automatically pickup license keys for Microsoft Windows and Microsoft Word. You can key-in all the licenses purchased earlier and track future purchase of software licenses through the Purchase module.

Software Metering

ServiceDesk Plus helps you to track the usability of the installed software across organization. It gives the count of rarely used, frequently used and occasionally used software.

Software Compliance

ServiceDesk Plus tracks purchased versus installed licenses helping you to ensure software license compliance. The scheduled scan alerts you when an unauthorized software installation is detected, ensuring software compliance on an on-going basis.
IT Assets

All IP based assets are discovered under IT assets. The list of possible IT assets are given below,

- Workstations
- Printers
- Switches
- Servers
- Routers
- Access Points

- Add New IT Asset
- Edit IT Asset
- Add IT Assets to Groups
- Assign IT Assets to Department
- Modify State of IT Assets
- Change log-in Credentials for IT Assets
- Bulk Scan of IT Assets
- Delete IT Asset
- Import IT Asset from CSV
- View IT Asset Details
- Copy Resources
- Attach Assets
- Attach Components
- Attach Documents
- Assign Assets to Users/Departments/Assets
- Add New Workstation
- Bulk Scan of Newly Added Workstations
- Chang Workstation as Server
- View Workstation Details
- Print the Workstation Details
- Modify Type
- Add Software
- Delete Workstation
Add New IT Asset

IT Assets other than workstations are configured under IT Assets. To add a new asset,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your **user name** and **password**. This opens the ManageEngine ServiceDesk plus home page.
2. Click **Assets** tab in the header pane. This opens the Asset home page.
3. Click **Quick Actions** drop-down menu and select **Asset** option. Choose the Product from **Add Asset/Component** dialog box. Click **Save**. The Add New form for the selected product is displayed. (OR)

   Click **IT Assets** under Assets block on the left side of the page -> Select any one of the listed IT assets link. E.g. Access points, printers etc. This opens the particular IT asset page.

4. Click **New** button. This opens Add Asset page.
5. Select the **Product Name** of the asset from the combo box. If required, you can add a new product name by clicking Add New link beside the product name field. This is a mandatory field.
6. Select the **Vendor Name** from the combo box. If required, you can add a new vendor by clicking the **Add New** link beside the vendor name text field.
7. Specify the **Asset Name** in the given text field. This is a mandatory field.
8. Specify the **Asset Tag, Asset Serial No, Bar Code** and **Asset Cost** in the corresponding text fields.
9. Specify the **Acquisition Date & Expiry Date** from the calendar button.
10. Select the **Site** from the combo box.
11. Specify the **Location** in the given text field.
12. Specify the **Asset State** by selecting the current status of the asset from the combo box.

If the asset is in **Use** state you need to associate or assign asset to department or user or asset.

1. Allocate the asset to an **Asset** or to an **User** or to the **Department** by selecting any of the two radio button. Say Associate to Asset or Assign User/ or Department.
2. If you choose to associate asset to an asset then select the asset name from the **Choose Asset** combo box. Or if you have chosen to assign to user or the department then select User or Department from the combo box.
3. If the asset is leased select the check box **Asset is Leased**. If the asset is leased then specify the **From** and **To** date from the calendar button.

13. Click **Save** button to save the changes. To save and add another asset click **Save and add new button**.
Edit IT Asset

To edit the resource details,

1. Click the **Assets** tab -> select the **IT Assets link** on the left hand side of the page. This opens the list view page of the IT assets.
2. Click the **title of the IT asset** to be edited. This opens the **Asset details** page.
3. Click **Edit** button on the top right hand side of the page (OR)

   Click the **Actions** combo box next to the edit resource button -> select the **Edit** option. This opens the **Edit Asset** page.
4. Edit the Asset Details block such as **Product Name, Asset Name, Tag, Serial No, Bar Code, Vendor Name, Cost, Acquisition Date, Expiry Date, and Location.**
5. Modify the Asset State details such as, **Current usage status** of the assets like In Use, In Repair and so on. Then the **Associate** the asset to **User or Department** details or **Assign** to **User or Department** details.
6. **Update** the changes. You can see the assets details getting updated.
Add IT Assets to Group

You have two types of groups in ServiceDesk Plus say, Static group and Dynamic. Add to group option in asset list view page is to group bulk of assets. These assets will be grouped under the Static group by default.

To Add IT Assets to group,

1. Log in to ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password.
2. Click any of the IT Assets link under the Assets block on the left hand side of the page. Select any one of the listed IT assets link. E.g. Access points, printers etc. This opens the particular IT asset page.
3. Select the assets to be added to the group by enabling the check box. Click Actions button -> Add to Group option. This opens the Add Resource(s) to page.
4. By default you can group assets only to the static group. Either to the Existing static group or New static group can be added.
5. If you would like to group the assets under existing static group then click the corresponding radio button. Select the group name from the combo box.
6. Else, if you would like to add a new static group and group the assets, click New Group radio button. Specify the Group Name and relevant information about the group in the Description field.
7. Click Save button to save the changes.
Assign IT Assets to Department/Site

Assign IT Asset to Department

1. Click the **Assets** tab in the header pane. This opens the assets home page.
2. Select the **IT Assets** title under the **Assets** block. Select the corresponding IT Asset link say, servers, workstations and so on. This opens the selected **Assets list** view page.
3. Click on the **Asset Name** to be assigned to a **Department/Site** by enabling the check box.
4. Click the **Actions** menu -> select **Assign to Department** option from the list. This opens **Add Resource(s) to** pop-up window.
5. Select the **Department Name** from the combo box and **Save** the details.

Assign IT Asset to Site

1. From the Asset list view page, click the **Actions** menu -> select **Assign to Site** option from the list. This opens **Assign Resource(s) to Site** pop-up window.
2. Select the **Site name** from the combo box.
3. **Save** the details. Else click **Cancel** button.
Modify State of IT Assets

To modify the state of IT Assets,

1. Click the **Assets** tab in the header pane. This opens the assets home page.
2. Select the **IT Assets** title under the **Assets** block. Select the specific IT Asset link. This opens the Assets list view page.
3. Select the assets to be modified of their status by enabling the check box. Click the **Actions** menu and select the **Modify State** option. This opens the **Modify State** pop up window.
4. Select the **State** from the combo box. For ex, In Store, In Use and so on.
5. **Save** the changes.
Change log-in Credentials for IT Assets

You can change the log-in credentials for bulk of assets. You have Global credentials and Local credentials. Global credentials are common login permissions for all the assets. Local credentials are private login permissions for an asset (generally used to restrict the access permissions to everyone).

To change the login credentials,

1. Click the Assets tab in the header pane. This opens the assets home page.
2. Click IT Assets under Assets block on the left hand side of the page. Select the respective IT assets link. E.g. Access points, Printers and so on. This opens the corresponding IT asset page.
3. Select the IT Assets to change the log-in credentials by enabling the check box. This opens the assets list view page. Click the Actions combo box --> and select the Change Credentials option. This opens the corresponding page.
4. Select either Global Credentials or Local Credentials by selecting the radio button.

Global Credentials

1. Select the Mode from the drop down. For Windows Workstations select Domain Mode.
2. If you have selected Network mode, then select the Network from the drop-down menu. Refer the topic Network Scan to know how to configure the remaining fields in the form.
3. For Domain Mode, select the Domain from the drop-down menu.
4. Specify the User Name and Password of the selected Domain.
5. Save the details. If you would like to Save and Scan now click the corresponding option.

Local Credentials

1. Select the Device Type from the drop down menu. Say, Windows, Unix or other devices.
2. If the selected Device Type is Windows, enter the Login Credentials of the asset.
3. If the selected Device Type is Unix, then refer the topic Network Scan to know more to configure the fields in the form.
4. If the asset is VMware host machine, then select the Device Type as Other Devices and enter the HTTPS login credentials in the Login Name and Password fields.
5. Save the details. If you would like to Save and Scan Now click the corresponding option.
Bulk Scan of IT Assets

Scan now option is to scan group or bulk of assets for assets data. Each time when a new asset is added, instead of scanning all the assets, you can scan the newly added assets for resource details.

If you have changed the credentials for the assets or if you want to specify the log-in credentials for an asset then select the Change Credentials option under the actions menu and specify the details. Click Save and Scan now button for scanning the assets.

To scan bulk of IT Assets,

1. Click the Assets tab in the header pane. This opens the assets home page.
2. Select the IT Assets title under the Assets block. Select the specific IT Asset link. This opens the Assets list view page.
3. Select the assets to be scanned by enabling the check box. Click the Actions tab -> select Scan Now option. This opens the Scan wizard page with total number of scanned and failed assets. And you can view the asset details in the Resource details page.
Delete IT Asset

To delete assets,

1. Click **Assets** tab -> Click **IT Asset** link under the assets block on the left hand side of the page. This opens the IT Assets list view page.
2. From the assets list view page, select assets to be deleted by enabling the check box.
3. Click **Delete** button to delete the selected assets. You can see the selected assets deleted from the list.
Import IT Asset from CSV file

ServiceDesk Plus helps you to import your asset details saved in CSV (Comma Separated values) format. If you have asset details in .XLS files, open it with Microsoft Excel and save it as .CSV files and then import it.

1. From the Assets view list page, click the Import from CSV link. This opens the Resource Import Wizard page.
2. Select the Resource Category from the combo box, IT or NON IT. This is a mandatory field.
3. Select the Resource Type from the combo box.

If you have selected Non-IT as resource category then the resource type would display components and assets. (OR) If you have selected IT as resource category then the resource type would display, components and IT Assets. Under IT Assets you have workstations and other IT-Assets. This is a mandatory field.

4. Locate the .CSV file using the Browse button.
5. Click on Step2 button to go to the next page. Click Previous button if you need to go the previous page.
6. If you have selected the resource type as workstations then select the Workstation details from the combo box. Also specify the Asset Details by selecting from the combo box. The columns in .CSV file are populated in the select boxes beside each field label. Manage Engine ServiceDesk Plus asset field's needs mapping with the field names from the .CSV file.
7. Map the Workstation Name for workstation details. For asset details map the Product Type, Product Name, Asset Name from the combo box. These are mandatory fields.
8. Map the Model, Tag, Manufacturer, Operating System and Domain details for the workstation details.
9. Map the Asset Tag, Asset Serial No, Bar Code, Vendor Name, Asset Cost, Warranty Expiry Date, Expiry Date, Location, Assigned to User, Assigned to Department from the combo box.
10. Map the Acquisition Date field with the relevant field in the .CSV file. Also map the order of the acquisition date i.e. date/month/year available in the .CSV file.
11. Click Step3 to go the next page. Click Previous button if you need to go the previous page.
12. Click Import Now button to import the existing data from the .CSV file. Once the data is imported, you can see the Import Wizard page with result break-up.
View IT Asset Details

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your **user name** and **password**. This opens the ManageEngine ServiceDesk plus home page.
2. Click **Assets** tab -> Click **IT Asset** link on the left hand side of the page. This opens the IT Assets list view page.
3. Click the IT Asset name to view the IT Assets details. By default **Resource Info** tab details are displayed.

View Resource Info Details

**Resource Info** tab displays the Resource Details such as, Resource Name, Tag, Bar Code, Serial No Region, Cost, Acquisition Date and many other details are displayed.

View Relationships

The Relationship tab shows the default relationships of the asset with other assets. If you are have configured CMDB in the application, then the relationship map is displayed. Refer Defining CI Relationship to know more on configuring the relationships between assets.

On clicking the tab -> click the Add Relationship button on the top right hand side of the page.

Connection Relationship

1. Click the Connection Relationship option from the list. This opens the **Connection Relationship** page.
2. To connect the assets to other assets select the **Assets** radio button.
   1. Select the assets to be connected from the **Asset List**.
   2. Move the selected asset to the **Connected Assets list** using the **>>** button.
   3. Save the details. You can see the connected assets under the **Connected to Assets** block.
3. To connect the assets to the **Business Services** select the corresponding radio button.
   1. Select the business services from the list to be connected to the assets such as, Email, Internet Access and so on.
   2. Move the selected assets from the **Business Service** list to the **Connected Services** list using the **>>** button.
   3. Save the changes. You can see the connected business services under the **Business Services block**.

Usage Relationship

1. Click the Usage Relationship option from the list. This opens the Usage Relationship page.
2. Select the **Assign the asset to User/Department** radio button to associate the asset to the user/department.
1. Select the **User** from the combo box.
2. Select the **Department** to be associated from the combo box.
3. If the **Asset is Leased** then select the corresponding check box.
4. **Save** the changes. (Or)
3. Select the **Associate to Asset** radio button to assign the asset to the asset.
   1. Choose **Asset** to be associated from the combo box.
   2. **Save** the details.

### Container Relationship

1. Click the Container Relationship option from the list. This opens the Container Relationship page.
2. Select the **Components** radio button to associate the components to the user. Select the type of components to be displayed in the list by selecting it from the choose product combo box.
3. Select the components from the **Components List** and move it to the **Attached components list** using >> button.
4. **Save** the details.

### View History of IT Asset

Click the **History tab** to view the IT Asset history. This gives the complete IT - Assets **Resource Ownership History on date and State of the components**.

### Request Details

On clicking the Request Details page you will be able to view all the requests raised for the asset.

On clicking the request title you can view the details of the request, requester details, Assets belonging to the user, Time elapsed to solve the request, resolution for the request and history of the request

Also you can send reply for the request or forward the request to the technician. You can Search associated problem and change or add new problem or change to the request.

### View Contracts of the IT Asset

Click Contracts tab to view the contracts attached to the IT Asset. This gives the complete details about the contract such as, vendor name, support details, contract rules, expiry date, cost and other rules.

### View Costs

1. Click the Costs tab to view the costs associated to the IT Asset.
2. Click **Add Cost** button at the right side of the page to add cost to the IT Asset.
3. Select the **Cost Factor** from the combo box. For ex. Service Cost. This is a mandatory field.

4. Specify the description about the cost in the **Description** field. Say if the cost factor is service cost you can specify important information about the service cost.

5. Specify the **Amount** in $ in the Amount field. This is a mandatory field.

6. Select the **Date** from the calendar button. This is mandatory field.

7. Click **Add Cost** button to add the cost. You can see the cost added to the IT Asset shown in the Other Costs list view page.
Copy Resource

Using Copy Resource option you can make multiple copies of the resource and its details. On making multiple copies of the resource, it becomes easier for the technician to add bulk of similar assets. The technician need not manually enter all the resource details for each resource. The new copies of the resource will be assigned with new asset name and rest of the details is retailed as is.

Example: If you have ten printers of the same configurations in your organization, then in this case, enter the configurations for one printer and save it. Then copy the same printer for ten times and add its configurations to other printers.

To make multiple copies of the Resources,

1. Click the **Assets** tab in the header pane. This opens the assets home page.
2. Click **IT Assets** under Assets block on the left hand side of the page. Select the respective IT assets link. E.g. Access points, Printers and so on. This opens the corresponding IT asset page.
3. Click the **Title** of the assets to be duplicated. This opens the Asset details page.
4. Click the **Actions** menu on the right hand side of the page. Select **Copy Resource** option. This opens the Copy Resource dialog pops up.
5. Specify the **Number of Copies** to be made for the resource in the given text field.
6. **Copy** the resource. You can see the list of resource copies listed in the list view.
Attach Assets

To attach assets to the IT Assets,

1. Click the **Assets** tab in the header pane. This opens the assets home page.
2. Select the **IT Assets link** under the Assets block on the left hand side of the page. Select the corresponding IT Asset link say, Printers, Access Points and so on. This opens the Asset list view page.
3. Click the title of the asset to be attached with an asset. This opens the asset details page.
4. Click the **Actions** combo box -> select the **Attach Asset** option from the list. This opens the **Attach Asset** pop up window.
5. If you would like to display the list of all assets or filter specific asset then select the assets to be displayed from the **List** combo box. Ex: Printer, Access Points and so on. Also select the type of asset such as asset in store, in use and so on from the **of type** combo box.
6. You have two columns, such as **Asset list** and **Attached Assets** list. You have to select the assets to be attached from the assets list and move it to the attached assets list using the **>>** button. To remove the assets from the attached assets list use the **<<** button.

**Example:**
If you would like to attach a printer to a workstation then select the list of assets to be attached from the assets list and move it to the attached assets list.
7. **Save** the changes. If you would like to detach all the attached assets then select the **Detach All** option.
Attach Components

To attach components to an asset,

1. Click the Assets tab in the header pane; this opens the assets home page.
2. Select the IT Assets link under the Assets block on the left hand side of the page. Select the corresponding IT Asset link say, Printers, Access Points and so on. This opens the IT asset list view page.
3. Click the Title of the asset to be attached with a component. This opens the asset details page.
4. Click the Actions combo box -> select the Attach Component option from the list. This opens the Attach Component pop up window.
5. If you would like to display the list of all components or filter specific components then select the components to be displayed from the List combo box. Ex: keyboard, mouse and so on. Also select the type of component such as component in store, in use and so on from the of type combo box.
6. You have two columns, such as Component list and Attached Components list. You have to select the components to be attached from the components list and move it to the attached components list using the >> button. To remove the component from the attached component list use the << button.

Example:

If you would like to attach a keyboard and a mouse to a workstation then select the list of components to be attached from the component list and move it to the attached component list.

7. Save the changes. If you would like to detach all the attached components then select the Detach All option.
Attach Documents

To attach documents,

1. Click the Assets tab in the header pane. This opens the Asset home page.
2. Select IT Assets link under the Assets block on the left hand side of the page. Select the corresponding IT Assets say, Printers, Routers and so on. This opens the IT asset list view page.
3. Click the Asset Name of the asset to which the document needs to be attached. This opens the Asset details page.
4. Click the Actions combo box on the top right hand side of the page -> select the Attach Documents option. This opens the Attach File pop up window.
5. Choose the file to be attached by clicking the Browse button. The maximum size of the attached file can be 10 MB.
6. Click Attach File. The attached document will be listed in Asset details page under Attached Documents. The attached file can be deleted by clicking the delete icon beside file name.
Assign IT Assets to Users/Departments/Assets

1. Click the **Assets** tab in the header pane. This opens the assets home page.
2. Select the **IT Assets** title under the **Assets** block. Select the specific IT Asset link. This opens the selected Assets list view page.
3. Click the **Asset Name** to be assigned a user/department/asset. This opens the Asset details page.
4. Click the **Assign** sub tab on the right hand side of the page. This opens the **Assign/Associate** page.
5. If you would like to assign the asset to user or department then, select **Assign User and or Department** radio button. Or if you would like to associate with an asset then select **Associate to Asset** radio button.

**Assign User and or Department**

1. On selecting this radio button, select the **User name and Department name** from the combo box.
2. If the asset is leased then enable the **Asset is Leased** check box and specify the **From and To** date of the lease.

**Associate to Asset**

1. On selecting this radio button, **Choose the Asset** to be associated from the combo box.

7. **Save** the details.
Add New Workstation

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your **user name** and **password**. This opens the ManageEngine ServiceDesk plus home page.
2. Click **Assets** tab in the header pane. This opens the asset home page.
3. Click **IT Asset** link under the resource block on the left hand side of the page. Select the corresponding assets say, Printers, Routers and so on. This opens the Asset list view page. Click **New** button. (OR)

   Click **Quick Actions** drop-down menu and select **Workstation** option. The **Add New Workstation** page is displayed.

**Computer Details**

4. Specify the **Name** of the computer in the name text field and select the **Model** of the workstation from the combo box. This is a mandatory field. **Ex: Latitude D620.**
5. Specify the **Service Tag & Manufacturer** of the workstation in the given text field.
6. Specify the **Processor Count, Processor Info, Clock Speed and Manufacturer** of the processor in the given text fields.
7. Specify the **RAM** and **Virtual Memory** in (MB) the given text fields.
8. Also specify the **Name** and **Service Pack** of the operating system in the corresponding fields.

**Resource Info Details**

9. Specify the resource info details such as, **Resource Tag, Resource Serial No, Bar Code & Location** in the given text fields.
10. Select the **Site** and **Vendor Name** of the workstation from the combo box.
11. Select the **Acquisition Date, Expiry Date & Warranty Expiry Date** from the calendar button.

**Asset State Details**

12. Select the status of the asset from the **Asset State** combo box. **Ex: In Store, In Use and so on**

**Network Adapter Details**

13. Specify the network adapter details such as, **Network IP Address, MAC Address, NIC, Network, DNS Server name & Default Gateway** in the given text field.
14. Select the **Domain** name from the combo box.
15. If you would like to enable **DHCP** then select the check box.
Input /Output Devices Details

16. Also specify the input/output devices details of the workstation. Specify the Monitor Type, Mouse Type, Keyboard Type & their corresponding manufacturers in the respective fields.

17. Save the details. If you would like to Save and Add New workstation, then click the corresponding button.
Bulk Scan of newly Added Workstation

Using this option you can scan a new workstation added to the domain for its hardware and software details. This is very useful when you have to scan a single or a set of newly added workstations. In such case you don’t have to scan the entire domain for adding the workstations to the network.

To Scan New Workstation,

1. Click the Assets tab in the header pane -> click the Workstations link under the Assets tab on the left side of the page. This opens Workstations list view page.
2. Click the New Scan button. This opens the Scan Configuration page.
3. Specify the Name/IP of the workstation. This is a mandatory field.
4. Select the log-in credentials for the workstation by selecting either of the two radio buttons. Say Global or Local credentials. By default Global Credentials option will be selected.

Global Credentials

1. Select the Scan type from the combo box. Say Domain mode or Network mode.
2. Select the Domain/Network name from the combo box. This is a mandatory field.
3. Specify the Login Name and Password for the selected domain.

Local Credentials

1. Specify the local Login Name and Password.
2. Select the Protocol to connect it to the workstation by enabling either of the two radio buttons. Say SSH or Telnet.
3. If you would like to scan software in Linux workstation then select the corresponding check box.
4. Click Scan to scan the workstation. Else click Cancel.
Change Workstation as Server

You can change workstation as server,

1. Click the **Assets** tab in the header pane. This opens the assets home page.
2. Click **IT Assets** under Assets block on the left hand side of the page. Click the **Workstations** link. This opens the workstations list view page.
3. Select the workstations name to be changed as server by enabling the check box.
4. Click the **Actions** menu and select the **Change as Server** option. The **Modify Device Type** window pops up.
5. Select the **Type** of the server from the combo box.
6. **Save** the details.
View Workstation Details

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password. This opens the ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus home page.
2. Click Assets tab -> Click Workstation link under IT Assets title on the left hand side of the page. This opens the workstations list view page.
3. Click the workstation name to view the workstations details. By default Resource Info tab details are displayed.

View Resource Info Details

Resource Info tab displays the Resource Details & Workstation Details. Resource details such as Resource Name, Tag, Bar Code, Serial No etc. Workstation details such as Computer Name, OS version, Service pack, Processor details, memory information and many other details are displayed.

View Hardware Details

Click Hardware tab to view the complete Hardware details of the workstation. The hardware tab is broadly divided into four major blocks such as Workstation Details block, Network Details, Discs and Drive Details, Printer Details and Other Details.

Under the workstation block you can view computer system, operating system, processor, memory and installed memory details. Under network block you can view the network adapter’s details. Under disks and drives block you can view the hard disks, logical drives and physical drives details. The printer details can be viewed under the printer details block. Under other details block you can view the keyboard, mouse, monitor, multimedia, ports, USB controller’s details.

View Software Details

Click Software tab to view the software details of the workstation. This opens the software details page with the list of all installed software’s in the workstation. By default the list of All Software will be displayed.

Select the corresponding filter option from the Filter Viewing combo box. There are different status levels of the software, such as Excluded, Managed, Prohibited, Freeware, Shareware and Unidentified. You can select any of these status levels and filter the software’s listed.

Click on the software title to view the software details such as, number of licensed installations, number of unlicensed installations and number of Purchased licenses.

If there is any license violations a warning message is displayed saying: License Violation. Software installations are more than purchased licenses.
View Relationships

The Relationship tab shows the default relationships of the asset with other assets. If you have configured CMDB in the application, then the relationship map is displayed. Refer Defining CI Relationship to know more on configuring the relationships between assets.

On clicking the tab -> click the Add Relationship button on the top right hand side of the page.

**Connection Relationship**

1. Click the Connection Relationship option from the list. This opens the **Connection Relationship** page.
2. To connect the assets to other assets select the **Assets** radio button.
   1. Select the assets to be connected from the **Asset List**.
   2. Move the selected asset to the **Connected Assets list** using the >> button.
   3. Save the details. You can see the connected assets under the **Connected to Assets** block.
3. To connect the assets to the **Business Services** select the corresponding radio button.
   1. Select the business services from the list to be connected to the assets such as, Email, Internet Access and so on.
   2. Move the selected services from the **Business Service** list to the **Connected Services** list using the >> button.
   3. **Save** the changes. You can see the connected business services under the **Business Services block**.

**Usage Relationship**

1. Click the Usage Relationship option from the list. This opens the Usage Relationship page.
2. Select the **Assign the asset to User/Department** radio button to associate the asset to the user/department.
   1. Select the **User** from the combo box.
   2. Select the **Department** to be associated from the combo box.
   3. If the **Asset is Leased** then select the corresponding check box.
   4. **Save** the changes. (Or)
3. Select the **Associate to Asset** radio button to assign the asset to the asset.
   1. Choose **Asset** to be associated from the combo box.
   2. **Save** the details.

**Container Relationship**

1. Click the Container Relationship option from the list. This opens the Container Relationship page.
2. Select the **Components** radio button to associate the components to the user. Select the type of components to be displayed in the list by selecting it from the choose product combo box.
3. Select the components from the **Components List** and move it to the **Attached components list** using >> button.
4. **Save** the details.

View History of workstation

Click the **History tab** to view the workstation history. This gives the complete Workstation Scan History and Resource Ownership History on date.

**Request Details**

On clicking the Request Details page you will be able to view all the requests raised for the asset.

On clicking the request title you can view the details of the request, requester details, Assets belonging to the user, Time elapsed to solve the request, resolution for the request and history of the request

Also you can send reply for the request or forward the request to the technician. You can Search associated problem and change or add new problem or change to the request.

**View Contracts of the workstation**

Click Contracts tab to view the contracts attached to the workstation. This gives the complete details about the contract such as, vendor name, support details, contract rules, expiry date, cost and other rules.

**View Costs**

1. Click the Costs tab to view the costs associated to the workstation.
2. Click Add Cost button to add cost to the workstation.
3. Select the Cost Factor from the combo box. For ex. Service Cost. This is a mandatory field.
4. Specify the description about the cost in the description field. Say if the cost factor is service cost you can specify important information about the service cost.
5. Specify the Amount in $ in the Amount field. This is a mandatory field.
6. Select the Date from the calendar button.
7. Click Add Cost button to add the cost. You can see the cost added to the workstation shown in the Other Costs list view page.
Print the Workstation Details

You can view the preview of the workstation details in printable format.

To view the Preview of Workstation Details,

1. Click the **Assets** tab in the header pane. This opens the assets home page.
2. Click **IT Assets** under **Assets** block on the left hand side of the page. Select the **Workstations** link. This opens the workstation details page.
3. Click the **Workstation Name** to view the preview of the workstation details. This opens the Workstation details page.
4. Click the **Actions** menu on the right hand side of the page. Select **Print Preview** option. This opens the **Resource Details** pop up window. You can view the complete resource details, workstation details, network details, disks & drives details, printer details, other details, software details, installed service packs details, resources attached details, workstations scan history details, resource ownership history details, contracts details & costs details.
Modify Type

To Modify Device type,

1. Click the **Assets** tab in the header pane. This opens the assets home page.
2. Click **IT Assets** under **Assets** block on the left hand side of the page. Select the Workstations link. This opens the workstation list view page.
3. Click the **Workstation Name** to be modified of the device type. This opens the Workstation details page.
4. Click the **Actions** menu on the right hand side of the page. Select **Modify Type** option. This opens the modify device type pop up window.
5. Select the device type from the **Modify Type** combo box.
6. **Save** the details.
Reconcile IT Assets

The Reconcile option is to merge two resources and delete one of the resources. This is essential when the assets received from a Purchase Order are associated to Departments or Groups, and on performing a domain scan or a network scan, these assets are duplicated.

Say, "LD400 - PO # 2[10]" is the workstation purchased and has been renamed as "SDP-dept". On performing a scan, both the workstations (LD400 - PO # 2[10] and SDP-dept) appear in the List View. To avoid duplication, you can reconcile the workstations, where LD400 - PO # 2[10] is deleted and SDP-dept is retained. The reconcile option can be performed from either the PO details page or from the asset list view page.

To reconcile from the asset list view page,

1. Click the Assets tab in the header pane.
2. Click IT Assets under the Assets block.
3. Select any of the IT asset, say workstation. From workstation list view, enable the check box beside the two workstations to reconcile.
4. Click Actions drop down -> Reconcile option. Click OK to proceed with the reconcile operation.

**NOTE:** Please note that if both the assets are received via Purchase Order, then the assets cannot be reconciled.
Add Software

Using this option you can add software to a workstation.

To add Software to the workstation,

1. Click the Assets tab in the header pane. This opens the assets home page.
2. Click IT Assets under Assets block on the left hand side of the page. Select the Workstations link. This opens the workstation list view page.
3. Click the Workstation Name. This opens the Workstation details page.
4. Click the Actions menu on the right hand side of the page. Select Add Software option. This opens the Add Software pop up window.
5. Select the software from the list to add to the workstation. You can select multiple software to add to the workstation using ctrl or shift keys.
6. Save the details. Else Close the pop-up window.
Delete Workstation

1. Click **Assets** tab -&gt; Click **IT Asset** link on the left hand side of the page. This opens the IT Assets list view page.
2. From the Workstations view list page, select workstations to be deleted by enabling the check box.
3. Click **Delete** button to delete the selected workstations. You can see the selected workstation deleted from the list.
Identifying the Uniqueness of Workstations

While performing a scan in ServiceDesk Plus, the criteria that helps to identify the uniqueness of the workstations is in the following order,

1. Agent ID (only for Agent based Scan)
2. Service Tag
3. Workstation Name
4. MAC Address

With the help of these criteria, ServiceDesk Plus differentiates between workstations and assumes the Agent ID, Service Tag, MAC Address and Workstation Name to be unique for each workstation. If any criteria match for two workstations, then the workstation details will be overwritten.

The procedure in which the workstations are overwritten for each criteria are explained below,

Service Tag

Consider two workstations, Machine A and Machine B with similar Service Tag as 12345. The names of the workstations are MachineA.domain.com and MachineB.domain.com respectively. Consider that only Machine A has been scanned by the application. Upon scanning Machine B, since the Service Tag is the same, the workstation details of Machine A will be overwritten by that of Machine B.

The Solution: Configuring Invalid Service Tags

If the Service Tag is not configured properly by the OEM, then many machines would have similar Service Tags. In this case one workstation would be overwritten by another during scan. Such service tags can be ignored during scan by adding them under the Invalid Service Tag list.

This configuration is under Admin tab -> General Settings (Under Discovery section).
Workstation Name

In general, while scanning workstations, the application will first look for Service Tag. If the Service Tag is empty the next parameter i.e., the computer name will be considered and workstations will be overwritten accordingly. Consider the workstation, MachineA.domain.com, is already available in the application. If another machine with same name is scanned then the details in former workstation (MachineA.domain.com) will be replaced by the latter.

MAC Address

The third criteria which the application looks for while overwriting workstations are the MAC Addresses. Consider a workstation with different name and Service Tag, but with same MAC address as the one already available in the application. On performing a scan, the details of the existing workstation will be replaced by the newly scanned workstation.

The Solution:

In certain environments there are possibilities of MAC address being the same in many machines (VMware or machines connected through VPN). Unique MAC address identification can be enabled or disabled under Admin tab -> General Settings (Under Discovery section).

---

**Enable/Disable MAC Address identification during scan.**

During scan, each workstation or server is identified uniquely by its service tag, name or MAC address. But MAC address would be same in many machines in case of VMware or machines connected through VPN. So if have a similar network environment, one machine would be overwritten by another. Unique MAC address identification can be enabled or disabled using the below option.

- [ ] Enable MAC Address Identification
- [ ] Disable MAC Address Identification

---

Scenarios: When does the machine be renamed with _old

**Scenario 1:**

When the workstations are swapped in the network.

Consider two workstations, MACHINE-A with service tag ST-1 and MACHINE-B with ST-2. Both the workstations are swapped in the network. On swapping the workstations configurations is, MACHINE-A with ST-2 and MACHINE-B with ST-1. If you scan MACHINE-A, then the workstation MACHINE-B will be overwritten as MACHINE-A and the workstation MACHINE-A will be renamed as MACHINE-A_old. If you scan MACHINE-B again, it will overwrite the MACHINE-A_old as MACHINE-B.
Scenario 2:

The workstation is already discovered with a valid Service Tag but scanned again with a different service tag. In this case ServiceDesk Plus will rename the existing workstation with '_old' and add the machine again with the new Service Tag.

Case 1:

In certain cases, the workstations might be discovered with valid service tag. But during its life cycle, you might change the motherboard of the workstation, thus changing the service tag. In this case, the existing workstation is renamed with _old and the workstation with the new service tag is added again.

Case 2:

The workstation MACHINE-A with service tag ST-1 is already scanned in the network. Another workstation, MACHINE-A with service tag ST-2 is added to the network. If you scan the workstation MACHINE-A again, it will rename the workstation as MACHINE-A_old and will add the newly added workstation as MACHINE-A.

Case 3:

In case of VMware machines, when the host is changed, the Service Tag gets changed too.

Workstations overwritten with _old during Agent Based Scan:

If you have enabled Agent Base Scan, then the Agent ID (a unique ID which is created on all workstations when the agent is installed on them for the first time) will be considered as a unique parameter for fetching the workstation details.

If the agent is deployed through an 'Image', then the same Agent ID will be copied to all the client machines. This in turn, will create duplicate entries for the workstations when scanned and subsequently appends the previous workstation with _old. To overcome this issue, we request you to uninstall the agent completely from the registry and deploy it through AD GPO.
Remote Desktop

With multiple site support, ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus has emerged as global IT helpdesk software, effectively resolving issues raised from various locations. Sometimes, there may be issues that require technicians to access machines in remote location say, a SAP related issue in New York requires immediate attention and your support team is located in California. Likewise, when a request is raised via phone call, it would be great if the technician can access the requester’s machine from his desk to resolve the issue instantly.

That is where Remote Desktop Sharing comes into play! Instead of launching a whole bunch of different software to access remote machines, ServiceDesk Plus Remote Desktop Sharing helps you to access all your scanned workstations and resolve issue in no time!

Browsers compatible for accessing remote desktop

- Internet Explorer (version 5.5 and above)
- Firefox
Access Remote Control

1. Click the Asset tab in the header pane.
2. From the Assets block, select Workstations under IT assets. The list of all the workstations is displayed.
3. Select the workstation you wish to gain remote access.
4. From the workstation details page, click on Remote Control tab.

**Note:** Please note that the credentials should be configured before selecting the remote control tab. If the credentials are not configured then the log-in credentials window pops up.
5. Click **Save and Remote Control**.

The following activities occur on clicking the Remote Control tab from the workstation details page.

![Connecting 192.168.111.203](image)

**File Transfer**

The Agent.exe file is installed in the C drive of the remote machine and an ActiveX control is run as a viewer. The following should be configured in the remote machine for the file transfer.

- Enable "File and Printer share" on executing the command (given below) in the command prompt of the remote machine

```
netsh firewall set service FILEANDPRINT
```

- User should have permission to write in C drive of remote machine.

The above two steps are required only on performing remote control to a workstation for the first time. The ports for pushing the agents are TCP 135, 138, 139 and 445.

Instead of opening these ports and giving permission to all the scanned workstations for transferring files, you can push the agent.exe from Active Directory to all the machines.
To push the agent to remote machine from Active Directory,

1. Download the contents in the batch file and copy it to the Active Directory machine. The contents in the batch file are,

   copy file://network/ share\agent.exe c:\ /y
   copy file://network/ share\install.iss c:\ /y
   copy file://network/ share\uninstall.iss c:\ /y

2. Copy the files from <SDP-Home>\server\default\conf\agent\*. * to the Active directory machine.
3. In the script, the path from where the files are to be copied is specified as "network share". Replace this path to where you have copied the files to.
5. In the console tree, right click on your domain, and select Properties.
7. Right click on the name of domain or the Organizational unit for which you would like to configure the script. Click Create and Link a GPO Here... option.
8. Type a name for the new GPO (for example; REMOTECONTROL), and click **Ok**. The GPO is added to the existing list.
9. Right click on the newly created GPO and click on **Edit** option.
10. From the Group Policy Object Editor window, select **User Configuration** -> **Windows settings** -> **scripts** -> double click logon.

11. In the new Logon Properties window click on **Add**. The **Add a Script window** opens. Browse and select the Script name "CopyAgent.bat" and the script should be accessible by the remote machines.

12. Click **OK** on Logon Properties window.
Installing the Agent and starting the Service

Using Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI), the agent is installed and the remote workstation can be accessed. The ports to install and start the agent as service in WMI are TCP 135, 445 and one random port greater than 1024. The service starts with the name ManageEngine AssetExplorer-RemoteControl.

**Note:** You can verify the installation of the agent by check the files under the directory `C:\ProgramFiles\AdventNet\ME\AssetExplorer\RemoteControl` of the remote machine.

Installing ActiveX Viewer in the browser

On starting the service in the remote machine, the ActiveX viewer is installed in the client machine, which connects the remote machines as add on to the browser. In Firefox 2 browser, the viewer is installed each time the remote control button is selected.

Acknowledge

An acknowledge message appears in the client window from which you try to connect the remote machine. Click Ok to allow technician to access your workstation.

Meeting

The Meeting is established between the remote machine and the client machine (this may or may not be server machine). The port TCP/ 10443 should be opened in the firewall between the remote machine and the client machine for this communication.

Disconnect Remote Control

When you close the pop up window of Remote Control, the service running in the target computer will be stopped using WMI.
Configure Asset Depreciation

Most of the products purchased by your organization, wear out and decrease in value, or depreciate, over a period of time. Calculating the depreciation of such products becomes utmost essential while creating the financial report of your organization.

ServiceDesk Plus provides 4 methods to calculate asset depreciation, which can be configured in two levels namely, Product Level and Asset Level.

- **Product Level Depreciation Configuration:**
  The Depreciation Configuration at the product level is generally configured under Admin -> Product. The depreciation configuration is applicable for all the assets under the product.

- **Asset Level Depreciation Configuration:**
  The Asset Level Depreciation Configuration denotes the depreciation details configured for individual assets.

**NOTE:**

1. Please note that you can configure depreciation only for assets and components.
2. The Depreciation configuration at the asset level will always override the depreciation configuration at the product level.

**Methods of Calculating Depreciation & Terminology**

The four methods of calculating the asset depreciation are:

- Declining Balance
- Double Declining Balance
- Straight Line
- Sum of the Years Digit

Before we begin configuring depreciation, there are certain terms related to depreciation calculation:

- **Useful Life:** The period during which an asset is expected to be available for use.
- **Salvage Value:** The estimated selling value of any asset, after it has reached the end of service life, or its value has depreciated substantially. It is the total net worth of any asset after it has exhausted its useful life span.

**Product Level Depreciation Configuration**

In most cases, the depreciation details at the product level will be configured while adding the product under the Admin module. You can refer the topic Configure Depreciation to know how to configure the depreciation details while adding the product.

If the depreciation details are not configured at the product level, then you can do so from the asset details page.
1. Click the **Assets** tab in the header pane.
2. Select any IT Asset, Non-IT Asset or Component. Let’s take the example of the IT Asset - Workstation.
3. Select a workstation from the List view.
4. In the details page, click **Actions** drop-down menu and select **Configure Depreciation** option.
5. Specify the **Purchase Cost** and the **Acquisition Date** of the asset.
6. To configure depreciation details at the product level, select **Use data configured for product** radio button.
7. Click **Click here** link to select the Depreciation Method.

8. Choose the **Depreciation Method** from the drop down. If the Depreciation Method is **Declining Balance**, then the **Useful Life** radio button and **Decline Percent** radio button appears. If the depreciation method is **Straight Line**, then the **Useful Life** radio button and **Depreciation Percent** radio button appears.
9. If you have selected **Useful Life** radio button, then specify the **Useful Life** of the product. Alternatively, if you have selected **Decline Percent** or **Depreciation Percent** radio button, then specify the **Decline Percent** or **Depreciation Percent** of the product.
10. Specify the **Salvage Value** of the product.
11. Click **Save** button. The configured depreciation details will be applicable for all the assets with Model Latitude D600.

**Asset Level Depreciation Configuration**

You can configure the depreciation details at the asset level from the **asset List view**. To configure depreciation for individual assets,

1. Click the **Assets** tab in the header pane.
2. Select any IT Asset, Non-IT Asset or Component. For an example, let’s consider the IT Asset-Workstation.
3. In the List view, select the check box beside the asset to configure depreciation.
4. Click **Actions** drop-down box and select **Configure Depreciation** option. The Configure Depreciation pop-up is displayed.
5. Choose the **Depreciation Method** from the drop down. If the Depreciation Method is **Declining Balance**, then the **Useful Life** radio button and **Decline Percent** radio button appears. If the depreciation method is **Straight Line**, then the **Useful Life** radio button and **Depreciation Percent** radio button appears.

6. If you have selected **Useful Life** radio button, then specify the **Useful Life** of the product. Alternatively, if you have selected **Decline Percent** or **Depreciation Percent** radio button, then specify the **Decline Percent** or **Depreciation Percent** of the product.

7. Specify the **Salvage Value** of the product.

8. Click **Save** button.

If the depreciation is configured for the selected asset(s), then a dialog box confirming the change in depreciation configuration appears. Click **OK** to proceed. The depreciation details are successfully saved.

Alternatively, you can also configure asset level depreciation while adding a new asset and from the **asset details page**. To configure depreciation from the asset details page,

1. Click **Actions** drop-down menu and select **Configure Depreciation** option. The Configure Depreciation pop-up is displayed.
2. Specify the **Purchase Cost** and **Acquisition Date** of the asset, if not mentioned.
3. To configure the depreciation details at the asset level, click **For this asset** radio button.
4. Select the **Depreciation Method** to calculate the depreciation for this asset.
5. Specify the **Useful Life** and **Salvage Value** of the asset.
6. Click **Save** button.

**View Depreciation Details**

You can view the depreciation details of an asset from the asset details page.

1. From the Asset List view, select the asset to view the details.
2. In the asset details page, click **Costs** tab.

The Depreciation Details block shows information such as the **Purchase Cost** and **Acquisition Date** of the asset, the **Depreciation Method**, the **Useful Life** and the **Salvage Value** of the asset. The Depreciation Schedule lists the depreciation details in tabular format and can be viewed either **Annually** or **Monthly**.
Asset Components

A part of the asset (i.e. associated with the asset) which does not stand alone are grouped under Components. The list of all possible components are given below,

- Keyboard
- Mouse

- Add New Component
- Add Components to Group
- Delete Components
- View Component Details
- Edit Component
- Associate Asset to Component
- Copy Resource
- Attach Documents
Add New Component

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password. This opens the ManageEngine ServiceDesk plus home page.
2. Click Quick Actions link on the top left hand side of the page -> Click Asset option from the drop down menu. This opens Add Asset page. (OR)

Click Asset Components under Assets on the left side of the page -> select any one of the listed IT assets components link. E.g. Keyboards etc. This opens the particular Asset Component page.
3. Click New button. This opens Add Asset page.
4. Select the Product Name from the combo box. If required, you can add a new product name by clicking Add New link beside the product name field. This is a mandatory field.
5. Select the Vendor Name from the combo box. If required, you can add a new vendor by clicking the Add New link beside the vendor name text field.
6. Specify the Asset Name in the given text field. This is a mandatory field.
7. Specify the Asset Tag, Asset Serial No, Bar Code, Asset Cost in $ in the corresponding text fields.
8. Specify the Acquisition Date & Expiry Date from the calendar button.
9. Select the Site from the combo box.
10. Specify the Location in the given text field.
11. Specify the Asset State by selecting the current status of the asset from the combo box.

If the asset is in Use state you need to associate or assign asset to department or user or asset.
   1. Allocate the asset to an Asset or to a User or to the Department by selecting any of the two radio button. Say Associate to Asset or Assign User/ or Department.
   2. If you choose to associate asset to an asset then select the asset name from the Choose Asset combo box. Or if you have chosen to assign to user or the department then select User or Department from the combo box.
   3. If the asset is leased select the check box Asset is Leased. If the asset is leased then specify the From and To date from the calendar button.
12. Click Save button to save the changes. To save and add another asset click Save and add new button.
Add Components to Group

You have two types of groups in ServiceDesk Plus say, Static group and Dynamic. Add to group option in component list view page is to group bulk of components. These components will be grouped under the Static group by default.

To add components to group,

1. Click any of the Components link under the Assets block on the left hand side of the page. This opens the components list view page.
2. Select the components to be added to the group by enabling the check box. This opens the Add Resource(s) to page.
3. By default you can group components only to the static group. Either to the Existing static group or New static group can be added.
4. If you would like to group the components under existing static group then click the corresponding radio button. Select the group name from the combo box.
5. Else, if you would like to add a new static group and group the components, click New Group radio button. Specify the Group Name and relevant information about the group in the Description field.
6. Click Save button to save the changes.
Delete Components

1. Click **Assets** tab -> Click **Asset Components** link under assets block on the left hand side of the page. This opens the components list view page.
2. From the components list view page, select assets to be deleted by enabling the check box.
3. Click **Delete** button to delete the selected assets. You can see the selected assets deleted from the list.
View Component Details

1. Click **Assets** tab -> Click **Components** link under on the left hand side of the page. This opens the components list view page.
2. Click the components name to view the components details. By default **Resource Info** tab details are displayed.

**View Resource Info Details**

Resource Info tab displays the Resource Details such as, Resource Name, Tag, Bar Code, Serial No Region, Cost, Acquisition Date and many other details are displayed.

**View History of Components**

Click the History tab to view the components history. This gives the complete components **Resource Ownership History on date and State of the components**.

**Request Details**

On clicking the Request Details page you will be able to view all the requests raised for the Component.

On clicking the request title you can view the details of the request, requester details, Assets belonging to the user, Time elapsed to solve the request, resolution for the request and history of the request.

Also you can send reply for the request or forward the request to the technician. You can Search associated problem and change or add new problem or change to the request.

**Contracts Details**

Click Contracts tab to view the contracts attached to the components. This gives the complete details about the contract such as, vendor name, support details, contract rules, expiry date, cost and other rules.

**Costs Details**

1. Click the Costs tab to view the costs associated to the components.
2. Click **Add Cost** button to add cost to the components.
3. Select the **Cost Factor** from the combo box. For ex. Service Cost. This is a mandatory field.
4. Specify the description about the cost in the **Description** field. Say if the cost factor is service cost you can specify important information about the service cost.
5. Specify the **Amount** in $ in the Amount field. This is a mandatory field.
6. Select the **Date** from the calendar button. This is mandatory field.
7. Click **Add Cost** button to add the cost. You can see the cost added to the components shown in the Other Costs list view page.
Associate Asset to Component

To associate an asset to a component,

1. Click the **Assets** tab in the header pane. This opens the Asset home page.
2. Select the **Asset Components link** under the assets block on the left hand side of the page. This opens the asset components list view page.
3. Click the title of the component to be associated with an asset. This opens the component details page.
4. From the components details page, click **Associate** tab on the top right hand side of the page. This opens the **Associate to Assets** pop up window.
5. Select the Asset to be associated from the **Choose Asset** combo box.
6. **Save** the details. Component associated to an asset can be viewed under the relationships tab of the selected asset details page.
Copy Resource

Using Copy Resource option you can make multiple copies of the component and its details. On making multiple copies of the resource, it becomes easier for the technician to add bulk of similar components. The technician need not manually enter all the components details for each component. The new copies of the component will be assigned with new component name and rest of the details is retained as is.

Example: If you have twenty keyboards of the same configurations in your organization, then in this case, enter the configurations of one keyboard and save it. Then copy the same keyboard for twenty times and add its configurations to other keyboards.

To make multiple copies of the resource,

1. Click the Assets tab, this opens the asset home page -> select the Asset Components link on the left hand side of the page.
2. From the list view page of the Asset Components -> click the title of the asset component to be duplicated. This opens the asset components details page.
3. Click the Actions combo box -> select the Copy Resource option. The Copy Resource dialog pops up.
4. Specify the Number of Copies to be made for the resource in the given text field.
5. Copy the resource. You can see the list of resource copies listed in the list view.
Edit Component

To edit the component details,

1. Click the Assets tab -> select the Asset Components under assets block on the left hand side of the page. This opens the list view page of the asset components.
2. Click the title of the Asset Components to be edited. This opens the Asset details page.
3. Click Edit button on the top right hand side of the page.
4. Modify the component details in the Edit form such as, Product Name, Asset Name, Asset Tag, Asset Serial No., Bar Code, Vendor Name, Purchase Cost, Acquisition Date and Expiry Date.
5. Modify the Asset State details such as, Current usage status of the assets like In Use, In Repair and so on. Then the Associate the asset to User or Department details or Assign to User or Department details.
6. Update the changes. You can see the components details getting updated.
Attach Documents

To attach documents to a component,

1. Click the **Assets** tab -> select the **Assets Components** link under the assets block on the left hand side of the page. This opens the IT asset list view page.
2. Click the **title of the component** to be attached to other assets. This opens the **Asset details** page.
3. Click the **Actions** combo box on the top right hand side of the page -> select the **Attach Documents** option. This opens the **Attach File** pop up window.
4. Choose the file to be attached by clicking the **Browse** button. The maximum size of the attached file can be 10 MB.
5. Click **Attach File**. The attached document will be listed in Asset details page under Attached Documents. The attached file can be deleted by clicking the delete icon beside file name.
Non-IT Assets

All non IP based assets are grouped under Non - IT assets. The list of all possible non-it assets are given below,

- Projectors
- Scanners
- Tables
- Chairs
- Telephones

- Add Non-IT Asset
- Edit Non-It Asset
- Add Non-It Asset to Group
- Assign bulk Non-It Asset to Department/Site
- Modify the State of Non-It Assets
- Delete Non-It Asset
- View Non-It Asset Details
- Assign Non-It Asset to Users and/or Department
- Copy Resources
- Attach Asset
- Attach Component
- Attach Documents
Add Non-IT Asset

1. Click **Assets** tab -> Click **Quick Actions** on the top left hand side of the page -> Click **Asset** option from the drop down menu. This opens Add Asset page. (OR)

   Click **Non-IT Assets** under assets on the left side of the page -> select any one of the listed Non-IT assets link. E.g. Projectors, Scanners. This opens the particular Non-IT asset page.
2. Click **New** button. This opens Add Asset page.
3. Select the **Product Name** of the asset from the combo box. If required, you can add a new product name by clicking **Add New** link beside the product name field. This is a mandatory field.
4. Select the **Vendor Name** from the combo box. If required, you can add a new vendor by clicking the **Add New** link beside the vendor name text field.
5. Specify the **Asset Name** in the given text field. This is a mandatory field.
6. Specify the **Asset Tag, Asset Serial No, Bar Code, Asset Cost** in $ in the corresponding text fields.
7. Specify the **Acquisition Date & Expiry Date** from the calendar button.
8. Select the **Site** from the combo box.
9. Specify the **Location** in the given text field.
10. Specify the **Asset State** by selecting the current status of the asset from the combo box.

If the asset is in **Use** state you need to associate or assign asset to department or user or asset.

1. Allocate the asset to an **Asset** or to a **User** or to the **Department** by selecting any of the two radio button. Say Associate to Asset or Assign User/ or Department.
2. If you choose to associate asset to an asset then select the asset name from the **Choose Asset** combo box. Or if you have chosen to assign to user or the department then select User or Department from the combo box.
3. If the asset is leased select the check box **Asset is Leased**. If the asset is leased then specify the **From** and **To** date from the calendar button.

11. Click **Save** button to save the changes. To save and add another asset click **Save and add new button**.
Edit Non-IT Assets

To edit the non-IT assets details,

1. Click the **Assets** tab -> select the **Non-IT Assets link** on the left hand side of the page. This opens the list view page of the IT assets.
2. Click the **title of the Non-IT asset** to be edited. This opens the **Asset details** page.
3. Click **Edit** button on the top right hand side of the page (OR)

    Click the **Actions** combo box next to the edit resource button -> select the **Edit** option. This opens the **Edit Asset** page.
4. Edit the Asset Details block such as **Product Name, Asset Name, Tag, Serial No, Bar Code, Vendor Name, Cost, Acquisition Date, Expiry Date, and Location**.
5. Modify the Asset State details such as, **Current usage status** of the assets like In Use, In Repair and so on. Then the **Associate** the asset to **User or Department** details or **Assign** to **User or Department** details.
6. **Update** the changes. You can see the assets details getting updated.
Add Non-IT Assets to Group

You have two types of groups in ServiceDesk Plus say, Static group and Dynamic. Add to group option in Non-IT asset list view page is to group bulk of Non-IT assets. These assets will be grouped under the Static group by default.

To Add Non-IT Assets to group,

1. Click any of the Non-IT Assets link under the assets block on the left hand side of the page. This opens the Non-IT assets list view page.
2. Select the Non-IT assets to be added to the group by enabling the check box. This opens the Add Resource(s) to page.
3. By default you can group Non-IT assets only to the static group. Either to the Existing static group or New static group can be added.
4. If you would like to group the Non-IT assets under existing static group then click the corresponding radio button. Select the group name from the combo box.
5. Else, if you would like to add a new static group and group the Non-IT assets, click New Group radio button. Specify the Group Name and relevant information about the group in the Description field.
6. Click Save button to save the changes.
Assign Bulk Non-IT Assets to Department/Site

1. Click the **Assets** tab in the header pane. This opens the assets home page.
2. Select the **Non-IT Assets** title under the **assets** block. Select the specific Non-IT Asset link. This opens the Assets list view page.

Assign Bulk of Assets to Department

1. Click the Non-IT assets to be assigned to a **Department** by enabling the check boxes. Click **Actions menu** -> select **Assign to Department** option. This opens **Assign Resources to** pop-up window.
2. Select the **Department Name** from the combo box.
3. **Save** the details.

Assign Bulk of Assets to Site

1. Click the Non-IT assets to be assigned to a **Site** by enabling the check boxes. Click **Actions menu** -> select **Assign to Site** option. This opens **Assign Resources to** pop-up window.
2. Select the **Site Name** from the combo box.
3. **Save** the details.
Modify the State of Non-IT Assets

To modify the state of Non-IT Assets,

1. Click **Assets** tab -> Click **Non-IT Asset** link on the left hand side of the page. This opens the Non-IT Assets list view page.
2. From the Assets list view page, select the asset to be modified by enabling the check box beside the asset title.
3. Click the **Actions** combo box -> select the **Modify State** option. (OR)

   From the Asset details page, click the **Change** link beside the Resource State on the right hand side of the page. This opens the **Modify State** page.
4. Select the **Modify State** from the combo box. Ex: In Use, In Store and so on.
5. **Save** the changes.
Delete Non-IT Asset

1. Click **Assets** tab on the header pane. This opens the Asset home page.
2. Click **Non-IT Assets** link under assets block on the left hand side of the page. This opens the Non-IT Assets list view page.
3. Enable the check box beside the assets to be deleted. Click **Delete** button.
4. A confirmation dialog appears. Click **OK** to continue. You can see the selected assets deleted from the list.
View Non-IT Asset Details

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your **user name** and **password**. This opens the ManageEngine ServiceDesk plus home page.
2. Click **Assets** tab -> Click **Non-IT Assets** link under on the left hand side of the page. This opens the Non-IT Assets list view page.
3. Click the Non-IT Asset name to view the Non-IT Assets details. By default **Resource Info** tab details are displayed.

**View Resource Info Details**

Resource Info tab displays the Resource Details such as, Resource Name, Tag, Bar Code, Serial No Region, Cost, Acquisition Date and many other details are displayed.

**View History of Non-IT Assets**

Click the History tab to view the Non-IT Assets history. This gives the complete Non-IT Assets Resource Ownership History on date and State of the Non-IT Assets.

**Request Details**

On clicking the Request Details page you will be able to view all the requests raised for the Non-IT Asset.

On clicking the request title you can view the details of the request, requester details, Assets belonging to the user, Time elapsed to solve the request, resolution for the request and history of the request

Also you can send reply for the request or forward the request to the technician. You can Search associated problem and change or add new problem or change to the request.

**Contracts Details**

Click Contracts tab to view the contracts attached to the Non-IT Assets. This gives the complete details about the contract such as, vendor name, support details, contract rules, expiry date, cost and other rules.

**Costs Details**

1. Click the Costs tab to view the costs associated to the Non-IT Assets.
2. Click **Add Cost** button to add cost to the Non-IT Assets.
3. Select the **Cost Factor** from the combo box. For ex. Service Cost, Purchase Cost etc. This is a mandatory field.
4. Specify the description about the cost in the **Description** field. Say if the cost factor is service cost you can specify important information about the service cost.
5. Specify the **Amount** in $ in the Amount field. This is a mandatory field.
6. Select the **Date** from the calendar button. This is mandatory field.
7. Click **Add Cost** button to add the cost. You can see the cost added to the Non-IT Assets shown in the Other Costs list view page.
Assign Non-IT Assets to Users and/or Department

To assign assets to asset/users/departments,

1. **Click the Assets tab** - select the Non-IT Assets link on the left hand side of the page. This opens the list view page of the Non-IT assets.
2. **Click the title of the Non-IT asset** to be assigned to users or departments. This opens the Asset details page.
3. **Click Assign button**. This opens the Assign/Associate page.
4. Select the Assign the asset to User/Department radio button to associate it to the user/department.
   1. Select the User from the combo box.
   2. Select the Department to be associated from the combo box.
   3. If the Asset is Leased then select the corresponding check box.
   4. **Save** the changes.
5. Else select the Associate to Asset radio button to associate to the asset.
   1. **Choose Asset** to be associated from the combo box.
   2. **Save** the details.

Once you save the details the page is refreshed with a message saying 'Owner assigned successfully for this resource'.
Copy Resource

Using Copy Resource option you can make multiple copies of the resource and its details. On making multiple copies of the resource, it becomes easier for the technician to add bulk of similar assets. The technician need not manually enter all the resource details for each resource. The new copies of the resource will be assigned with new asset name and rest of the details is retailed as is.

To make multiple copies of a Resource,

1. Click the **Assets** tab in the header pane. This opens the assets home page.
2. Click **Non-IT Assets** under **assets** block on the left hand side of the page. Select the respective Non-IT assets link. E.g. Projectors, Scanners and so on. This opens the corresponding Non-IT asset page.
3. Click the **Title** of the assets to be duplicated. This opens the Asset details page.
4. Click the **Actions** menu on the right hand side of the page. Select **Copy Resource** option. The Copy Resource dialog pops up.
5. Specify the **Number of Copies** to be made for the resource in the given numeric field.
6. Click **Copy** to make the copies of the Non-IT asset. The new copies of the Non-IT asset will be assigned with new asset name that will uniquely identify them. The rest of the information is retained as is. If required, you can also edit the resource details.
Attach Assets

To attach assets to the IT Assets,

1. Click the **Assets** tab -> select the **Non-IT Assets link** on the left hand side of the page. This opens the list view page of the Non-IT assets.
2. Click the **title of the Non-IT asset** to be attached to other assets. This opens the **Asset details** page.
3. Click the **Actions** combo box on the top right hand side of the page -> select the **Attach Asset** option. This opens the **Attach Asset** page.
4. You have two columns, such as **Asset list** and **Attached assets list**. You have to select the assets to be attached from the assets list and move it to the attached list using the >> button. To remove the asset from the attached asset list use the << button.

   **Example:** If you would like to attach a scanner to a list of workstations then select the list of workstations from the asset list and move it to the attached asset list.

5. **Save** the changes. If you would like to detach all the attached assets then select the **Detach All** option.

   If you would like to display the list of all assets or a specific asset in the organization such as Linux workstations, Laptops D620 etc., then in this case select the assets to be displayed from the **List** combo box. Also select the **type of asset** such as assets in store, in use and so on from the **of type** combo box.
Attach Components

To attach component to an Non-IT asset,

1. Click the Assets tab in the header pane; this opens the assets home page -> select Non-IT Assets under assets block on the left hand side of the page. Click the specific Non-IT asset link. This opens the Non-IT assets list view page.
2. Click the title of the Non-IT asset to be attached with an component. This opens the Non-IT asset details page.
3. Click the Actions combo box and --> select the Attach Component option from the list. This opens the Attach Component pop up window.
4. If you would like to display the list of all components or filter specific components then select the components to be displayed from the List combo box. Ex: keyboard, mouse and so on. Also select the type of component such as component in store, in use and so on from the of type combo box.
5. You have two columns, such as Component list and Attached Components list. Select the components to be attached from the components list and move it to the attached components list using the >> button. To remove the component from the attached component list use the << button.

Example: If you would like to attach a keyboard and a mouse to a workstation then select the list of components to be attached from the component list and move it to the attached component list.

7. Save the changes. If you would like to detach all the attached components then select the Detach All option.
Attach Documents

To attach documents to an Non-IT Asset,

1. Click the Assets tab -> select the Non-IT Assets link under the assets block on the left hand side of the page. This opens the IT asset list view page.
2. Click the title of the Non-IT asset to be attached to other assets. This opens the Asset details page.
3. Click the Actions combo box on the top right hand side of the page -> select the Attach Documents option. This opens the Attach File pop up window.
4. Choose the file to be attached by clicking the Browse button. The maximum size of the attached file can be 10 MB.
5. Click Attach File. The attached document will be listed in Asset details page under Attached Documents. The attached file can be deleted by clicking the delete icon beside file name.
Software Asset Management

Software applications have become crucial assets that play a vital role in the performance of a business. But tracking, organizing and maintaining the software information becomes a tough challenge if your organization does not follow effective strategy to reduce security risk and ensure license compliant.

Software Asset Management (SAM) enables you to keep track of your software so that you know exactly what you have, where it is running and what you require. With SAM, you can reduce the cost and risk of software vendor audits, eliminate security threats caused by unauthorized software, minimize cost on unnecessary software and optimizes the use of existing software.

Software Asset Management in ServiceDesk Plus allows you to perform regular audits on workstations, track the usage frequency of the software, checks for software compliance through reports and audits, and eliminates the use of unauthorized software.
Scanned Software

While scanning workstations, the software installed in the workstations are also scanned and listed under Scanned Software in the Software tab. From the Scanned Software list view page, you can acquire details such as, Manufacturer, Software Type, number of Installations of the software and so on.

The page also includes various useful functionalities such as,

- Option to view the scanned software based on the Sites, Manufacturer and Software Type.
- Customize columns to be displayed in the List View
- Set the number of software to be displayed per page.
- Perform bulk operations such as delete, change category and software type of software.

Representation of icons in the List View:-

- Software which are Compliant.
- Software with Compliant Type as Under License. The Compliant Type is Under License when the number of license installation is more than the amount purchased.
- Software with Compliant Type as Over License. The Compliant Type is Over License when the number of license installation is less than the amount purchased.
- Software for which the Compliant is not applicable.
- Select the columns to be displayed in the list view.
- Search for software on entering the manufacturer, category, type and so on.
From the List View page you can,

- **View Software based on Filter**: You can filter software based on the Sites, the Software Manufacturer and the Software Type. Say, if you require to view all the managed software from Adobe Systems, select the Manufacturer as Adobe Systems and the Software Type as Managed.

- **Set the number of software per page and navigation buttons**: You can set the number of software to be displayed per page in the List View page.

- **Adding New Software**: Add New Software apart from the existing scanned software.

- **Bulk Operations**:
  - **Move**: Option to move the bulk software from one software type to another.
  - **Change Category**: Option to change the category of bulk software.
  - **Delete**: Option to bulk delete software.
Add New Software

To add new Software,

1. Click the **Assets** tab in the header pane. This opens the assets home page.
2. Click **Software** title under **Assets** block on the left hand side of the page. Click the **Scanned Software** link. This opens the software list view page. By default the list of **All Software** will be listed.
3. Click the **New** button on the right hand side of the page. This opens **Add Software** form.
4. Specify the **Software Name** in the given text field. E.g. Adobe Photoshop. This is a mandatory field.
5. Specify the **Version** of the software. Say 7.1, 7.2 etc.
6. Select the **Software Type** from the combo box. Say Managed.
7. Select the **Software Category** from the combo box. Say Graphics. This is a mandatory field.
8. Specify relevant information about software in the **Description** field.
9. Click **Add** button to add the software. You can see the newly added software getting listed in software list view page.
View Software Details

The details of the software added by you are displayed under the Software Details page. Apart from viewing the software details, you can also perform various actions on the software such as,

- changing the software type
- adding and associating a software license to the software
- adding a new license agreement, and
- associating minor versions to the software

To view the software details page,

1. Select **Software -> Scanned Software** under **Assets** block.
2. From the software view list page, select the Software Type as **Managed** from the **Filter** drop down. All the licensed software is listed.
3. Click on the software name to view the software details. The page opens to display **Software Details** tab and **License Agreements** along with the **Actions** drop down.

**Software Details**

The details added by you in Add New Software are displayed under this block. In addition, the software license associated to this product is also displayed as Purchased License. You can also change the software category and type by clicking **change** link beside the fields.

From the **Actions** drop down, you can perform various actions such as Changing the Software Type, Add Software License, adding a new license agreement and associating minor versions.

In addition, you can also view the list of workstations with the licensed installed, workstations with unlicensed installations and number of software licenses purchased.

**Licensed Installations**

Under Licensed Installations, all workstations with the licensed software installed is listed. You can view details like, the license version, the software usage, license key and the license allocated. You also have an option to De-allocate the license from the workstation.

**Un Licensed Installations**

Under Unlicensed installations, all workstations with unlicensed installation of the software are listed. You can allocate license to a single machine or to all the machines in the list.
Allocate Licenses to a single machine

1. Click the Attach License to Software icon.
2. From the available license listed in Select Software License pop up, enable the radio button beside the license name to allocate to the software installed in the workstation.
3. Save the changes. The software installed in the workstation is licensed and is listed under the Licensed Installations column.

Allocate Licenses to multiple machines

1. Select the workstations to allocate licenses by enabling the check box.
2. Click Allocate License button to allocate licenses to bulk of workstations. It takes all the unallocated licenses and assigns it to the workstations automatically.

Purchased Licenses

Under Purchased licenses, you can view the number of purchased licenses, license type, Installation details, license key details etc.

Deleting the Purchased License

1. Enable the check box beside the purchased licenses from the list you wish to delete.
2. Click Delete button. A confirmation window pops up.
3. Click OK to proceed. The software licenses are deleted from the list.

Move Licenses

You can move all the unallocated purchased license to sites.

1. Select the site from the Move Licenses To check box.
2. Enable the check box beside the licenses to be moved to the selected site.
3. Click Move button. You can change site by selecting the site from the site option at the top left of the page.

License Agreements

Software license agreement is a contract between the software vendor and the purchaser. It is often called as the end user license agreement. The license agreement consists of terms and conditions on how to use the software in the organization.

You can Filter to view the license agreement based on the active and expired agreements. In addition, you can also add a new license agreement and delete the existing license agreement for this software. [Refer Add License Agreement to know more.]
Change Software Type

Using this option, you can change the existing type of the software, say, from Shareware to Managed. You can change the software type either from the software list view page or from the software details page.

Change Software Type from Software List View

From the software list view page, you can change the software type for bulk software instantly and with ease.

1. Select **Software -> Scanned Software** link from the **Assets** block. All the scanned software is listed.
2. Enable the check box beside the software to change the software type.
3. Choose the **Software Type** from the drop down and click **Move** button. The software type for the selected software is changed.

![Software List View](image)

Change Software Type from the Software Details page

Change the software type for individual software using this option,

1. From the Software list view page, select the software name. The software details page opens.
2. Click the **Actions** tab -> **Change software type** option. The change software type window pops up.
3. Select any one of the listed software type. Say Managed.
4. Click **Change** button to change the software type. The software type changes to managed in the software details page.
Change Software Category

Using this option, you can change the existing category of the software. Say, from Graphics software to Multimedia software so on.

1. Click the **Software -> Scanned Software** under **Assets** block. All the scanned software is listed.
2. Enable the check box beside the software to change the software category.
3. Click **Actions drop-down menu** and select **Change Category** option. The Change Software Category to dialog box pops up.
4. Select the software category from the list, say Accounting, Development.
5. **Save** the changes. The category for the selected software is changed.
Delete Software

1. From the Software list view page, select the software to be deleted by enabling the check box. You can select multiple software to be deleted.
2. Click the **Delete** button. A pop up window pops up asking your confirmation on the delete process.
3. Click **OK** to proceed. You can see the software deleted from the list.
Associate Software Minor Versions

ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus allows you to group minor versions of the software under major version.

For e.g. a company buys AdobePhotoshop 7.0 with 4 licenses. The license is applicable for both 7.1 and 7.2 versions and vice versa. In this case 7.0 is the major version and 7.1 and 7.2 are the minor versions. The licenses purchased are the same for all the three versions.

If AdobePhotoshop 7.0 is installed in two different machines and 7.1 & 7.2 is installed in other two different machines. On scanning for Adobe Photoshop software before grouping, the ServiceDesk Plus shows the list as different single entries. The purchased licenses for the software would be as ' 4 ' for the version 7.0 and ' 0 ' purchases for other versions (7.1 & 7.2).

Using associate minor versions option you can group 7.1 & 7.2 minor versions under 7.0 major version. This shows the software list to be a single entry with the number of purchased licenses and installations. Thus helps you in avoiding individual entry for each version of the software. And also helps in easier management of the installed software for the asset manager.

1. Click the Assets tab in the header pane to open assets home page.
2. Click Software title under Assets block. Click Scanned Software link.
3. From the software list view page, click the software name to open the software details page.
4. Click the Actions tab -> select Associate Minor Versions option. The Associate minor versions page opens.
5. Select the managed software (licensed) to be grouped of minor versions from the list. Click >> button to move the selected managed software to the Version Group list. By moving the selected managed software under Version Group, all the minor versions will be associated with the major version.
6. Click Save button. You can see all the added minor versions getting displayed in the software details page under the title Software - All Versions.
E-mail Users

Technicians can communicate to the users who have installed the software instantly by send email from the software details page. With this option, technicians can communicate with the users for any event occurred or to get information from users.

1. Click **Software** -&gt; **Scanned Software** link under **Assets** block. All the scanned software is listed.
2. Click the software name to open the software details page.
3. Click the **Actions** tab -&gt; **Email users** option. The Email Users window pops up.
4. Specify the **To** email address in the given field.
5. By default you have subject and description provided for the email. If required, you can edit and specify the **Subject** and **Description** about the email in the fields.
6. Click **Send** button. The email is sent to the mail ID provided in the To field.
Software Summary

ServiceDesk Plus scans your network and automatically discovers all software available in the workstations. From the Software Dashboard, Asset Managers can

- Group the software according to the Manufacturers and the Site in which they are associated.
- Easily ensure compliance by keeping a check on the list of compliant, under licensed and over licensed software.
- Facilitate easy access to view the total number of software that are unused, rarely used, managed, prohibited and unidentified for the selected Manufacturer and Site.
- View the number of expired license agreement, agreement to be expired in the next 7 days and agreement to expire in the next 30 days.
- Software Metering - tracks the usage of software in each workstation.
License Agreement

Software License Agreement is a contract between the software vendor and the purchaser. Software companies often make special contracts, such as contract for support and warranty with large businesses. Also, the license agreement consists of the acquisition date, expiry date, terms and conditions on how to implement the software in the organization. These documents are called as the End User License Agreement (EULA).

ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus provides an option to maintain the license agreements in the database by adding the license agreement in the application. Also you can associate the license agreement with the software licenses.

Add New License Agreements

1. Click **Assets** -> **License Agreement** under **Assets** block. The available license agreement is listed.
2. Click **Add New** button.
3. Select the **Manufacturer** of the software for which the license agreement is created from the drop down.
   
   If the manufacturer is unavailable in the list, select the **add new** icon. Enter the **Manufacturer** and **Description** in the pop up.

4. Specify the **Agreement Number** and **Authorization Number**. The Agreement Number is a mandatory.
5. Select the **Acquisition Date** and **Expiry Date** of the software using the calendar icon.
6. Select the **Vendor** from whom the software was purchased from the drop down.
   
   If the vendor detail is unavailable in the list, select the Add New icon and enter the **Vendor Name**, **Description** and name of the **Contact Person**.

Zoho Corporation
7. Specify the **Description** and **Terms** for the license agreement.
8. If required, you can also attach relevant documents to the agreement. Click **Attach File** button. **Browse** through the file and click Attach file.
9. You can add additional license agreement fields directly from this form by clicking **Add More Fields**.

You can choose the type from Single-line, multi-line, pick list, numeric and date/time fields. Enter the Label and Default Value (for single-line and multi-line) to be displayed in the form.

10. Specify the Purchase and Invoice Details such as, **Purchase Order Number**, **Purchase Order Name**, the date of purchase of the software in the respective fields.
11. Also, enter the **Invoice Number**, **Invoice Date** from the calendar icon and the **Total Cost** of the software.
12. You can either **associate the license with an existing software license** (provided there are unassociated license available for the selected manufacturer) or **add a new software license and associate the agreement**.

### Associate existing license to agreement

1. Click **Associate to Existing License** button.
2. From the Associate Existing License pop up window, choose the **Site** and **Software** from the filter drop down.
3. Enable the check box beside the license to be associated with the license agreement.
4. Click **Associate to agreement** button. The selected licenses is associated and listed below the Purchase Software License block.

### Add New License and Associate

You can instantly add a software license and associate it to the license agreement.

1. Click **Add New License and associate** button.
2. From the pop up window, select the **Software**, **License Type**, **License Options**, **Installations Allowed**, **License Key** and the **Cost ($)** from the drop down. The License Type, License Options and Installations Allowed are mandatory fields.

3. You can add licenses for other software by clicking the **Add** icon and repeat the steps as above.

4. Click **Associate to agreement** button. The license is associated and listed below the Purchase Software License block.

13. You can notify users before the license agreement expires by selecting the users to be notified from the **Users List**. Click >> button to move the selected user to **Notified User List** block.

14. Select the **Days** before which the selected users should be notified of the license agreement expiry. If you have selected the users to be notified of the license expiry then this field is mandatory.

15. Click **Save**.
Edit and Delete License Agreement

You can modify and delete the existing license agreement from the application.

Edit License Agreement

1. Select Assets tab -> License Agreement under Assets block. The list of available license agreement is displayed.
2. Select the Agreement Number to be edited.
3. From the License Agreement details page, click Actions -> Edit Agreement option.

   The Edit License Agreement form appears with details populated while creating the license agreement. The Manufacturer field is non-editable.
4. Modify the details and Save the changes.

Delete License Agreement

1. Select Software -> License Agreement under Assets block. The list of available license agreement is displayed.
2. Enable the check box beside the Agreement Number to be deleted.
3. Click the Delete button. The agreement is deleted from the list.
Print the License Agreement

You can preview and print the entire license agreement details using Print Preview option.

To print the license agreement,

1. Click **Assets** tab -> **License Agreement** under **Assets** block. The list of available license agreement is displayed.
2. Select the **Agreement Number** link of the license agreement to print.
3. From the License Agreement details page, click **Actions** -> **Print Preview** option. The license agreement details appear in a printable form in a pop up window.
4. Click **CTRL + p** keys to print the contract details.
5. Set the required options and click **OK**.
Software License

ServiceDesk Plus helps you to manage software licenses installed across the enterprise. You can consolidate and manage all your software licenses from a single screen. ServiceDesk Plus will scan and automatically pickup license keys for Microsoft Windows and Microsoft Word. You can key-in all the licenses purchased earlier and track future purchase of software licenses through the Purchase module.
Add Software License

Using this option, you can create a software license for the existing software. The software license form can be accessed by two ways in ServiceDesk Plus application.

a. Quick Actions drop down
b. Assets Tabs

a. Quick Actions drop down
The Quick Actions drop down is a quick navigator to instantly access the Software License form from the home page. To add a new Software License, go to Step 2 in Software Tab.

b. Assets Tab

1. Click Assets tab in the header pane.
2. Select Software -> Software License under Assets block. The list of available software license is displayed.
3. Click Add New button.
4. Select the Manufacturer of the software.
5. The list of managed software available for the selected manufacture is listed in Managed Software drop down. Select the software for which the license is created.
6. Select the Vendor Name from the drop down.

If the vendor is not available in the list, you can add a new vendor on selecting the Add New link. In the pop up, specify the Vendor Name, Description and Contact Person, and save the changes.
7. Select the date of purchase of the software from the calendar button in Acquisition Date field.
8. Select the Expiry Date of the software from the calendar icon.
9. Specify the cost of the software per license in Purchase Cost field.
10. Select the department for which the software was purchased in Purchased for drop down list.
11. If you have configured Sites, select the site name where the licensed software is installed, from Allocated to Site drop down.
12. Select the License Type from the drop down. Each manufacturer has their unique license type apart from the several common license types. Some of which are,

1. Individual: License type for single installation
2. OEM (Original Equipment Manufacturers): License type for software that is already installed in the hardware.
3. Named User License: License Type for a specific user.
4. Volume: License Type supporting multiple users.
5. Client Access License (CAL): License type that gives a user the rights to access the services of the server.
6. Trial License: License Type for trial versions of software.
7. Enterprise (Perpetual): License Type that does not require renewal and is for life long.

Zoho Corporation
8. **Concurrent License**: License Type for software that can be accessed by a specific number of users at a time.
9. **Free License**: License Type for freeware software.
10. **Enterprise Subscription**: License Type that requires renewal for every specific period.
11. **Node Locked**: License Type for workstations with specific configurations.

**Individual License/OEM**

1. Select the **License Option** as either Full Package Product (FPP) or Others from the drop down.
2. Specify the **Number of licenses** required for the selected product.
3. Enter the **License Key(s)** for the software in the given text box. The license keys values should be in comma separated values format. Say XBVJD, YCCYR, 7DF28, JH2PX, MYT7M.
4. **Save** the details. The license is listed in the software license list view page.

**Volume License/Trial License**

1. Mention the **Number of licenses** required for the selected product.
2. Specify the number of **Installations allowed** per license.
3. Specify the **License Keys** in the given text field. Say XBVJD, YCCYR, 7DF28, JH2PX, MYT7M.
4. **Save** the details. The license is listed in the software license list view page.

**Client Access License (CAL)**

The Client Access License consists of the following License Options,

- **Per Seat-Device/ Per Seat-User**: License given to each unique user/device to avail the server software product. The number of CALs is equal to the number of devices/users accessing the server software.
- **Per Server**: License given to each server. The number of devices accessing the server simultaneously is limited and is primarily recommended for servers that require limited access.
- **Per Processor**: Connect unlimited users/workstations to the server product.
- **Per Mailbox**: License for each mailbox using Exchange Server.

Select the **License Option** from the combo box.

**Per Seat-Device**

1. Enter the required **Number of CALs**.
2. Specify the **License Keys** in the given text field. Say XBVJD, YCCYR, 7DF28, JH2PX, MYT7M.
3. If there is any additional information required, then the same can be specified under **Additional Information** block.
4. You can select the workstations that can access the software from **Choose CAL Installation** block.
Select the workstation by either choosing the client software from Filter by or from Departments drop down. You can also search for the workstation on entering the name in Search field and selecting Go button. The list of server/workstations is displayed. Select the workstations. Click >> button to move to CAL Installation box.

**Note:** The number of workstations selected should be lesser than or equal to the specified number of CALs.

5. Save the details. The license is listed in the software license list view page.

### Per Seat-User/ Per-Mailbox

1. Specify the details similar as above.
2. Instead of selecting the workstations from Choose CAL Installation block, choose the Users to access the software from the list displayed.
3. Save the details. The license gets listed in the software license list view page

### Per-Server

1. Specify the details similar as in Per-Device.
2. Associate the specified number of CALs to the server selected from Associate to Server drop down list.
3. Save the details. The license gets listed in the software license list view page

### Per-Processor

1. Specify the **Number of Processor(s)** that supports the ability to connect unlimited users/workstations in the given field. Since unlimited users/workstations can connect to the server software product the CAL Installation block is not available.
2. Specify the details as configured above.
3. Save the details. The license is listed in software license list view page.
View Software License

The details of the software license added by you are displayed under Software License details page. Apart from viewing the software details, you can also view the workstations allocated with the software license, any relevant document attached and the contracts associated to the software license.

To view the software license details,

1. Select Assets tab -> **Software License** under **Assets** block. The list of available software license is displayed.
2. Click the software license name to view the software details. The page opens to display **License Info** and the **Contracts** tab.

License Info

The details added in the New Software License form is displayed under this block. Apart from the details added, you can also view the license agreement number associated with the Software.

From this page, you can **Edit** and **Attach relevant documents** the software license using the options from the **Actions** drop down.

Contracts Tab

Contracts associated to software are listed under the Contracts tab. You can add a new contract under the Contracts tab.
Edit and Delete Software License

ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus provides you with the option to modify and delete the existing software license.

**Edit Software License**

1. Select **Assets** tab -> **Software** -> **Software License** under **Assets** block. The list of available software license is displayed.
2. Click the software license name to be edited.
3. From the software details page, click Edit tab. [OR]

   Click **Actions** tab -> **Edit** option. The **Edit Software License** page opens.
4. Modify the required fields and Save the changes.

**Delete Software License**

1. Select **Assets** tab -> **Software** -> **Software License** under **Assets** block. The list of available software license is displayed.
2. Enable the check box beside the software licenses to be deleted.
3. Click **Delete** button. A confirmation dialog box appears.
4. Click **Ok** to proceed. The software license deleted from the list.
Attach Documents

To attach document to Software Licenses,

1. Click the **Assets** tab in the header pane; this opens the assets home page.
2. Click **Software** title under the **Assets** block on the left hand side of the page.
3. Click **Software Licenses** link. The software licenses list view page opens.
4. Select the software license to attach the document.
5. From the details page of the selected software license, click **Actions** drop-down menu -> select **Attach Documents** option from the list. The **Attach File** dialog pops up.
6. Click **Choose File** button to select the file. The maximum size of the attached file can be 10 MB.
7. On selecting the file, click **Attach File** button to attach the document.
Service Packs

ServiceDesk Plus keeps track of all the service packs such as hotfix, security update, installer, on scanning the workstations.

To view the Service Packs details,

1. Click **Software** title -> **Service Packs** link under **Assets** block. The service pack list view page opens.
2. Click the service pack name to view the service pack details.

The details page displays the complete detail about the service pack with number of installations, and installation without service packs. It also provides information on the number of software the service pack applies to.

Say, if the service pack **Security Update for Windows XP** is applicable for **Microsoft Windows XP Professional** and **Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional** then this software list would be displayed before the service pack installations list.

![Service Pack KB896358](image)

**Service Pack Installations**

Under this block you get the list of all service pack installations with the Workstation name, User name, Installed On and Installed By details.

**Software Installations without Service Packs**

Under this block you get the list of all software installations without the service packs along with the Workstation name, User name, Software and Usage details.
Edit and Delete Service Packs

ServiceDesk Plus gives you an option to modify and delete the existing Service Packs.

Edit Service Packs

1. Click **Software** title -> **Service Packs** link under **Assets** block. The service pack list view page opens.
2. Select the Service Pack name to be edited from the list.
3. From the Service Pack details page, click the **Edit** button. This opens the Edit Service Pack page.

   Modify the **Service Pack Name**, **Type** and **Description** of the service pack. Also, you can add software or service packs to the existing service pack list. To add to the list, select from the available list of software and move to the selected software using **>>** buttons.

4. **Save** the changes.

Delete Service Packs

1. Click **Software** title -> **Service Packs** link under **Assets** block. The service pack list view page opens.
2. Enable the check box beside the Service Packs to be deleted from the list.
3. Click **Delete** button. A confirmation message appears.
4. Click **OK** to continue. The Service Pack is deleted from the list.
Groups

ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus helps you to organize assets by grouping them based on certain asset properties. Grouping assets gives a more fine-grained control over the assets, enabling you to manage them effectively. Say, for instance, when you are getting ready for migration, you will be able to pinpoint assets with 256MB RAM that need upgrade before rolling out Windows Vista.

There are two types of asset grouping in ServiceDesk Plus.

- **Static Group**: Lets you group assets as per your wish.
- **Dynamic Group**: Groups assets based on certain criteria like Product Type, Department, OS, Manufacturer and so on.

- Create New Group
- Remove Assets from a Group
- Edit and Delete Group
Create Asset - Groups

To access Groups in ServiceDesk Plus,

1. Click **Assets** tab in the header pane.
2. Click **Groups** in **Assets** block on the left hand side of the page.
3. Click **New Group** link. The **Create Group** form is displayed.

Alternatively, you can access the Create Group form from **Quick Actions** link on the top left side of the page. Select **New Group** under Assets-Groups.

Creating a Group

1. Specify a name for the group in **Group Name** text field. This is a mandatory field.
2. Specify relevant information about the group in the **Description** field.
3. Select the **Group Type** by enabling anyone of the radio button.
   - **Static Group**: Grouping assets as per your wish. By default, this option is enabled.
   - **Dynamic Group**: Grouping assets based on certain criteria.
4. Click **Save** button to save the group. The **Edit Group** page is displayed and based on the selected Group Type, you can either pick assets from the existing list or you can define criteria to group assets.

Adding Assets to Static Group

1. In **Pick resources to add** block, select the filter criteria from **Showing** drop-down list. For instance, the filtered criteria are **All Assets** in state **In Use**. This will list all assets with asset state as **In Use**.
2. If your asset list is lengthy, then you can conduct a search for assets by specify the **Search** criteria.
3. From the list of assets under Pick resources to add block, select the check box beside the asset to add to this group.
4. Click **Add** button. A message confirming the number of items added to the group is displayed along with a View button.
5. Click **View** button to view the assets in the group.

**NOTE:** To delete assets from a static group, refer Removing Assets from Static Group.

Adding Assets to Dynamic Group

1. In **Dynamic Group Criteria's** block, you can define the **criteria** and **condition** to filter assets according to specific asset properties. The **Criteria** drop-down lists criteria based on **Resources** like product type, vendor, department, etc. and **Workstation Criteria** such as model, OS, Processor Type, IP Address and so on.
2. Select the **Criteria** and the **Condition** from the drop-down list.
3. Click **Choose** button to select the resource or workstation based on the selected criteria. Click **OK**. The selected criteria and condition is displayed.
Say, for instance, you have selected the criteria as "Product Type" and conditions as "is". On clicking choose button you will get the list of all product types such as, access points, scanners, keyboard, printers and so on.

4. If you have defined more than one criteria, then select any one of the Match Criteria radio buttons i.e., Match ALL of the following (AND) or Match ANY of the following (OR).

5. Click Save & View Group button to save the defined criteria and view resources in the group.
Remove Assets from Static Group

You can remove assets from a static group but you cannot remove resources from a dynamic group. Removing assets from the static group can be performed in two ways,

1. From the list view page of the Static Group, or
2. While editing Static Group.

Remove Assets from the Static Group list view page

To remove assets from the list view page of the Static Group,

1. Click Assets tab in the header pane.
2. Click Groups in Assets block on the left hand side of the page.
3. Click Manage Group link.
4. From the Manage Group window, click the static group. The list of assets grouped to the selected static group is displayed.
5. Select the check box beside the asset name to remove from this static group.
6. Click Remove from Group button. The selected assets are removed from the list.

Remove assets while editing a static group

To remove assets from the static group while editing,

1. Click Assets tab in the header pane.
2. Click Groups in Assets block on the left hand side of the page.
3. Click Manage Group link.
4. From the Manage Group window, click edit link beside the static group.
5. In Resources in group block, select the check box beside the resource name to remove from the static group.
6. Click Remove button. The selected assets are removed from the list.
Editing and Deleting Groups

Editing Groups

1. Log in to ServiceDesk Plus application using your Username and Password.
2. Click the Assets tab in the header pane.
3. Click Groups in Resources block on the left hand side of the page.
4. Click Manage Groups link.
5. From Manage Group window, click Edit link beside the group to edit. The Edit Group page is displayed.
6. If you are editing Static Group, then you can either add assets to the group or you can remove existing assets from the group. For Dynamic Group, select the criteria and conditions from the drop-down list.
7. If you want to change the name of the group, then select Edit button beside Group block in Edit Group page.
8. Edit the Group Name and Description. The Group Type is in non-editable text.
9. Click Save button.

Deleting Groups

1. Log in to ServiceDesk Plus application using your Username and Password.
2. Click the Assets tab in the header pane.
3. Click Groups in Resources block on the left hand side of the page.
4. Click Manage Groups link.
5. From the Manage Group window, click the corresponding Delete link to be deleted on the right hand side of the page.
6. A pop up window pops up to get your confirmation on the delete operation. Click OK to proceed. You can see the group deleted from the list.
Purchase

The Purchase module streamlines the procurement of required components and allows you to add them as unassigned assets. The Purchase module is tightly integrated with the Inventory. You can configure the vendor-related information and the products supplied by those vendors and their price quotes in ServiceDesk Plus. This information helps in making the choice of vendors while generating the Purchase Order (PO) by comparing the pricing of each vendor. The purchase process starts with a purchase request and is completed when the requested component or item has been purchased and reaches the requester of the purchase request. Below is the workflow that details the various steps involved in a purchase process.

To reach the purchase module, log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password and click the Purchase tab in the header pane.
Create New Purchase Order

To create a new purchase order,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your **user name** and **password**.
2. Click the **Purchase** tab in the header pane. This opens the purchase order list view page.
3. Click the **New Purchase Order** button available in the Purchase Order block. (OR)

   Click **Quick Actions** drop-down menu --> click **Purchase Order** option under Create New option. This opens the Add Purchase Order form. By default, the status of the Purchase Order while adding will be **New PO**, after which the status changes to **Open**.

4. Specify the **Order No** in the given field. For ex: 140. This is mandatory field.
5. Enter the **PO Name** say, Purchase of monitors, and select the **Required By Date** from the calendar. The PO name in mandatory field.
6. Select the **Vendor Name** from the combo box. This is mandatory field. If the specified vendor name is not available in the list, click **Add New link** adjacent to the Vendor field and specify the vendor details like Name, Contact Information and Contact Person of the vendor. Click **Save** button to save the details.
7. Select the **Shipping and Billing Address** from the combo box. You can also add the shipping and billing address by clicking the Add New link. Enter relevant details in the pop up window.
8. On selecting the Vendor, the corresponding **Product Type** and **Products** gets populated in the combo box. Select the Product type and the Products, the items gets listed one below the other along with the price details.

   You can also add new product to the specified vendor by invoking the icon beside the product combo box. This opens the Products Details pop up window. Specify the **Product Name** and the **Product Type** of the item which are mandatory fields. Specify the **Part No** and the **Price** of the item in the given fields. Click **Save**, the item gets added to the list.
9. By default, the check box beside the item will be enabled. Specify the price of the item if it is not mentioned and the quantity of items to be ordered in the text box. The cost calculations of the item changes accordingly to the number of items purchased.
10. Under the general information block, select the **Cost Center** and the **GL Code** from the combo box. By default, the **Requested By** will be the name of the technician creating the PO. The **Created Date** and the **Owner** is in non-editable text.
11. Enter the description for the PO or any other information that you wish to add in the **Remarks** field.
12. If there are any specific terms associated with the PO, enter the same in the **Terms** field.
13. If you would like to attach a file then click **Attach file** button.
14. Select the Approvers of the purchase order from the **PO Approver(s) list** pop window by clicking the icon.
15. Specify the **Signing Authority** of the company in the respective field.
16. Click **Save the Purchase Order** button to save the details.
PO Approval Process

Once the Purchase Order is created, the PO should be submitted for Approval to the concern authority. The approval process is initiated by sending a request for approval to the concerned authority and depending on their decision the PO is approved or rejected.

- The technician/requester approving the purchase order should be assigned with the **Purchase Order Approver** role.
- While creating a purchase order the approver should be selected from the approver's list to send for approval.
- If the approver is not selected or if there are no approver in the list, a warning message appears while submitting the PO for approval.
- Once the request is submitted for approval the status of the PO changes to PO Pending Approval.

Submit PO for Approval

1. Click the **Purchase** tab in the header pane to open the PO List View page.
2. Select the Open POs to be submitted for approval using the **Filter** drop down. Click the **PO name** link.
3. From the PO details page, click **Actions** tab -> **Submit for Approval** option. The Submit for Approval dialog pops up.
4. Enable Send Mail Notification check box, if you wish to send a mail to the approver regarding the PO Approval.
5. The To field is pre populated with the email address of the approvers. If required, you can modify the subject content manually.
6. Type in the message text for mail notification in the **Description** field.
7. Click **Send**. The mail notification is sent to the user addressed in the **To** field of the notification.
Approve / Reject PO

Once the PO is submitted for approval, a mail is sent to the user addressed in the To field. The email contains the link to the PO requiring approval. Clicking the link displays the PO awaiting approval. The user can also approve/reject the PO directly from the application.

Approve/Reject PO from the application

If you have the permission to approve/reject a Purchase Order,

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application with your login credentials.
2. Click the Purchase tab in the header pane.
3. Select the POs Pending for Approval using the Filter drop down. Click the PO name link.
4. From the PO details page, click Actions tab -> Approve/Reject option. You can send an email notification to the PO owner regarding your decision.

The approved Purchase Order is grouped under the status Approved POs while all the rejected Purchase Orders is grouped under Rejected POs status. The Rejected POs can be deleted completely from the system or can be edited and sent for approval again.

Zoho Corporation
Order PO from Vendor

Once the Purchase Order is approved by the concern personnel, you need to order the items from the vendor.

1. Click the **Purchase** tab in the header pane to open the PO List View page.
2. Select Approved POs from the **Filter** drop down. Click the **PO name** link.
3. From the PO details page, click **Actions** tab -> **Order this PO** option. The Order this PO dialog pops up.

4. Enable **Send Mail Notification** check box, if you wish to send a mail to the vendor regarding ordering of items.
5. Enter the Email address of the Vendor in the To field. You also have an option to CC this mail.
6. If required, you can modify the **Subject** content manually and type in the message text for mail notification in the **Description** field.
7. Click **Attach file** button to attach relevant files to the Order.
8. Click **Send**. The status of the PO is changed to 'Ordered'.
Receive PO Items

The Approved PO is sent to the vendor to acquire the ordered items. The vendor can dispatch the items either completely or partially, providing a receipt in both cases.

ServiceDesk Plus has the ability to change the status of the PO accordingly, i.e., when the items are received partially, the PO Status is automatically changed to Partially Received and on receiving all the items, the PO Status changes to Items Received.

To mark partially or completely receive items,

1. Click the Purchase tab in the header pane to open the PO List View page.
2. Select Ordered POs from the Filter drop down. Click the PO name link.
3. Click Actions tab -> Receive Items option. The Receive Items dialog pops up.
4. Enable the check box beside each of the received items. If only a part of the ordered items are delivered, enter the Quantity that has been received.
5. Click Receive items button. The PO form is updated with the Received Quantity value and the status is moved to Partially Received POs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No.</th>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Part No.</th>
<th>Price ($)</th>
<th>Tax Rate (%)</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
<th>Amount ($)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Laptop D020</td>
<td></td>
<td>200.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1495.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Laptop D010</td>
<td></td>
<td>300.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>5000.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Zoho Corporation
All the received items are added as assets automatically, except for the items with Product Type as Consumable. [Refer Product Type]

**Associate Assets**

To associate assets,

1. From the Purchase Order details page, click on **Actions** tab -> **Associated Assets** option. All the received assets for the PO are displayed.
2. Enable the check box beside the asset to associate the asset to a group. Click **Actions** drop down -> **Add to Group**. The **Add Resource (s) to** dialog pops up.
3. Select the group from the existing list of groups or enable the radio button beside **New Group**, to add a new group. The asset gets associated to the corresponding group.
Reconcile PO Items

Once the resources are received from Purchase Order, the resources are associated to Department or Groups. But on performing domain scan or network scan, the associated IT assets get duplicated.

Say, "LD400 - PO # 2[10]" is the workstation purchased and has been renamed as "AE-dept". On performing a scan, both the workstations appear in the List View. To avoid this you can reconcile the assets from either the PO details page or from the asset list view page.

**Note**

1. Items with the Product Type as Consumables are not added to the assets and hence cannot be reconciled.
2. The scanned workstations can be reconciled only once.
3. You cannot reconcile workstations from the same purchase order.

To reconcile assets from the purchase order details page,

1. Click the Purchase tab in the header pane to open the Purchase Order list view page.
2. Click the PO# name link of the purchase order for which the items needs to be reconciled. You can also use the Filter drop down to sort and select the PO.
3. From the purchase order details page, click **Actions -> Reconcile** option. The Reconcile Workstation(s)/Server(s) pop up.

![Reconcile Workstation(s)/Server(s) Pop Up](image-url)
4. In case of workstations and servers, select the check box beside the resource name and enter the Service Tag of the scanned workstation/server.
5. Click **Reconcile** button. The data in the purchased workstation is copied to the scanned workstation copied. On reconciling, the purchased workstation is deleted.
Add Invoice details and Notification

Once the PO is approved by the concern personnel, the Invoice and Payment options get populated in the Actions tab. On receiving the Invoice from the Vendor, you can add the Invoice details and also sent a notification to the concern technicians.

Add Invoice

1. Click the Purchase tab in the header pane to open the purchase list view page.
2. Click the PO Name link of the Purchase Order to add an Invoice.
3. From the PO details page, click Actions drop-down menu -> Add Invoice option. The Add Invoice dialog pops up.

4. Enter the Invoice ID. This field is mandatory.
5. Select the Receive Date and the Payment Due Date from the calendar.
6. If required, enter the relevant comments from regarding the Invoice in the Comments field.
7. You can also enable payment notification to the technicians by enabling the check box.
8. Select the technicians from the list for payment notification. Click >> button.
9. Enter the Days before which the notification should be sent to the selected technicians.
10. Click Save.

Receive Invoice

Once the Invoice is received from the Vendor, you can notify the same to the PO approvers.

1. Click Actions drop down -> Receive Invoice option. The Receive Invoice dialog pops up.
2. Enable Send Mail Notification check box.
3. Enter the email address in the To field.
4. If required, you can modify the Subject content manually and type in the message text for mail notification in the Description field.
5. Click Send. The status of the PO changes to Invoice Received.

The Invoice details such as the Invoice ID, Received Date, Payment Due Date and Created by can be viewed in the PO details page under Invoice and Payment tab.
Add Payment details and Notification

Once you receive the Invoice from the Vendor, you can proceed with the payment process and notify the approvers done the payment is done.

Add Payment Details

1. Click the Purchase tab in the header pane to open the purchase list view page.
2. Click the PO Name link of the Purchase Order to add an Invoice.
3. From the PO details page, click Actions drop-down menu -> Add Payment option. The Add Payment details dialog pops up.

![Add Payment details](image)

4. Enter the Pay Amount ($). This field is mandatory.
5. Select the Date of Payment from the calendar.
6. If required, enter relevant comments in the Comments field.
7. You can also enable notification if there are any dues in the payment by enabling the check box.

Zoho Corporation
8. Select the **Payment Due Date** from the calendar icon.
9. Select the technicians from the list for payment notification. Click >> button.
10. Enter the **Days** before which the notification should be sent to the selected technicians.
11. Click **Save**.

### Payment Done

Once the payment is done, you can notify the same to the PO approvers.

1. Click **Actions** drop-down menu -> **Payment Done** option. The Payment Done dialog pops up.
2. Enable **Send Mail Notification** check box.
3. Enter the email address in the **To** field.
4. If required, you can modify the **Subject** content manually and type in the message text for mail notification in the **Description** field.
5. Click **Send**. The status of the PO changes to **Payment Done**.

The Payment details such as the Payment Date, Amount Paid, Payment Due Date (if any) and Created by can be viewed in the PO details page under **Invoice and Payment** tab.
E-mail PO Owner

By default, the logged in technician creating the Purchase Order is the PO owner. You can send email notifications to the owner regarding the progress of the Purchase Order using this option.

To send an Email to the owner,

1. Click on the Purchase tab in the header pane to open the Purchase Order List View page.
2. Click the PO # name link. You can use the Filter drop down to sort and select the Purchase orders.
3. From the Purchase Order details page, click Actions tab -> E-mail the Owner option. A Send E-mail notification window opens with the owner’s email ID in the To field. The subject reads as "Notification for Purchase Order" with the notification number. Say, Notification for Purchase Order # 1.
4. To notify the contents of the email to any other person other than the owner, specify the Email ID in the Cc field.
5. To attach any file to the mail, select Attach file link.
   1. Click Browse button to choose a file.
   2. Select the file and click Attach file button to attach the files. You can see the file attached with the file size.

   **Note:** Files up to the file size of 10 MB can be attached.
6. Enter the email content in the Description area.
7. Click Send button to send the mail. This displays a message showing that the Notification has been sent successfully.
8. Close the window.
E-mail the Vendor

Once the purchase items are ordered from the vendor, you can send e-mail notifications to the vendor regarding the progress of the items received i.e., if the organization has received the items partially or completely.

To e-mail the vendor,

1. Click the **Purchase** tab in the header pane to open the purchase order list view page.
2. Click the **PO # Name** link. You can use the **Filter** drop down to sort and select the PO.
3. From the purchase order details page, click the **Actions** tab -> select **E-mail the Vendor** option. The **Send E-mail** notification window opens.
4. Enter the vendor address in the **To** field. You can also notify the contents of the e-mail to more than one person by entering their email address in the **CC** field.
5. By default, the **Subject** reads as "Notification for Purchase Order" with the notification number. Say, Notification for Purchase Order # 1.
6. Enter the e-mail content in the **Description** area.
7. To attach any attachment to the mail select **Attach file** link.
   1. Click **Browse** button to choose a file.
   2. Select the file and click **Attach file** button. You can see the file attached with the file size.

   **Note:** Files up to the file size of 10 MB can be attached.

6. Click **Send** button to send the mail. This displays a message showing that the Notification has been sent successfully.
7. Close the window.
Edit Purchase Order

ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus provides an option to modify the created Purchase Order.

1. From the PO List View page, select the PO# Name link to view the PO details page.
2. Click Actions tab -> Edit Purchase Order option. The PO form opens in an editable form with the values populated while creating the Purchase Order.
3. Modify the details and Save the changes.

NOTE: While editing an approved PO the status on saving changes to Pending Approval.
Print the Purchase Order

You can preview and print the entire Purchase Order details using Print Preview option.

To print a Purchase Order,

1. Click the Purchases tab in the header pane to open the purchase list view page.
2. Click the PO # Name link of the purchase order you wish to print. You can use the Filter drop down to sort and select the PO.
3. From the Purchase Order details page, click Actions tab -> Print Preview option. The Purchase Order details are displayed in a printable format.
4. Click Print option or Ctrl +p to print the Purchase Order details.
5. Set the required options and click Ok.
Delete Purchase Order

You can delete a Purchase Order either from the List View or from the PO details page.

Delete PO from List View

Delete bulk Purchase Orders using this option.

1. Enable the check box beside the Purchase Order to delete. You may use the Filter drop down to sort and select the PO to delete.
2. Click Delete button. A confirmation message appears.
3. Click OK to proceed. The PO is deleted from the list.

Delete PO from details page

Individual Purchase Order can be deleted using this option,

1. Select the PO Name link of the Purchase Order to delete. You may also use the Filter drop down to sort and select the PO to delete.
2. From the PO details page, click Actions tab -> Delete Purchase Order option.
3. A confirmation message appears. Click OK to proceed. The PO is deleted from the list.
Close Purchase Order

ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus provides an option to Close PO manually on receiving all the items and the invoice, or after making the payment.

To close a Purchase Order,

1. Click the Purchase tab in the header pane to open the purchase list view page.
2. Click the PO Name link of the Purchase Order to close. You can use the Filter drop down to sort and select the PO.
3. From the PO details page, click Actions drop down -> Close PO option. The Close PO dialog pops up.
4. Enable Send Mail Notification check box.
5. By default, the email address of the technician is displayed in the To field.
6. If required, you can modify the Subject content manually and type in the message text for mail notification in the Description field.
7. Click Send button. The status of the purchase order is changed to Closed.
View Purchase Order based on Filters

1. Log in to ServiceDesk Plus application using your **user name** and **password**.
2. Click on **Purchase** tab in the header pane. This brings up the Purchase Orders list view page. By default the status of the Purchase Order will be 'All POs'.
3. Select the corresponding filter option from the **Filter Showing** combo box. You can view purchase orders with different status levels using filters. They are,

- **All POs**  
  All Purchase Orders irrespective of the status will be listed. This is the default status on opening the purchase order list view.

- **Open POs**  
  The newly added Purchase Order will fall under this category. These POs are not submitted for approval.

- **POs Pending Approval**  
  The Purchase Orders which are submitted and waiting for approval from the purchase order approvers will be listed under this category.

- **Approved POs**  
  All the Purchase Orders which are approved but the purchase items are not yet received will be listed under this category.

- **Rejected POs**  
  All the Purchase Orders rejected by the purchase order approver gets listed under this category.

- **Ordered POs**  
  Lists all the POs for which the items have been ordered by the vendor.

- **Partially Received POs**  
  Purchase Orders, which are partly received from the vendor, will be listed under this category.

- **Received POs**  
  Lists the POs for which the items have been completely received.

- **Invoice Received POs**  
  Lists all the POs for which the invoice is received from the vendor.

- **Payment Done POs**  
  Lists all the POs for which the payment is done.

- **Closed POs**  
  The Purchase Order gets listed under this category when the purchased items are fully received from the vendor.

- **Overdue POs**  
  Purchase orders not delivered and have exceeded the delivery date will be listed under this category.

- **POs due in next 7 days**  
  Outstanding Purchase Orders, expiring in next 7 days will be listed under this category.

- **POs due in next 30 days**  
  Outstanding Purchase Orders, expiring in next 30 days will be listed under this category.

- **Searched POs**  
  While searching for the Purchase Order under Search, the list of Searched POs will fall under this category.
Contracts

Every organization would maintain an annual maintenance contract with third-party vendors to maintain its infrastructure and function without any major downtime due to bad maintenance of the assets owned by it. ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus gives you a provision to track such contract details, its date of commencement, and date of expiry, alert you with a reminder in advance about the expiry of the contract, the cost incurred for the purchase and renewal of the contract, the kind of maintenance support provided by the third party vendor, and the third party vendor name with whom the contract has been signed. Any other related documents to the contract can also be maintained along with these details as attachments to the contract. To open the contracts module, log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password and click the Contracts tab in the header pane.

- About Contracts
- Creating a New Contract
- Viewing Contract
- Editing and Deleting Contract
- Viewing Contract Owner Details
- Renewing Contract
- Print Preview of Contract
- E-mailing the Contract Owner
- E-mailing the Vendor
- Search Contracts
Create New Contract

To create a new contract for asset,

1. Click the Contract tab in the header pane. This opens the contracts list view page.
2. Click the New Contract button in the contract index page. (OR)

   Click Quick Actions drop-down menu --> click Contracts option under Create New. This opens the Add Contract form. This form has three major sections: Contract Details, Contract Rules, and Notification Rules.
3. Specify a name for the contract in the Contract Name field. This is mandatory field.
4. Enter relevant Description for the contract in the respective text field.
5. Select the Maintenance Vendor from the combo box listing all the vendor names available. This is mandatory field. If the vendor is not listed, then click Add New Vendor button beside the combo box.

   1. Specify the name of the vendor in the given field. This is mandatory field.
   2. Enter a brief description about the vendor in the respective field.
   3. Specify the Contact Person in the given field.
   4. Click Save. The added vendor is selected and is displayed in the combo box. If you do not wish to add a new vendor, then click Close.

7. In the Support field below it, enter the details regarding the kind of support that will be provided by the vendor to you.
8. You can add files that are related to the contract and are necessary to be maintained and referred to along with the contract information. Click Attach File button. The Attach File window pops up as shown below,

   ![Attach File Window]

   1. Click the Browse button to open the file selector window.
   2. Select the file that you wish to add and click the Attach File button. The selected file is added and is displayed in the same window just below the file selection field. The total size of the attachments should not exceed 10 MB.
   3. The attached file gets listed along with the File name and the size. The file can be deleted on clicking the Delete icon beside the file name.

Zoho Corporation
9. In the **Contract Rules** section, you need to choose the assets that are to be maintained under this contract and mention the maintenance period and maintenance cost. Select the **Assets** that are covered under the contracts from the **Maintained Assets** list.

10. To add more resources to the list, click **Select Resources for this contract** link. This opens Select Resources page.

   1. Specify the **Resource Name** or **Product Type** or **Product** in the search field.
   2. Click **Search** button to get the result. Select the required resources by enabling the check box.
   3. Click **Add Items** button to add the selected items.
   4. Click **View Resources)>>** button to view the selected resources.
   5. Click **Add Resources to Contract** button to add resources to the Maintained Assets list.
   6. Click **Remove Selected Resources** icon to remove selected resources from the list.

11. The **Active period** of the contract is a mandatory field where you need to enter the **From** and **To** date of the contract period. Choose the dates from the calendar.

12. Enter the maintenance cost in terms of $ in the **Maintenance Cost** field.

13. Select the check box beside **Enable Notification**. This displays the notification rules information. Here you need to select the technician who needs to be notified about the expiry of the contract and how many days before the expiry, the notification needs to be sent.

14. Click **Save**.
View Contract Details

To view a contract and its details,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your **user name** and **password**.
2. Click the **Contracts** tab in the header pane. By default, the list of **Open Contracts** is displayed.
3. Select the status of the contract you wish to view using the Filter Showing combo box.
4. Click the **Contract Name** link that you wish to view. This opens the View contract page.

The **Contract ID** is a unique ID given to the contract during the time of its creation. This is system generated and is used to identify and track the contract uniquely. The contract details are grouped under three major heads: **Contract Details**, **Contract Rules**, and **Notification Rules**. Based on the entries made in the contract during the time of its creation, the details will be displayed in the respective section.

In the **Contract Rules** block, the assets that are maintained under the current contract are displayed. These assets are hyperlink to display their respective details. Click any of the asset names to open the **Edit Asset** form. Here you can edit the required information and update the same. To know more on editing assets, refer to the Editing Asset Details section.
Edit and Delete Contract

Edit Contract

To edit a contract,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password or using admin login.
2. Click the Contracts tab in the header pane. By default, the list of Open Contracts is displayed.
3. Select the status of the contract you wish to edit using the Filter Showing combo box.
4. Click the Contract Name link that you wish to edit. This opens the View Contract page.
5. Click the Edit button on the right hand side of the page. (OR)
   Click Actions combo box - > Edit Contract option. This opens the Edit Contract form.
6. The existing details of the contract are displayed. As the contract ID is a system generated ID, it is not available in the edit contract form. You can edit all the other details.
7. Once you are done with editing, click Save. If you entered wrong information and want to know what the initial values were, then instead of Save, click Reset.

Delete Contract

To delete contract,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password or using admin login.
2. Click the Contracts tab in the header pane. By default, the list of Open Contracts is displayed.
3. Select the status of the contract you wish to delete using the Filter Showing combo box.
4. Click Delete on enabling the check box beside the contract.
5. A pop up window confirming the delete operation appears. Click OK to proceed. The contract will be deleted from the list.
View Contract Owner Details

By default, the owner of a contract is the person who enters the contract details into the application.

To view the owner details,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password or using admin login.
2. Click the Contracts tab in the header pane. By default, the list of Open Contracts is displayed.
3. Click the Contract Name link to view the contract owner details. This opens the View Contract details page.
4. Click Actions combo box - > View Owner Details option. A pop up window containing the owner details such as, name, employee id, designation, contact information appears.
5. Click Close to close the pop-up.
Renew a Contract

To renew a contract,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password or using admin login.
2. Click the Contracts tab in the header pane. By default, the list of Open contracts is displayed. Select the status of the contract which you wish to renew using the Filter Showing combo box.
3. Click the Contract Name link that you wish to renew. This opens the View Contract page.
4. Click Actions combo box -> Renew Contract option. The Renew Contract form is displayed with the contract rules of the original contract. As the contract ID is a system generated ID, it is not available in the renew contract form. The contract name is appended with the word renewed. You can edit the name but ensure that the contract name is unique and does not have the old name.
5. Enter the Description for the contract.
6. Choose the maintenance vendor from the combo box. If the vendor is not listed, then click Add new link beside the combo box. The Vendor Details page pops up. Specify the name of the vendor, description, and the contact person name in the pop-up window. Save the changes.
7. If you have any information on the type of support, enter the same in the Support text area.
8. If there are any documents that you wish to attach to the contract, click the Attach File button. The Attach File window pops up.
   1. Click the Browse button to open the file selector window.
   2. Select the file that you wish to add and click the Attach File button. The selected file is added and gets listed along with the File Name and size. If you wish to delete any of the file then click the delete icon beside the file. The total size of the attachments should not exceed 10 MB.
9. Select the Assets that are covered under the contracts from the Maintained Assets list. To add more resources to the list,
   1. Click Select Resources link. This opens Select Resources page.
   2. Specify the Resource Name or Product Type or Product in the Search field.
   3. Click Search button to get the result.
   4. Select the required resources by enabling the check box.
   5. Click Add Items button to add the selected items.
   6. Click View Resources>> button to view the selected resources.
   7. Click Add Resources to Contract button to add resources to the Maintained Assets list.
10. The **Active period** of the contract is a mandatory field where you need to enter the **From** and **To** date of the contract period. Choose the dates from the calendar that can be invoked by clicking the icon.

11. Enter the maintenance cost in terms of $ in the **Maintenance Cost** field.

12. Select **Enable Notification** option by enabling the check box. On enabling you get the **User list & Notified User** list. To notify users regarding contract expiry select the user from the User list and click forward >> button to move the user to the Notified User List. Specify the days before which the information has to be notified in the Notify before field.

13. Select the check box **Disable all notifications for the old contract**, to disable notifications of the old contract.

14. Click **Save**.
Print the Contract

To print a contract,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password or using admin login.
2. Click the Contracts tab in the header pane. By default, the list of Open Contracts is displayed.
3. Select the corresponding filter option from the Filter Showing combo box.
4. Click the Contract Name that you wish to print. This opens the view contract page.
5. Click Actions combo box -> click Print Preview option. The contract details are displayed in a printable format in a pop-up window.
6. Click the Print option to print the contract details.
7. Set the required options and click OK.
E-mail the Contract Owner

By default, the owner of a contract is the person who enters the contract details into the application.

To send an e-mail to the owner,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your **user name** and **password** or using admin login.
2. Click the **Contracts** tab in the header pane. By default, the list of **Open Contracts** is displayed in the contract list view page.
3. Click the **Contract Name** link of the contract you wish to e-mail the owner. This opens the view contract page.
4. Click **Actions** combo box -> **E-mail the Owner** option. A **Send Notification** window opens with the owner's e-mail ID in the **To** field. The subject reads as **Notification for Contract ID <number>**.
5. If you wish to notify about the contents of the e-mail to anyone else also, then enter their e-mail ID in the **CC** field.
6. Enter the e-mail content in the **Description** area.
7. Click **Send**. A message is displayed saying that the e-mail has been sent successfully.
8. Click **Close**.
E-mail the Vendor

To notify the vendor,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password or using admin login.
2. Click the Contracts tab in the header pane. By default, the list of Open contracts is displayed in the contract list view page.
3. Click the Contract Name link of the contract you wish to notify the vendor. This opens the View Contract page.
4. Click Actions combo box - > click E-mail the Vendor option. A Send Notification window opens with the vendor’s e-mail ID in the To field. The subject reads as Notification for Contract ID <number>.
5. If you want to send the same notification to anyone else, then add their e-mail ID in the CC field.
6. Enter the e-mail content in the Description area.
7. Click Send. A message is displayed saying that the e-mail has been sent successfully.
8. Click Close.
Search for a Contract

You can search for contracts with the Search in contracts option of the ServiceDesk Plus application.

To search for a contract,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password or using admin login.
2. In the search block on the left hand side of the page, choose Contract from the Search in combo box. If you are in contracts section, then by default, contract is selected.
3. In the Enter Keyword field, type in your search string.
4. Click Go or press the Enter key in your keyboard. The search result displays all contracts that match the search string.

You can search for contracts based on the contract name, asset names added in the contract, and owner of the contract.
View Contracts based on Filters

1. Click **Contracts** Tab. This brings up the Contracts view list page. By default, the list of **Open Contracts** will be displayed.
2. Select the corresponding filter option from the Filter Showing combo box. You can view the contracts with different status levels using filters. They are,
   - **Open Contracts**
     Contracts which are active and yet to get expired comes under this category.
   - **All Expired Contracts**
     All the expired contracts will be listed under this category.
   - **Contracts expired in last 30 days**
     Contracts which expired in the last 30 days gets listed under this category.
   - **Contracts expiring in next 7 days**
     Contracts, which will be expiring in next 7 days, will be listed under this category.
   - **Contracts expiring in next 30 days**
     Contracts, which will be expiring in next 30 days, will be listed under this category.
Configuration Management Database (CMDB)

Configuration Management Database (CMDB) is a centralized repository that stores relevant information about all the significant entities in your IT environment. The entities, termed as Configuration Items (CIs) constitutes of Hardware, the installed Software Applications, Documents, Business Services and People that are part of your IT system. Unlike the asset database that comprises of a bunch of CIs, the CMDB is designed to support a vast IT structure where the interrelation between the CIs are maintained and supported successfully.

Each CI within the CMDB is grouped under specific CI Types, and is represented with Attributes and Relationships. Attributes are data elements which describe the characteristics of CIs under a CI Type. For instance, the attributes for CI Type Server would be Model, Service Tag, Processor Name and so on. Relationships denote the link between two CIs that identifies the dependency or connection between them.

The CMDB in ServiceDesk Plus, keeps a track of all the pending requests, problems and change raised for the CI Type - Assets, Business and IT Services. Any impact cause by the malfunctioning of these CIs on other CIs can be identified using the Relationship Map, and specific measures can be adapted to minimize the effect. The CMDB, thus, functions as an effective decision making tool by playing a critical role in Impact Analysis and Root Cause Determination.

Before you begin populating the CIs into the CMDB, you need to configure the CMDB configurations (Configuration Item Types and Relationship Types) in the Admin tab.
Populate CIs in CMDB

The CMDB, when catered to the IT environment, functions as a decision making tool, impact and root cause analyzer. But, by populating a large amount of data, your CMDB may turn complex, causing a loss in structure and information, thereby making its analysis less effective.

So how can you build an efficient CMDB without turning it complex? ServiceDesk Plus gives you a step-by-step process to identify the essential CIs and populate them in your CMDB.

Steps to populate CIs in CMDB

To set up a less complicated CMDB design, strategize on your CI List and their supported attributes and relationships. Given below are 3 easy steps through which you can effectively populate CIs in your CMDB.

Step #1: Narrow down the CI List

The first step is to identify the business critical CIs as per your organizations environment. Next, group them in appropriate CI Types. Each CI Type holds its own attributes and relationships that are defined with key stakeholders from the Service Catalog Management, Change Management and the likes.

Some of the entities that can contribute to your CI list are,

- Business Service
- Hardware (IT and Non IT assets, components)
- Software (which are installed in the server/workstation like applications, operating systems, database)
- Department
- Documents (license agreement, contract, lease agreement)
- Users and Support Groups

NOTE: Please note that not all software are considered as CIs. The software which are installed in the server/workstation, and group under a CI Type are alone considered as Configuration Items (CIs).

Step #2: Populate the Configuration Items

After the CI List is strategized and confirmed, you need to populate the Configuration Items (CIs). ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus gives you various ways through which you can effectively populate CIs into your CMDB.

Populate Workstation/Devices

- Windows Domain Scan
- Network Scan
Populate Users/Technicians

- Importing from Active Directory (for Windows machine)
- Importing from LDAP

Populate other CIs such as IT services, Business Services, Department

- Importing CIs from CSV file
- Manual Addition of CIs

NOTE: Make sure that the CI information in your CMDB is updated from time-to-time.

Step #3: Create the Information Model

The overall information model is complete only when the relationships between the CIs are defined. While populating Configuration Items using any of the methods in Step 2, the inter-dependencies between the CIs are identified and established. The relationships can be viewed from the Relationship Map which helps in impact and root cause analysis.
Import CIs from CSV file

If the CIs are recorded in a .csv file, then you can import the same using Import CIs from CSV file option. The easy-to-use CSV import option in ServiceDesk Plus allows you to import the CI information from the existing database as well as from other applications.

To import CIs from a CSV file,

1. Click **CMDB** tab in the header pane. By default, the CIs under Business Service are displayed.
2. Click **Import CIs from CSV file** link. The **CI Import Wizard** is displayed.

Steps to Import CIs from CSV file

**Step #1: Locate CSV file**

1. Select the CI Type for which the CIs should be imported.
2. Click **Browse** button to select the CSV file.
3. On locating the CSV file from the file chooser window, click **Open**. The path to the file appears automatically in Locate CSV file field.
4. Click **Submit** button.

![CI Import Wizard](image)

The above image shows CI Import Wizard page and the CIs to be imported is of the CI Type 'Workstation'.

**Step #2: Customize Mapping**

1. Select the date format to represent all the date fields.
2. Map the CI field with the field names from the CSV file. If there are any additional attributes configured, then the same appears in the customized mapping form.
3. Click **Import** button. The details of the CIs from CSV are imported.
4. On completion, the data on the total CIs, the number of CIs imported and the number of CIs failed to import are displayed.
Warning

If there are any failure records while importing the CIs, do not re-import the same .csv file. Instead, download the FailedCIsList.csv available in the Imported Result page, correct the errors and then import to avoid duplicate CIs.

Notes

1. If the CI Type chosen in Step #1 is a parent and if a CI row in the .csv file corresponds to sub CI Type, then the same can be mapped in the customize mapping form.
2. The Sub Type specified in .csv file should already be configured in the application.
3. If existing CIs are imported again under a different CI Type, then the CIs are grouped under the new CI Type.
CMDB List View

The Configuration Items (CIs) under each CI Type can be viewed in the CMDB List view. If you have not populated your CIs into the CMDB, then you can follow the steps given in the document Populating CIs in CMDB.

NOTE: If you are not the administrator, then you would require Enable CMDB role to access the CMDB module.

Click CMDB tab in the header pane. The page navigates to view the Configuration Items (CIs) under the CI Type - Business Services, by default. To view all the CIs in the CMDB irrespective of the CI Type, click All CIs link. The CIs are listed with the Name, the CI Type and the Site to which they belong.

From the CMDB List view, you can perform various actions such as,

- View CIs under each CI Type
- Add CIs under a CI Type
- Modify CI Type for the CIs
- View Relationship Map
- Bulk delete of CIs

View CIs under a CI Type

You can view CIs under a specific CI Type by selecting the CI Type from the Configuration Items block. Click ➤ icon to view Sub CI Type. To view the Sub CI Types of all the CI Types, click ➤ icon.

While viewing the CIs under a CI Type, the list view columns display the CI attributes that were configured while adding the CI Type. For instance, the CI Type - Workstation would have attributes like Model, Service Tag, Service Pack, IP Address and so on. While viewing the CIs under CI Type - Workstation, the configured attributes would be listed in the list view column.

If you are viewing the list view column of a child CI Type, say Windows Workstation or Unix Workstation, then the list view column would display the CI attributes configured for the parent CI Type as well as the attributes configured for the child CI Type.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
<th>1. While viewing CIs under a parent CI Type, the CIs under its Sub CI Type are also listed.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. The attributes in the column list view for Sub CI Type comprises of the parent CI Type attributes and the sub CI Type attribute.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Add a CI under a CI Type

To add a CI under a CI Type,

1. Select the CI Type from the Configuration Items block.
2. Click New button and enter the CI details in the Add New form.

The Add New form consists of the attributes configured while adding the CI Type. In case of Sub CI Types, the attributes configured while adding the Sub CI Type and the parent CI Type is displayed.

Edit the CI Type for a CI

You can modify the CI Type for a CI. An Actions drop-down button is available in the List view for CIs that are also tracked in the asset module, such as Keyboard, Access Points, Servers and so on. If you wish to track CIs under a specific CI Type in the asset module also, then enable Track as asset option while configuring the CI Type.

From the Actions drop-down, you can modify a CI Type for a CI. To do so,

1. Enable the check box beside the CI name.
2. Click Actions drop-down, select Modify CI Type option. The Modify CI Type dialog pops-up.
3. Select the CI Type from the drop-down.
4. Click Save.

View Relationship Map

Relationship Map gives a consolidated view of the relationship between the CIs. To view the relationship map of a CI, click View Relationship Map icon beside the CI. The Relationship Map opens in a new window.

Delete CIs

To delete CIs from the CMDB List View

1. Select the CI Type under which the CIs should be deleted (OR) Click View All CIs to view all the CIs irrespective of the CI Type.
2. Enable the check box beside the CI to delete.
3. Click Delete button. A confirmation dialog appears.
4. Click OK to proceed. The selected CIs are deleted from the list.

NOTE: In delete operation, the related financial and history details of the CI is deleted.
Defining CI Relationships

CI Relationships form a major part of your CMDB, as it is the relationships between the CIs that differentiate the CMDB from the Asset database. A CMDB without relationships constitutes a bunch of CIs in a single database; fetched through scan or import process, or by manual addition. But with relationships, the users accessing CMDB can understand the inter-dependencies between the CIs, and in the case of a failure, the impact caused on another CI can be identified.

**NOTE:** To make your CMDB structure less complex, consider the relationships you will require in your CMDB and ensure to use the right relationship type to define the nature of relationship.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topics discussed under this section:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Defining Relationships</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Access Relationships Tab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- View Relationships from the Relationship Tab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Add Relationship from the Relationship Tab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Delete Relationship</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Defining Relationships

In order to define the CI relationships in your CMDB, three piece of information is required.

1. **The CI for which the relationship is created**
2. **The Type of Relationship denoting the inter-dependencies between the CIs, and**
3. **The dependent CI.**

For example, consider a sentence like "ServiceDeskServer Depends on CentOS2Server". Here, **ServiceDeskServer** is the CI for which the relationship is created, **Depends on** denotes the nature of relationship, and **CentOS2Server** forms the dependent CI.

Access Relationships Tab

Each CI in ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus is represented with **Attributes** and **Relationships**. The Attributes are data elements that describe the characteristics of the CIs. The Relationships, on the other hand, help in understanding the inter-dependencies between the CIs. The relationships between the CIs can be defined from the relationships tab.

To access the **Relationships** tab of a CI,

1. Click **CMDB** tab in the header pane.
2. Select the CI Type from the **Configuration Items** block. Say, Workstation. Else, select **All CIs** link to view all the CIs irrespective of the CI Type.
3. Select the CI **Name** link to view the CI details.
4. From the CI details page, click **Relationships** sub-tab.

**View Relationships from the Relationships tab**

The relationship between the CIs is viewed in the Relationship tab. From the Relationship tab, you can

- View the Relationships in **Map View** and **List View**
- Access the full screen of the **Relationship Map**
- **Zoom in** and **Zoom out** the relationships linked in the map
- Add Relationships

By default, the relationship editor is shown in **Map View**. To access the full screen view of the relationships, click **view relationship map** icon. Use the **Zoom in** and **Zoom out** icon to view particular magnifying levels of the CI relationship. Click **Reset** icon to reset the relationship map to the default view instantly.

The **List View** groups the CIs according to the Relationship Type. You can delete relationships from the List View.

---

**Add Relationship from the Relationship tab**

To add relationships from the relationship tabs,

1. Click **Add relationship** button. The Add relationship window pops up.
2. The default relationships configured for the CI Type "Server" is listed in the Choose Relationship drop-down. Select the relationship from the drop-down, say, "Runs - Software". The CIs under the CI Type "Software" are listed along with the configured relationship attributes.

3. If you would like to create relationships with other CIs, enable Search other CIs to Create Relationships radio button.

4. By default, the CIs available in the CMDB are listed in the Available CI(s) column. If the CI list is excessive in length, then you can conduct a search for the CI by entering the search string. Click Search button. The search result is displayed in the Available CI(s) column.

5. You can also view CIs under a specific CI Type. Select the CI Type from the drop-down, say, Department. The CIs available for the CI Type Department are listed under Available CI(s) column. You can also conduct a search operation if the CI list under a CI Type is excessive in length. Say, for the CI Type Department, the entered search string is "Finance". On clicking Search button, "Finance" appears in the Available CI(s) column.
6. Select the CI(s) from the Available CI(s) column. Click **Move Right >>** button to move the selected CI(s) to the Selected CI(s) column.
7. Select the nature of relationship between the CIs from **Choose Relationship Type** drop down.
8. Click **Add**. The relationship is added in the relationship map.

**Delete Relationship**

To delete a relationship from the relationship map,

1. Click **List View** link. The relationships between the CIs are listed according to the relationship type.
2. Enable the check box beside the CI to delete. If you wish to delete all the CIs under a specific relationship type, click **Select All** button.
3. Click **Delete** button. The selected CIs are deleted from the relationship map.

**NOTE:** Please note that you cannot delete a relationship from the Relationship Map.
Relationship Map

The Relationship Map is uniquely designed to provide the ability to understand the dependencies between the CIs. The relationships between the CIs are discovered automatically while populating the CIs into the CMDB. You can also manually add the relationship between the CIs from the Relationship Map.

The Relationship Map shows the number of pending requests, problems and changes raised for the Assets, Business and IT Services. You can view the pending requests, problems and changes directly from the relationship map.

Using the Relationship Map, you can analyze the impact caused by the CI on a business service and identify the root cause of the impact, thus establishing appropriate measures to gradually eliminate the perpetual issues faced by your organization.

This section has the following contents,

- Access the Relationship Map
  - From CI List View
  - From CI Details Page
- Using the Relationship Map
  - Quick Create - Relationship
  - View CI Details
  - View Pending Requests, Problems and Changes
  - View Relationship Attributes
  - Add Relationships

Access the Relationship Map

In ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus, all the CIs are represented with a Relationship Map icon to have a quick view of the relationships between the CIs. You can find this relationship map icon in the CI List View and in the CI details page.

From CI List View

1. Click CMDB tab in the header pane.
2. Select the CI Type from the Configuration Items block to view the list of CIs. Else, select All CIs link to view all the CIs irrespective of the CI Type.
3. To launch the relationship map in a new window, click the Relationship Map icon beside the CI in the CI List View.
From CI Details page

1. Click **CMDB** tab in the header pane.
2. Select the CI Type from the Configuration Items block. Else, select **All CIs** link to view all the CIs irrespective of the CI Type.
3. Click the CI **Name** link to view the CI details.
4. In the CI details page, click the **Relationship Map** icon to launch the Relationship Map in a new window.

Using the Relationship Map

From the Relationship Map, you can perform the following operations;

- Create relationships instantly using the **Quick Create-Relationship** option
- **View CI details** of the CIs
- View the **pending requests, problems and changes** raised for Assets, Business and IT Services
- **Add Relationships** between the CIs
- **View Relationship Attributes** configured for the CIs.

Quick Create - Relationship

The Quick Create - Relationship is an instant means to create relationships between the CIs. You can create relationships for the existing CIs in the relationship map or create dependencies between other CIs using this option.

*Zoho Corporation*
In order to create a relationship using the Quick Create - Relationship option, three piece of information is required.

1. The CI for which the relationship is created.
2. The Relationship Type, denoting the inter-dependencies between the CIs.
3. The dependent CI.

For example, enter a sentence like “ServiceDeskServer Depends on CentOS2Server”. Here, ServiceDeskServer forms the first piece of information, Depends on is the relationship type and CentOS2Server forms the dependent CI.

If the CI name has a space in between, specify the name in double quotes like, "ManageEngine ServiceDeskServer" Depends on CentOS2Server.

**NOTE:** To denote installed software, use the relationship "Runs::Runs on".

To create relationships using the Quick Create - Relationship option,

1. Select the **Quick Create - Relationship** button in the Relationship Map. The Quick Create - Relationship dialog pops-up.
2. Enter a sentence with the CIs and the relationship type. Example, ServiceDeskServer Depends on CentOS2Server.
3. Click **Add**. The CI dependencies are added in the Relationship Map.

For dependencies added between two CIs that are not present in the Relationship Map, select **Click here to view map** link to view the relationship map between those CIs.
In case of conflict between CIs with similar CI names, such as "Administration" and "Administrator", the Quick Create - Relationship option provides the list of CIs, from where, you can choose the appropriate CI. To ease your selection process, choose the CI Type from the drop-down.

You can also create relationships between CIs that are not available in your CMDB. Say, for instance, if Admin is unavailable in your CMDB, then you can add Admin as a new CI by selecting the CI Type from the drop-down. Click OK to view the CI in the relationship map.
View CI Details

While viewing the Relationship Map, you can also view the details of a CI. To view the CI details,

1. Move the mouse pointer over the CI.
2. Click **View CI details** button. The CI details pops-up.

View Pending Requests, Problems and Changes

The CMDB in ServiceDesk Plus keeps a track of all the pending requests, problems and change raised for the CI Type - Assets, Business and IT Services. To identify if a request, problem or change is raised for the CI, the CI is denoted with a warning icon 😎. Move your mouse pointer over the CI to view the number of pending requests, problem and changes raised for the CI. You can also view the details of the request, problem and change from the Relationship Map.

View Relationship Attributes

Relationship Attributes provide additional information on the relationship between the CIs. Say, for instance, if a server runs a software application, then details such as the Installation Path, Version, Installed On and so on can be configured as relationship attributes.

The Relationship Attributes are configured while setting the default Relationships for a CI Type. To view these relationship attributes on the relationship map, move the mouse pointer over the CI.

**NOTE:** The Relationship Attributes can be viewed only if the attributes are configured for the relationship.

Add Relationship

To add relationships from the relationship map, click **Add Relationship** button. The Add relationship window pops up. Adding relationships from the relationship map is similar to the method discussed in Adding Relationships from the Relationship tab.
Admin Configurations

When you login to the application, for the first time, with the login credentials of an administrator, the **Configuration Wizard** page is displayed. The Configuration Wizard page in the **Admin** tab lists the settings of all the modules. You need to configure the setting for each module to make ServiceDesk Plus available for real time functioning.

To access the Admin Configurations,

1. Login to ServiceDesk Plus using the **Username** and **Password** of an admin user.
2. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.

The various configurations are grouped under the following major heads:

- Helpdesk Configuration
- Organization Details
- User Management
- Problem/Change Management
- Discovery
- Asset Management
- Software Management
- Purchase/Contract Management
- User Survey
- General Settings

Each of these configurations is explained in detail in the following sections.
Helpdesk Configurations

The Helpdesk Configurations lets you configure the helpdesk settings before the request module is opened for real-time functioning of fetching the customer support mails and tracking the same.

Customizing the Request Form

The new request form is highly customizable and can be configured to suit the needs of your organization. You can add your own values to be set for the Category, Priority, Level, and Mode of the request. By default, these configurations will have some values. You can delete them and add new values, or you can edit them to suit your needs. If you want to set the priority of a request automatically, you can do so using the Priority Matrix. The Priority Matrix enables to determine the priority of a request based on the Impact and Urgency.

Apart from this, you can also add your own custom fields for the new request form. Using the custom fields, you can collect organization-specific information for getting a better and clearer idea about the reported issue. The custom fields are of three types: Text field, Numeric field and Date/Time field.

A variety of templates can be configured and stored in ServiceDesk Plus. You can customize templates for frequently raised Incidents, common Resolutions, repeated Tasks and repetitive response to requests. Incident Templates enables you to customize individual forms for the most frequently raised request like, printer problem or mail fetching problem. The fields can be pre-filled with values so that an incident request can be raised instantly.

Finally, through Service Catalog, you can portrait the wide range of services offered by your IT department to the end-users. Users can easily browse through the services, raise requests instantly and monitor their status thereon.
Status

Requests fetched in ServiceDesk Plus application will be in various stages of completion by the technician. To determine the status of a request and for easy management, you can create various request status under which the requests can be grouped. These status can either be In Progress or Closed.

While creating a status, you can also choose to stop the request timer for the status that is being created. Depending on the need of your organization, you can create various such status, which will be listed in the status drop-down menu in the New Request form.

To open the status configuration page,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Helpdesk block, click the Helpdesk Customizer icon. The next page displays the list of request form attributes that can be customized on the left menu and the category list page.
4. Click Status from the left menu, or click the Next button on the top of the category list page. The Status List page is displayed. You can add, edit, or delete the request status.

Add a Status

To add a request status,

1. Click the Add New Status link.
2. Enter a unique status name to identify the status in the Name field.
3. Select the Type to which the status belongs. The status type allows you to identify whether the status that you are adding is still in progress and hence should be a part of the open requests or should be moved to the closed requests.
4. If the added status requires the timer of the request to be stopped, then you need to set the check box Stop timer.
5. If you wish, you can enter the status Description.
6. Click Save.

If you want to add more than one status, click Save and add new button. This adds the new status and reopens the add status form.

At any point, if you decide not to add the new status, then click Cancel to get back to the status list. Clicking the View List link on the top right corner of the add status form will also take you to the status list view.
**Edit a Status**

To edit an existing status,

1. Click the **edit** icon beside the status name that you wish to edit.
2. In the **Edit Status** form, you can modify the name of the status.
3. If the status belongs to the In Progress type, then you can choose to stop or start timer. If the request status belongs to the completed type then you cannot edit the type of the request status.
4. If you wish you can edit the **Description** of the status.
5. Click **Save** to save the changes. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click **Cancel**.

Even while editing a status, you can add a status by clicking **Save and add new** button.

| Note: | Option to edit the default status (Name and Description) from the list view. So, while adding a new status, the default status name (**Open / Closed / Resolved / Onhold**) should not be specified as the new status name. |

**Delete Status**

1. Click the **delete** icon beside the status name you wish to delete. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
2. Click **OK** to proceed with the deletion. If you do not want to delete the status, then click **Cancel**.

**NOTE:** If the status is greyed instead of getting deleted, then the status is being used by a module. Greying indicates that the status value will not be available for further usage. To bring the status value back to usage, click the edit icon beside the greyed out status and deselect **Status not for further usage** check box.
Level

Request level is a measure to indicate the complexity of a request. For example, if the received request just has some information and does not require any action to be taken, then it can be classified as Level 1. If there is a minor level action, such as providing the requester some tips to resolve the issue, then it can be classified as Level 2, and so on.

To open the request level configuration page

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Helpdesk block, click Helpdesk Customizer icon. The next page displays the list of request form attributes that can be customized on the left menu and the category list page.
4. Click Level from the left menu. The Level List page is displayed. You can add, edit, or delete the request levels.

Adding Level

To add a request level, 

1. In the Level List page, click Add New Level link at the top right corner.
2. In the Add - Level form, enter the level Name. If you want, you can enter the level Description also. Please note that you cannot add two levels with the same name. Each level name should be unique.
3. Click Save. The new level gets added to the already existing list.

If you want to add more than one level, then instead of clicking Save, click Save and add new button. This adds the new level and reopens the Add Level form.

At any point, if you decide not to add the new level, then click Cancel to get back to the level list. Clicking the View List link on the top right corner of the Add Level form will also take you to the level list view.

Editing Level

To edit an existing level

1. In the Level List page, click the edit icon beside the level name that you want to edit.
2. In the Update - Level form, you can edit the name and description of the level.
3. Click Save to save the changes. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click Cancel.
Even while editing a level, if you wish to add new level, then click **Save and add new** button instead of clicking Save button after making the changes.

### Deleting Level

1. In the **Level List** page, select the check box beside the level name to delete.
2. Click **Delete** button. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **OK** to proceed with the deletion. If you do not want to delete the level, then click **Cancel**.

**NOTE:** If the level is greyed instead of getting deleted, then the level is being used by a module. Greying of level indicates that the level value will not be available for further usage. To bring the level value back to usage, click the edit icon beside the greyed out level and deselect **Level not for further usage** check box.
Mode

There are different modes of submitting a request to the IT help desk team. ServiceDesk Plus provides you the option of submitting the request through an online form. Instead, a requester can call up the IT help desk agent and inform him/her regarding an issue faced, where the help desk agent will ensure to log the details discussed over the phone call through the web-based form. The other mode by which you can submit a request is by sending a mail to the IT help desk team. The IT help desk will then log the details of the mail through the web-based form in the ServiceDesk Plus application. If there are other methods of reporting a request to the IT help desk team in your organization, you can add the corresponding mode. To open the mode configuration page

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Helpdesk block, click the Helpdesk Customizer icon. The next page displays the list of request form attributes that can be customized on the left menu and the category list page.
4. Click Mode from the left menu. The Mode List page is displayed. You can add, edit, or delete the request mode.

Add a Mode

To add a request mode

1. In the Mode List page, click Add New Mode link at the top right corner.
2. In the Add Mode form, enter the Mode Name. If you want, you can enter the mode Description also. Please note that each Mode Name needs to be unique.
3. Click Save. The new mode gets added to the already existing list.

If you want to add more than one mode, then instead of clicking Save, click Save and add new button. This adds the new mode and reopens the add mode form.

At any point, if you decide not to add the new mode, then click Cancel to get back to the mode list. Clicking the View List link on the top right corner of the add mode form will also take you to the mode list view.

Edit a Mode

To edit an existing mode

1. In the Mode List page, click the edit icon beside the mode name that you wish to edit.
2. In the Edit Mode form, you can modify the name and description of the mode.
3. Click Save to save the changes. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click Cancel.
Even while editing a mode, if you wish to add new mode, then click **Save and add new** button instead of clicking Save button after making the changes.

**Delete Mode**

1. In the **Mode List** page, select the check box beside the mode name to delete.
2. Click **Delete** button. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **OK** to proceed with the deletion. If you do not want to delete the mode, then click **Cancel**.

**NOTE:** If the mode is greyed instead of getting deleted, then the mode is being used by a module. Greying indicates that the mode value will not be available for further usage. To bring the mode value back to usage, click the edit icon beside the greyed out mode and deselect **Mode not for further usage** check box.
Impact

Impact is a measure of the business criticality of an Incident or a Problem. Impact is often measured by the number of people or systems affected. By default you have four Impact details listed in the list view.

To open the impact configuration page,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Helpdesk block, click the Helpdesk Customizer icon. This opens the Configuration Wizard page.
4. Click the Impact link at the left side of the page under the Helpdesk block. This opens the Impact page from where you can add, edit and delete the impact.

Add an Impact

1. Click New Impact link on the top right hand side of the page. This opens the Add impact details page.
2. Specify the Name of the impact in the given text field.
3. Specify the details about the impact in the given Description field.
4. Save the changes.
5. Click the Save and add new button to save the Impact and add another Impact.

Edit an Impact

To edit an existing impact,

1. In the Impact List page, click the edit icon beside the impact name that you wish to edit.
2. In the Edit Impact form, edit the fields you want to change.
3. Click Save to save the changes. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click Cancel.

Even while editing an impact, if you wish to add a new impact, then click Save and add new button instead of clicking Save button after making the changes.

Delete Impact

1. From the Impact List page, select the check box beside the impact name that you want to delete.
2. Click Delete button. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click OK to proceed with the deletion. The impact gets deleted from the available list. If you do not wish to delete the impact, then click Cancel.

NOTE: If the impact is greyed instead of getting deleted, then the impact is being used by a module. Greying indicates that the impact value will not be available for further usage. To bring the impact value back to usage, click the edit icon beside the greyed out impact and deselect Impact Details not for further usage check box.
Urgency

Urgency is about the necessary speed of solving an incident of a certain impact. To open the urgency configuration page,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Helpdesk block, click the Helpdesk Customizer icon. This opens the Configuration Wizard page.
4. Click the Urgency link at the left side of the page under the Helpdesk block. This opens the Urgency page. By default you have four Urgency details listed in this page.

Add New Urgency

1. Click New Urgency link on the right hand side of the page. This opens the Add urgency details page.
2. Specify the Name of the Urgency in the given text field. This is a mandatory field.
3. Specify the urgency details in the Description field.
4. Save the changes.
5. Click the Save and add new button to save the urgency and add another urgency.

Edit Urgency

To edit an existing urgency,

1. In the Urgency List page, click the edit icon beside the urgency name that you wish to edit.
2. In the Edit Urgency form, edit the fields you want to change.
3. Click Save to save the changes. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click Cancel.

Even while editing a urgency, if you wish to add a new urgency, then click Save and add new button instead of clicking Save button after making the changes.

Delete Urgency

1. From the Urgency List page, select the check box beside the urgency name that you want to delete.
2. Click Delete button. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click OK to proceed with the deletion. The urgency gets deleted from the available list. If you do not wish to delete the urgency, then click Cancel.

NOTE: If the urgency is greyed instead of getting deleted, then the urgency is being used by a module. Greying indicates that the urgency value will not be available for further usage. To bring the urgency value back to usage, click the edit icon beside the greyed out urgency and deselect Urgency not for further usage check box.
Priority

Priority of a request defines the intensity or importance of the request received by the IT help desk team. To open the request priority configuration page

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Helpdesk block, click the Helpdesk Customizer icon . The next page displays the list of request form attributes that can be customized on the left menu and the category list page.
4. Click Priority from the left menu. The next page displays the available list of priorities. You can add, edit, or delete the request priorities.

Add a Priority

To add a request priority,

1. In the Priority List page, click the Add New Priority link at the top right corner. This opens the Add Priority form.
2. Enter the priority name in the Name text field. The provided name has to be unique and cannot be duplicated. This is a mandatory field.
3. If required, select the Color code to identify the priority by invoking the icon . The selected color has to be unique for every priority specified.
4. You can enter a short description about the priority in the Description field. This can help in understanding the kind of priority associated with the name mentioned in the Name field.
5. Click Save. The new priority is added to the already existing list. At any point you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click Cancel. If you want to add more than one priority then, click Save and add new button. This adds the new priority and reopens the add priority form.

Note: The priority name along with its color code can be view in the request list view page provided the priority check box is enabled in the column chooser.

Edit a Priority

To edit an existing priority

1. In the Priority List page, click the edit icon beside the priority name that you wish to edit.
2. In the Edit Priority form, edit the fields you want to change.
3. Click Save to save the changes. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click Cancel.

Even while editing a priority, if you wish to add a new priority, then click Save and add new button instead of clicking Save button after making the changes.
Delete Priority

1. From the Priority List page, enable the check box beside the priority name that you wish to delete.
2. Click Delete button. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click OK to proceed with the deletion. The priority gets deleted from the available list. If you do not wish to delete the priority, then click Cancel.

NOTE: If the priority is greyed instead of getting deleted, then the priority is being used by a module. Greying indicates that the priority value will not be available for further usage. To bring the priority value back to usage, click the edit icon besides the greyed out priority and deselect Priority not for further usage check box.
Priority Matrix

The priority matrix helps you determine the Priority automatically based on Impact and Urgency of a request. Impact is listed in the y-axis, and Urgency list in the x-axis of the matrix. Priority Matrix requires a one-time configuration by the Administrator.

Once you set the Priority for specific Impact and Urgency in the priority matrix, when a requester selects a similar impact and urgency combination in the new request form, then the priority of the request will be determined based on the matrix.

To set up Priority Matrix,

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Helpdesk block, click the Helpdesk Customizer icon. The next page displays the list of request form attributes that can be customized on the left menu and the category list page.
4. Click Priority Matrix from the left menu. The next page displays priority matrix with impact list in the y-axis and the urgency list in the x-axis.
5. From the Priority Matrix page, click the priority link against specific urgency and impact, this opens the drop down box.
6. Select the corresponding priority from the list. The priority will be set for the particular Impact and Urgency combination.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>In priority matrix: If Impact is Affects Business and Urgency is High then Priority should be High.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Result in request form: If requester/technician selects Affects Business for impact and high for urgency in the request then, the priority field gets filled automatically and displays as high.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Zoho Corporation
Request Type

Request Type is the type of request sent by the requester such as an incident or request for any information. ServiceDesk Plus gives you the provision of configuring your request type other than the default options. This is essential while creating a new request under the request module.

1. Login to ServiceDesk Plus application using the username and password of the admin user.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Helpdesk block, click the Helpdesk Customizer icon. This displays the list of request form attributes that can be customized on the left menu.

Add a Request Type

To add a new request type,

1. Click the Add Request Type link on the right hand side corner of the Request Type list page. This opens the Add Request Type form.
2. Specify the name of the request type such as, Incident, Request for Information in the Name text field. This is mandatory field.
3. Enter a brief description about the type of requests which fall under the category in the Description text field.
4. Click Save, to save and return to the list view page. Click Save and Add New to save and create another request type.

Edit a Request Type

1. From the Request Type list page, click the edit icon beside the request type which you want to edit. This opens the Update- Incident page.
2. Modify the changes in Name and Description text field.
3. Click Save to save the changes. You can also Save and add a new request type by clicking Save and Add New.

Delete Request Type

1. From the Request Type list page, select the check box beside the request type to delete.
2. Click Delete button. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click OK to proceed. The request type gets deleted from the list.

NOTE: If the request type is greyed instead of getting deleted, then the request type is being used by a module. Greying indicates that the request type will not be available for further usage. To bring the request type back to usage, click the edit icon beside the greyed out priority and deselect Request Type not for further usage check box.
Request Closure Code

Request Closure Code denotes the reason behind closing a request, whether the request was closed successfully, unsuccessfully, cancelled and so on. Using the request closure code, the administrator is able to comprehend the purpose of closing the request by the technician. In addition, comments can be provided to give a detailed explanation for closing the requests. The configured request closure code list appears while closing the request, and the data entered is viewed in the request details page.

To access the Request Closure Code list page,

1. Click Admin tab in the header pane to open the Configuration Wizard page.
2. In the Helpdesk block, click Helpdesk Customizer icon.
3. Select Request Closure Code from the left menu. The available request closure code is displayed. From this page you can add, edit and delete a closure code.

Add New Closure Code

1. Click Add New Closure Code link.
2. Specify a unique Name for the request closure code. The name is a mandatory field.
3. Provide a brief Description about the request closure code.
4. Click Save to save the request closure code and return to the list view.

To add more than one request closure code, click Save and Add New button. This adds the new closure code and reopens the Add Request Closure Code form.

Click Cancel to exit the add request closure code form and return to the list view.

Clicking the View List link on the top right corner of the add request closure code form also take you to the Closure Code list view.

Edit a Request Closure Code

1. In the Request Closure Code list view page, click the edit icon beside the closure code name to edit. The Update form is displayed.
2. Modify the Name and Description.
3. Click Save, to save the request closure code and return to the list view.

Even while editing a closure code, if you wish to add a new request closure code, click Save and Add New button. This updates the request closure code and reopens the Add Request Closure Code form.

Click Cancel to exit the add request closure code form and return to the list view.

Clicking the View List link on the top right corner of the add request closure code form also take you to the Closure Code list view.
Delete Request Closure Code

1. From the Request Closure Code list view, enable the check box beside the closure code to delete.
2. Click **Delete** button. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **OK** to continue. The request closure code is deleted from the list.

If the request closure code is used in a request, the closure code is not deleted, instead it is grayed (made inactive) and will not be available for further usage.

To bring the request closure code back to the active state,

1. Click the edit icon (-pencil icon) beside the inactive request closure code. The update form is displayed.
2. De-select the **Request Closure Code not for further usage** check box.
3. Click **Save**. The request closure code is save and will be available for further usage.

Click **Save and Add New**, to save and add another request closure code. Click **Cancel** to exit the add request closure code form and return to the list view.
Request Closing Rules

Request closing rules can be used to select the mandatory fields to be filled in by the technicians while closing the requests. You can also use it to confirm user acknowledgement to the technician and close requests either manually or automatically.

To preset the request closing rules,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
3. In the **Helpdesk** block, click the **Helpdesk Customizer** icon. This opens the Configuration Wizard page.
4. Click the **Request Closing Rules** link at the left side of the page under the HelpDesk block. This opens Request Closing Rules page.
5. Select the mandatory fields for closing the request from the list by enabling the check box.

**Confirm User Acknowledgement**

On closing the request, the resolution is acknowledged by the requester through mail (if the option is enabled in Notification Rules). If you want to prompt a confirmation message to the technician asking if user has acknowledged the resolution then enable **Yes, prompt a message** radio button, else enable **No, don't prompt a message** radio button.

**Request Closing Process**

**Manual Closing**

1. If you would like to close the request manually select the **Manual radio button**.
2. **Save** the changes. On resolving the request each time you have to close the request manually.

**Automatic Close**

1. Select the **Automated Close** radio button to close the request automatically.

   In the automatic mode,
   
   - An email is sent to the requester when the Request is put in **Resolved** state
   - The Requester can **Close the Request** with the close link given or **Re-open the Request by replying to the mail**.
   - If the Requester takes no action the Request will be closed after the number of days specified in the combo box.
2. Select the **close resolved request after n number of days** from the combo box. After the selected number of days the resolved requests will be closed automatically if the requester does not take any action.

3. Save the details.

**Example:** If you have selected Resolution as a mandatory field, then the technician fixing the problem, should enter the reason and solution for the problem in the resolution text field before closing the request, else an error message pops up asking you to enter the details in the resolution field. If **Yes, prompt a message** radio button is enabled then, a confirmation message is prompted to the concerned technician if user has acknowledged the resolution.
Incident - Additional Fields

While creating an incident, you may want to capture additional details about the incident apart from the preset fields in the New Incident form. The Incident - Additional Fields help you configure the additional fields to display in the New Incident form. You can configure different types of fields in the form namely, Text fields, Numeric fields, Data / Time fields and Decimal fields.

To access the Incident - Additional Fields,

1. Log in to ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Helpdesk block, click the Helpdesk Customizer icon. The next page displays the Category List view page along with the list of request form attributes that can be customized on the left menu.
4. Click Incident - Additional Fields from the left menu. The Incident - Additional fields page has 4 tabs as shown below. Click the tab to configure the type of additional field you require.
Text Additional Fields

If the additional fields are for alphabets and alphanumeric characters, then use the Text Additional Fields. You can add up to 24 Text fields in the New Incident form.

1. By default the **Text** tab is selected. Specify the **Label** name for the additional field.
2. Specify any relevant information about the additional field in the **Description** text field.
3. You have 3 types of text field namely, **Single-line**, **Multi-line** and **Pick List** (drop-down menu).
   - **Single-line**: A Single-line text field is for text which can be accommodated in a single line. You can specify the **exact value of length** that should be entered for the field. The exact value of length can be anything from 1 to 250. Your text field can also be configured to support only numbers. For that, select **Allow only numbers** check box.
   - **Multi-line**: The Multi-line text field is for text which requires a lengthy description.
   - **Pick List (drop-down menu)**: The Pick List or drop-down menu allows you to add a list of items from which you can select. To add the items, enter the value in the highlighted text field. Click **Add Item**. The value is added to the list. To delete an item, select the item and click the **Delete** button.
4. You can also specify the **Default Value** to appear in the new incident form.
5. Click **Save** button to save the settings.

Numeric Additional Fields

If the additional fields are for only numeric characters, then use the Numeric Additional Fields. You can add up to 8 Numeric fields in the New Incident form.

1. Click **Numeric** tab.
2. Specify the **Label** name for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the **Description** field.
4. You can specify the exact value of length for the numeric field in **Exact Value Length**. The exact value of length can be anything from 1 to 19.
5. **Save** the settings.

Data / Time Additional Field

If the additional fields are for data and time, then use the Date / Time Additional Fields. You can add up to 8 Date / Time fields in the New Incident form.

1. Click the **Date / Time** tab.
2. Specify the **Label** name for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the **Description** text fields.
4. **Save** the settings.
Decimal Additional Fields

If the additional fields are for Decimal characters, then use the Decimal Additional Fields. You can add up to 8 Decimal fields in the New Incident form.

1. Click the Decimal tab.
2. Specify the Label name for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the Description text fields.
4. Save the settings.

**NOTE:** While specifying the decimal value, the allowed length of digits for the integer part should be less than or equal to 13, and the allowed length of digits after the decimal is 2. If the value exceeds, then the value would be truncated and saved.

Once you save the additional fields, a success message would appear asking you to configure the newly added fields in the Incident Template. The success message is followed by a Click here to configure link which takes you to the default request template. Here you can add the field onto the canvas using the Drag and Drop method. Refer Incident Template to learn more on customizing the templates.

Delete Additional Fields

To delete an incident - additional field,

1. From the Incident - Additional Fields page, remove the label name of the additional field you want to delete.
2. Click Save button. The field is removed from the Incident - Additional Fields page and would not appear in the New Incident form.
Incident Template

In real world, there is a need to support different types of incident request which might require different fields in the form layout. Request Template supports to configure different set of fields for different type of requests. Thereby creating individual form for each request template for the most frequently raised requests such as, printer problem or mail fetching problem. The fields can be pre filled with values so that a request can be created instantly.

To open the request template form,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane. The configuration wizard page opens.
2. Click **Incident Templates** icon under the helpdesk block. This opens the Incident Template list view page.

Create an Incident Template

1. Click **Create New** button. This opens the add incident template form view for the technician.

The incident template form consists of three blocks namely, Header, Field list, Canvas and Show to Requester.

- **Header**: The header consists of the **Template Name**, **Comments** and the **Undo** and **Redo** buttons.
- **Field List**: The field list consists of the list of fields and the add new field option.
- **Canvas**: The canvas decides the form look and has drag and drop area.
- **Show to Requester**: The incident template can be made available to requesters by enabling "Show to Requester" check box.

If you have configured User Groups, the template can be restricted to the requesters of a specific user group by selecting the user groups from the list. Click here to know more on configuring User Groups.
The following are the actions that can be performed in the form,

- Form Customization
  - Add New fields
  - Drag and Drop fields
  - Setting Field Property
- Request Preview
  - Technician View
  - Requester View
  - Add Tasks
- Edit incident Template
- Delete incident Template

**Form Customization**

The layout of the form can be customized by, add/remove fields, set field properties and re-arrange the fields in the Canvas for an incident template.

**Add New Field**

1. You can add new fields by dragging the **Add New Field** option under the Drag and Drop field on to the canvas.

![Add New Field](image1)

2. This opens the **Add New Field** pop up window as shown below,
2. Select the **type of field** such as, text, numeric, by enabling the radio button beside it.
3. In the text field settings block, specify the **Label Name** in the field provided. This is mandatory field. If required, enter the significance of the field in the **Description** text field.
4. Select the **type of the text field** such as single-line, pick list.
5. Click **OK**, the field gets added in the dragged place in the canvas with the above specifications.

The newly added fields are common for all the templates. The field name will also be same for all the templates. The newly added field can be edited or deleted only in **Request - Additional Fields**.

### Drag and Drop

1. Drag the field from the **Field List** and drop it onto the canvas. The drop areas will be highlighted. The dragged field can be dropped only in the highlighted area.
2. The fields in the form can also be re-arranged by dragging the field and placing it over an empty cell. The field can be placed only in the highlighted area. The request details can be moved as a whole block.
3. If you want to **Undo/Redo** the changes then click the corresponding buttons.

### Setting Field Properties

You can customize the fields such as, status, priority, mode by either changing the field properties, that is, making the fields mandatory or closing the fields. Thus you
can customize the entire form by keeping the relevant fields in the canvas for a template. To customize the form,

1. Hover over the field, an Edit Field properties and Remove Field icons appears.

2. Click the **Edit Field Properties** icon 📝. A drop down appears containing the options,

   - **Mandatory Field**: The field can be made mandatory by enabling the check box adjacent to this option.
     
     **Note**: If the Item field is marked as mandatory then the category and sub category will automatically be marked as mandatory. Similarly, if the Impact details are marked as mandatory then the Impact field will automatically be marked as mandatory.

   - **Requester can Set**: Enabling this option, provides the requester with the privilege to set the field values in the new request form of the requester login. Selecting this option automatically enables requester can view' option.

   - **Requester can View**: The requesters can view the field in the request details page but cannot set nor edit the value.

3. Click **Remove Field** ✗ icon to remove the field from the canvas. The detached fields are added under drag and drop field list. The fields like status, priority, description, subject and requester details do not have the Remove Field option.

On customizing the form layout, you can pre fill the fields with values. Click **Save**. The template is added to the available list in the Incident Template list view page. To save and add tasks for the template, click **Save and Add Task** instead of Save.

At any point, if you do not wish to add the Incident template and would like to get back to the list view page, click **Cancel**. Clicking the **View List** link on the top right corner of the Incident template form will also take you to the Incident template list view page.
The incident templates are populated under **New Request** drop down. To obtain the default request form, click New Request link. The default form can neither be deleted nor renamed. Requests created through mail are also based on the default template.

**Request Preview**

On customizing the request form for both the requesters as well as technicians, you can see the preview for both the logins using this option.

From the Incident Template list view page, click the Template name to preview.

**Technician View**

By default, the incident template form for technicians is opened. You can drag and drop fields in the canvas, re-arrange, add/remove and set properties for the field.

**Requester View**

You can view the incident template form for a requester if the **Show to requester** option is enabled. To view the incident template form for a requester, click the **Requester** tab on the top left hand side of the page. The header section is grayed and hence is non-editable. In the requester preview page, certain fields are hid from the requester while the rest of the fields can only be re-arranged.
Add Tasks

You can view and add tasks related to the incident template on clicking the **Tasks** tab. This displays the list of tasks for the template. You can add tasks by clicking **Add Task** button. To add task refer **Add Task**.

Edit Incident Template

You can edit the incident template and also have a preview of the incident templates for a technician and a requester.

1. Click the incident template name from the incident template list view page. By default, the incident template form for technicians is opened.
2. You can drag and drop fields in the canvas, re-arrange, add/remove and set properties for the field.
3. You can view the incident template form for a requester if the **Show to requester** option is enabled. To view the incident template form for a requester, click the **Requester** tab on the top left hand side of the page.
4. In the requester preview page, the fields can only be re-arranged. The header section will be grayed and hence will be non-editable.
5. You can also view and add tasks related to the request by clicking on the **Task** tab. This displays the list of tasks for the template. You can also add tasks by clicking **Add Task** button.

Delete Incident Template

1. From the incident template list view page, enable the check box adjacent to the template which you want to delete.
2. Click **Delete** button, a pop up window appears confirming the delete operation.
3. Click **OK** to continue. The template gets deleted from the list. If the template is been used by a request then the template will be marked in grey indicating no further usage of the template in the incident template list view page.

To bring the form back to usage, disable 'Template not for further usage' check box under the **Header** block of Edit Incident Template form.
Resolution Template

Resolution templates can be created to handle repeated requests with the same solution. The solutions of frequently raised requests, such as printer configuration can be made into a Resolution Template. Thus the technicians need not type the same resolution repeatedly for the request raised.

To open the configuration page for resolution template,

1. Login to ServiceDesk Plus application with the username and password of an admin user.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Helpdesk block, click Resolution Template to open the Resolution Template list page.

Add New Template

1. Click New Template button to open the Add-Resolution Template form.
2. Specify a unique name for the template in the Name text field.
3. Enter the resolution in the Description text field. Both the Name and Description are mandatory fields.
4. You can mark this template as inactive by enabling the check box beside Mark as InActive. The inactive template is marked in grey and does not get listed in the resolution template drop-down while resolving a request.
5. Click Save. To save and add another resolution template, click Save and Add New.

Edit a Resolution Template

1. In the Resolution Template list page, click on the Edit icon beside the template you wish to edit.
2. In the Edit Resolution Template form, modify the required changes mentioned while adding the resolution.
3. Click Update. Even while editing, if you wish to add a new resolution template, then click Update and add new button. At any point you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click Cancel.

Delete Resolution Template

1. In the Resolution Template list page, select the check box beside the template you wish to delete.
2. Click the Delete button. A confirmation message appears. Click Ok to continue. The resolution template gets deleted from the list.
Reply Template

While replying to requests, technicians tend to type the same response repeatedly to many requests. With Reply Template, technicians can create templates for the repetitive response to requests, thus saving time and easing their work.

To open the configuration page for reply template,

1. Login to ServiceDesk Plus application with the username and password of an admin user.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Helpdesk block, click Reply Template to open the Reply Template list page.

Add a Reply Template

1. Click New Template button to open the Add Reply Template form.
2. Specify a unique name for the template in the Template Name text field.
3. Enter the content of the template in the Description text field. Both the Name and Description are mandatory fields.
4. You can mark this template as inactive by enabling the check box beside Mark this template INACTIVE. The inactive template is marked in grey and does not get listed in the reply template drop-down while replying to requests.
5. Click Save. To save and add another resolution template, click Save and Add New.

Edit a Reply Template

1. In the Reply Template list page, click on the Edit icon beside the template you wish to edit.
2. In the Edit Reply Template form, modify the required changes mentioned while adding the Reply.
3. Click Update. Even while editing, if you wish to add a new Reply template, then click Update and add new button. At any point you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click Cancel.

Delete Reply Template

1. In the Reply Template list page, select the check box beside the template you wish to delete.
2. Click the Delete button. A confirmation message appears.
3. Click OK to continue. The reply template gets deleted from the list.
Task Template

Certain tasks need to be repeated by the technicians for different users and scenarios. With Task Template, repeated tasks can be pre-defined thus saving time on creating and assigning tasks to the technicians. Task Template can be applied while adding a task to a request, problem and change.

To open the configuration page for task template,

1. Login to ServiceDesk Plus application using your **username** and **password**.
2. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
3. In the helpdesk block, click **Helpdesk Customize** icon 📝. The configuration wizard page opens.
4. Click **Task Template** on the left hand side of the page in the helpdesk block. The list of available task templates is displayed.

Add Task Template

1. Click **New Template** button to open the Add-Task Template form.
2. Specify a unique name for the task in **Template Name** text field.
3. Specify the **Title** of the task in the field. The Template Name and Title are mandatory fields.
4. Enter a brief **Description** about the task template in the field provided.
5. Select the group to assign the task from Groups drop down list.
6. The list of technicians associated to the selected Group is listed in Owner combo box. Select the **Owner** of the task.
7. Select the **Status** of the task, say Open or Closed, from the drop down list.
8. Specify relevant comments for handling the tasks in the **Comments** text field.
9. You can mark the template as inactive on selecting the check box beside **Mark Template as Inactive**. The inactive template is marked in grey and do not get listed in the Add task form while adding tasks to requests, problem or change.
10. Click **Save**. To save and add another task, click **Save and Add New**.

Edit a Template

1. In the task template list view page, click on the **Edit** icon 🏛️ beside the template you wish to edit.
2. In the **Edit-Task Template** form, modify the changes mentioned while adding the task template.
3. Click **Update**. While editing, if you wish to add a new Task Template click **Update and Add New** button. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation you are performing, click **Cancel**.

Delete Template

1. In the task template list view page, select the check box beside the template you wish to delete.
2. Click the **Delete** button. A confirmation message appears.
3. Click **OK** to continue. The task template is deleted from the list.
Service Catalog

Enterprises today seek for an approach to enhance and streamline the communication between IT and end-users. While the IT department has services and the users have needs, the manner in which the services must be exposed to the users is a crucial task. This is where Service Catalog in ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus plays a vital role in your organization.

Service Catalog is where you can portrait the wide range of services offered by your IT department to the end-users. Some of the most common day-to-day IT services required by the users are, installation, relocation, internet access, email access, virus protection, provision of hardware and software, mail server, account management and so on. With the simplicity and clarity through which the services are exposed in ServiceDesk Plus allows users to easily browse through the services, raise requests instantly and monitor their status thereon.

To access the service catalog configuration wizard page,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.

2. Click **Service Catalog** icon under **Helpdesk** block. The Service Catalog page opens listing the service categories available in the application.

From this page, you can **add new service category**, **manage the service items** and also **add services** under each category. The number of services available is specified under each service category.
Getting Started

To start off with configuring your personalized Service Catalog, you need to first define Service Categories. Service Categories holds classified group of service items and can be configured from the Manage drop down. Apart from this, an instant means to get to the add service category form is by clicking the Add Service Category button. The configured Service Categories are displayed in the list view with an icon to depict its uniqueness.

From the Manage drop down, you can also configure the Additional Fields and Service Level Agreement for the service requests. If the default parameters in the template do not contain key information that is relevant to your organization, then the same can be configured from the Additional Fields. Using Service Level Agreements, your help desk team effectiveness and efficiency can be determined.

Service Requests for a service category is configured using the Add Service button beside the category. The list of services under a service category can be viewed using the drop down icon beside them, and on hovering over the services, the delete, edit and disable icons appear. Using these icons, the preferred operations can be performed.

Representation of icons in Service Catalog list view screen,

- icon to delete a service item.
- icon to edit a service item.
- icon to disable a service item.
- icon to enable a service item.

The configured service items are listed under the Service Catalog drop-down menu. With Service Catalog, services are easily accessed, facilitating users to browse for services, submit requests for IT services and monitor their status. Click Service Catalog drop-down menu to view the Template Categories and the Template List.
Service Catalog - Service Categories

Service Category is a comprehensive list of **IT Services** and the **Business Services** provided by the IT department to the end-users. Each service category has a classified group of service items which are exposed to user groups who are approved to access it.

To access the Service Category configuration page,

1. Click **Admin** module in the header pane. The configuration wizard page opens.
2. Click **Service Catalog** icon under **Helpdesk** block.
3. From the Service Catalog configuration wizard page, click **Manage** drop down and select **Service Categories** option.

The Service Categories list view page lists all the IT Services and the Business Services. You can add, edit and delete a service category from this page. Apart from this, an instant means to get to the add service category form is by clicking the **Add Service Category** drop-down menu in the Service Catalog configuration wizard page.

### Adding Service Category

1. Click **Add Service Category** drop-down menu. You can add either an IT Service Category or Business Service Category. Select the appropriate option to view the add form.
2. Specify a **Name** for the Service Category. This field is mandatory.
3. Enter a brief **Description** about the IT service details in the field provided.
4. Set an **Icon** for the service category. You can choose the icon from the icon set or upload an icon. The **Icon set** consists of the icons available in the application, by default. To upload an icon, click **Upload an icon** link and browse through the icons.
5. Click **Save** to save the details and return to the list view. Click **Cancel** to return to the list view.
NOTE:

1. The default fields in the form such as, **Service Support Hours**, **Business Criticality**, **Department**, **Incident Restoration Target**, **Availability Target**, **Cost**, **Managed By** and **Business Impact** are configured while adding the Configuration Item Types. If you want to add or remove any of these fields then you can do so under **Admin** tab -> **Configuration Item Types**.
2. The newly added Service Category (either IT Service Category or Business Service Category) are listed as CIs in CMDB module.

**Editing a Service Category**

1. From the Service Category list view page, click on the edit icon beside the service category to edit. The Service Category page opens.
2. All the fields in the form are editable. Modify the necessary fields.
3. Click **Save** to save the details and return to the list view. Even while editing a service category you can add a new service category by selecting **Save and Add New** button. Click Cancel to return to the list view.

**Deleting a Service Category**

1. From the Service Category list view page, enable the check box beside the service categories to delete.
2. Click **Delete** button. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **OK** to continue. The service category is deleted from the list.

**NOTE:** If the service category is greyed instead of getting deleted, then the service category is being used by a module. Greying indicates that the service category will not be available for further usage. To bring a service category back to usage, click the edit icon beside the greyed out service category and deselect **Service not for further usage** check box.
Service Catalog - Additional Fields

While customizing the service request form, you may want to capture additional details about the service apart from the preset fields. The Service Catalog - Additional Fields is where you can configure additional fields for the service requests. You can configure additional fields for all the service requests (irrespective of the service category) or for service requests of specific service category. The different types of fields are, Text fields, Numeric fields, Date / Time fields and Decimal fields.

To add additional fields,

1. Click Admin tab in the header pane. The configuration wizard page opens.
2. Click Service Catalog icon under Helpdesk block.
3. From the Service Catalog configuration wizard page, click Manage drop down and select Additional Fields option.
4. Select the Service Category for which the additional field should appear. If the additional field should appear in all the service request forms, then select "common fields".

Text Additional fields

If the additional fields are for alphabets and alphanumerical characters, then use the Text Additional Fields. You can add up to 24 Text fields in the New Incident form.

1. By default, the Text tab is selected. Specify the Label for the Additional field.
2. Specify any relevant information about the additional field in the Description text field.
3. You have 3 types of text field namely, Single-line, Multi-line and Pick List (drop-down menu).
   o Single-line: A Single-line text field is for text which can be accommodated in a single line. You can specify the exact value of length that should be entered for the field. The exact value of length can be anything from 1 to 250. Your text field can also be configured to support only numbers. For that, select Allow only numbers check box.
   o Multi-line: The Multi-line text field is for text which requires a lengthy description.
   o Pick List (drop-down menu): The Pick List or drop-down menu allows you to add a list of items from which you can select. To add the items, enter the value in the highlighted text field. Click Add Item. The value is added to the list. To delete an item, select the item and click the Delete button.
4. You can also specify the Default Value to appear in the new incident form.
5. Click Save button to save the settings.

Numeric Additional fields

If the additional fields are for only numeric characters, then use the Numeric Additional Fields. You can add up to 8 Numeric fields in the New Incident form.
1. Click the **Numeric** tab.
2. Specify the **Label** for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the **Description** text field.
4. You can specify the exact value of length for the numeric field in **Exact Value Length**. The exact value of length can be anything from 1 to 19.
5. **Save** the settings.

**Date / Time Additional fields**

If the additional fields are for data and time, then use the Date / Time Additional Fields. You can add up to 8 Date / Time fields in the New Incident form.

1. Click the **Date/Time** tab.
2. Specify the **Label** for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the **Description** text fields.
4. Click **Save** to save the settings.

**Decimal Additional fields**

If the additional fields are for Decimal characters, then use the Decimal Additional Fields. You can add up to 8 Decimal fields in the New Incident form.

1. Click the **Decimal** tab.
2. Specify the **Label** for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the **Description** text fields.
4. Click **Save** to save the settings.

**NOTE:** While specifying the decimal value, the allowed length of digits for the integer part should be less than or equal to 13, and the allowed length of digits after the decimal is 2. If the value exceeds, then the value would be truncated and saved.

These additional fields will appear in the **Service Fields** section of the new service form. To delete the user-defined fields, instead of adding the label names, delete the existing label names you wish to remove from the fields of the form and click **Save**.
Service Catalog - Service Level Agreement

Service Level Agreement evaluates the efficiency, effectiveness and responsiveness of the help desk team. The services created in the application can be exclusively assigned with specific SLAs thereby setting a due by date for the service requests. Escalation rules can also be set if the request is not attended and resolved within the specified time.

To access the SLA configuration wizard page,

1. Click **Admin** tab in the header pane. The configuration wizard page opens.
2. Click **Service Catalog** icon under **Helpdesk** block.
3. From the Service Catalog configuration wizard page, click **Manage** drop down and select **Service Level Agreements** option. The SLA List page appears from where you can add, edit and delete a SLA.

### Adding SLA

1. Click **Add New SLA** link. The SLA form has three blocks of information, namely SLA Details, SLA Rules, and Escalations.
2. The **SLA details** consist of the SLA name and description.
   1. **SLA Name** uniquely identifies the SLA. It is a mandatory field.
   2. You can provide a brief explanation of the SLA in the **Description** field.
3. **SLA Rules** is where you need to set the **Agreed Upon Time** (due by time) for the service request. Enter the agreed upon time in terms of days, hours and minutes. If the service request should be fulfilled irrespective of the working hours and holidays, then enable **Should be fulfilled irrespective of the operational hours** check box.
4. **Escalate** the service requests to other technicians if the request is not resolved within the specified resolution time. Select the check box beside **Enable Level 1 Escalation**. Click **Choose** button to select the technicians to whom the SLA violation should be escalated.
5. You can choose to escalate before or after the SLA violation. If you wish to escalate the request before the SLA violation, click **Escalate Before** option. This informs the technician about the impending of the violation. Specify the number of days before the SLA violation in the text box. You can also specify the time of escalation.
6. Click **Escalate After** option to escalate after the violation. Specify the number of days after the SLA violation has occurred in the text box. You can also specify the time of escalation.
7. Similarly, there are four levels of escalation when the resolution time violates.
8. Click the **Save** button to save the SLA and return to the list view.

    Click the **Save and Add New** button to save the SLA and add another SLA. Click **View List** to view the SLA list view page. To return to the Service Catalog configuration wizard page, click **Go Back**.

**Editing SLA**

1. From the Service Category list view page, click **edit** icon beside the SLA name to edit. The edit SLA page opens.
2. The fields, SLA details, SLA rules and escalations are editable. **Modify** the necessary details.
3. Click **Save** button to save the SLA and return to the list view. Even while editing, you can add a another SLA on clicking **Save and Add New** instead of the Save button. Clicking on **Cancel** takes you to the list view.

**Deleting SLA**

1. Enable the check box beside the SLA to delete.
2. Click the **Delete** button. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **OK** to proceed with the deletion. If you do not want to delete the SLA, then click **Cancel**.

**NOTE:** If the SLA is greyed instead of getting deleted, then the SLA is being used by a service request. Greying indicates that the SLA will not be available for further usage. To bring the SLA back to usage, click the edit icon beside the greyed out SLA and deselect **SLA not for further usage** check box.
Service Catalog - Service Items

The day-to-day IT services such as installation, relocation, internet access, email access, virus protection, provision of hardware and software, mail server and so on are configured under this section. The service items are classified and grouped under Service Categories, which are displayed in the Home page.

The Service Request form consists of a drag and drop template that should be configured in order to meet the end-user requirement. If the service involves the need of any resources, then the same can be configured under the Resource Info block. Furthermore, you can configure multiple stages of Approvals, set Service Level Agreement and assign Tasks for individual service request.

To configure Service Items,

1. Click the Admin tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click Service Catalog icon under Helpdesk block. The Service Catalog page opens listing the service categories available in the application.
3. Click Add Service button beside a service category to add service under it. The Add Service Item form opens to display three tabs namely, Form Designer, Workflow and Requester View. By default, the form Designer is displayed.

This following are explained under this section.

- Configuring Form Designer
  - Configuring Resource Information
  - Show to Requester option
- Configuring Workflow
  - Approver Details
  - SLA
  - Adding Tasks to service requests
  - Template Action
- Requester View
- Enabling/Disabling Service Item
- Editing Service Item
- Deleting Service Item
Configuring Form Designer

To add services under a service category,

1. Click Add Service button beside the service category. The service request for Technician View appears consisting of the **Header**, **Service Fields** and **Service Preview**.

   - **Header**: The header consists of the **Service Name** and **Description**.
   - **Service Field**: The service fields consist of the list of available parameters and an option to add new fields for the service item.
   - **Service Preview**: The service preview decides the form look and consists of drag and drop template area, the **Undo** and **Redo** options, **Resource Info** block and **Show to Requester** check box. With the template, individual forms can be customized for each service by dragging the available service fields into the service preview form, remove fields from the form, set the field property and also rearrange fields in the form.

2. To add a new field in the form, drag **Add New Field** option in the service preview form. Place the field only in the yellow highlighted area of the form.

   i. An **Add New Field** pop up appears where you can select the type of field to be added in the canvas. The field can be text, numeric or Date/Time field.
ii. Specify a unique **Label** in the field provided. This field is mandatory. Also, enter the significance of the field in the **Description** text field.

iii. For Text field, select the field type from Single-line, Multi-line or Pick-list. Enable any one of the radio button.

iv. Click **Ok** to add the field in the canvas with the above specifications.

4. The newly added fields are common for all the service items under a service category. Alternatively, you can also add new fields in Additional Field. From this section, you can also edit and delete the additional fields.

5. Similarly, you can drag the **Service fields** onto the service preview form. If required, the fields in the service preview form can be rearranged by dragging the field and placing it over the yellow highlighted area.

6. While raising a service request, the IT team would be well assisted if all the required information is provided in the form. But usually that may not be the case. The service request may be raised with half-filled information and may require a user to edit and provide the remaining details.

The **Editor**, mostly a requester, can be configured for a service request by dragging the Editor Field onto the service preview. When this service request is raised with the Editor Field filled, the status of the request is automatically moved to **On Hold**. The **On Hold** status states that the service request is waiting for further update from the editor. Refer the topic Service Request Editor to know more about the Editor Field.

7. While rearranging the fields, if you want to **Undo/Redo** a change, click the corresponding button.

8. You can also add or select the default values to appear in the form.

9. To customize and remove undesirable fields in the form, hover over the field, the **Edit Field Properties** icon 📈 and the **Remove Field** icon ✖ appears.

i. Click **Edit Field Properties** icon 📈. A drop down containing the following options appears,
- **Mandatory Fields**: Enabling this option sets the field as mandatory.
- **Requester can set**: Enabling this option allows the users to edit the field, i.e., they can enter or select values for the field while raising a new service request. Enabling this option automatically enables 'requester can view' check box.
- **Requester can view**: Enabling this option alone allows users to view the field in the service request form but they cannot enter values for the field while raising a service request.

ii. Click **Remove Field** icon ✗ to remove the fields from the service preview form. The fields detached from the form are listed in the Service Fields block.

### NOTE

1. If the Item field is marked as mandatory then the corresponding Category and Sub category will be automatically marked as mandatory.

   Similarly, if the Impact details are marked as mandatory then the Impact field will also be marked as mandatory.

2. The fields such as Requester Details, Subject and Site do not have Edit Field Properties icon and hence these fields can only be re-arranged.

3. Fields such as Status, Description, Requester Details, Site and Subject do not have Remove Field icon.

8. **Save** the service before proceeding to the Resources block.

### Configuring Resource Information

If the service involves any resources then you can mention them under the **Resource Info** block. The process of adding resources involves a series of questions, and the resources can be displayed in either of the following formats - check box, drop down, plain text or with simple yes/no.

Take the case of a new employee joining your organization. The resources provided to the new employee would be, providing a desktop/laptop, installing the necessary
software, provision of any additional hardware resource, communication device, entry into application logins like Active Directory, VPN, Email, Payroll, CRM and so on. These resources are entered under Resource Info block of the service request.

To add resources,

1. Click **Add Resource** button in the Resource Info block.
2. In the Add Resource pop up, specify the **Resource Title** and a brief **Description** on the purpose for adding this resource. The Resource Title is a mandatory field.
3. Next, you can either choose to select the question from the existing question list or create a new question.

**Selecting from existing question list:**

To select a question from the existing question list, use the **Select your question** drop down.

Select a question from the list, say "Choose the additional hardware required". The question is displayed along with an edit and delete icon. If you wish to add another additional hardware to the list, click on the edit icon 🏆. Enter your option and add it to the existing list as shown below. Click **Ok** to save the question.
Adding New Question:

If your desired question is not in the existing question list, then you can add a new question by clicking **New Question** button. **Enter your Question** and select the question format from the options provided. The question can be displayed either in a simple yes or no format, drop down, check box or as a plain text.

If you have selected the **Question Type** as check box or drop down, then the **Add Options** appears, listing all the product types configured in the application. Selecting a product type lists all the products (configured in the application) under that product type.

For instance, if the selected product type is "Software", then all the managed software available in the application is listed. If the selected product type is "Workstation", then the workstations configured and scanned in the application are listed.
Select the assets/software to be displayed in the question by clicking >> (move right) button as shown in the image. Click Ok to save the question.

**Manual addition of Resources:**

Apart from resources in the application, you can manually add resources that are not configured in the application. To add resources manually in the application, select **Add manually** from **Add options** drop-down. Enter the resource in the text field as shown in the image.
In this case the resource is "HP Pavilion" and click **Add >>** to make the resource available in the question. Click **Ok** to save the question. To add another question, click **New Question** and follow the process as above.

4. **Click Save** to save the resource information. The questions are displayed in the **Resource Info** block of the service preview form from where you can also edit or delete the added resources.

![Resource Info](image)

**Show to Requester**

To make the service request accessible in the requester's login, select **Show to Requesters** check box. If User Groups are configured in the application, then you can select specific user groups to whom the service request should be made available too. Selecting the user groups makes a clear indication of the end users who can subscribe to the services.

Say for instance, if a service request should be shown to the requesters in the Sales department, then, configure the user group by selecting the "Department" as "Sales" under **Admin -> User Management -> User Groups**. Once the user group is configured, enable "Show to Requester" check box in the service item form and select the user group as "Sales User Group". To know more on configuring user groups, refer User Groups.
Click **Save** to save the details. Click **Save and Configure Workflow** button, to configure the service request workflow.

**Work Flow**

The Work Flow tab consists of options to select the approvers, map Service Level Agreement and assign Tasks for individual service requests.

**Approver Details**

Certain service request raised in the application requires approvals from the concerned users to go ahead with the request. The approvers can be technicians or requesters with the permission to **Approve Service Requests**, and should possess an email address in the application. You can configure up to 5 stages of approvals for a service request. Each stage may possess one or more approvers.

Select the **Approvers** for the service request using the icon 📈. The approver(s) can also be the department head to which the requester belongs provided the approver has the permission to approve service requests.

On selecting the approver, the appropriate notifications have to be selected.

- **Send approval notification automatically when a service request is raised** - Enable this check box to send an approval notification to the concerned authority each time a service request is raised. If you have configured multiple stages of approvals, then the notification is sent to the next consecutive stage only on approval from the previous stage.

- **All configured approvers have to approve the Service Request** - Enabling this check box makes it mandatory for all the configured approvers to approve the service request. If anyone of the approver (at any stage) rejects the service request, then the request does not proceed to the next stage.

  **NOTE:** If you have selected more than one approver in a stage, then all the approvers in that stage should approve the request.

- **Do not assign technician before Service Request is approved** - This option is enabled only on selecting "Send approval notification automatically when a service request is raised" check box. On selecting this option, a technician is assigned to a service request only when the service request is approved by the concern authority.

---

*Zoho Corporation*
SLA

Each service request created in the application is assigned with a specific SLA to set the due by date. Select the SLA for the service request from the drop down. You can also add new SLAs using Add New SLA link.

Adding Tasks to Service Requests

You can add tasks to a service request if the request involves multiple technician work.

To add Tasks to service requests,

1. Click the Tasks tab -> click Add Task button from the tasks list view page.
2. In the Add Task form, specify the Title of the task. The Title is a mandatory field.
3. Specify relevant information about the tasks in the Description field.
4. Select the Group to which task has to be assigned. Select the Technician of the task from the combo box. Tasks can be assigned either:
   - to a Group alone,
   - to a Group and a specific Technician in the group,
   - to a Technician alone without selecting the group,
   - to no Group and no Technician.
5. If there are multiple tasks for a service request, the implementation of one task may be dependent on the completion of another. In this case, the dependencies on tasks can be captured by clicking on the relevant tasks under Task Dependency block.
6. Select the Status of the task from the drop down.
7. Specify any relevant comment about the task in the Comments field.
8. Click Save to save the details. Click Save and Add New, to save the details and open another Add Task form. Click Cancel to go back to the tasks list view.

You can also organize tasks from the list view to suit your desired priority. Click Organize Tasks button and change the order of the tasks using the up and down buttons.

The tasks for a service request are automatically created and assigned to the configured technician each time the service request is raised.

Template Action

If the service request involves installing/uninstalling software or executing scripts, then the same can be performed from the centralized server through Desktop Central Integration. The Desktop Central activities are performed with the aid of a Desktop Central Agent that should be installed in the Windows workstation.
To avail this functionality, configure the Server Name and Port number of the Desktop Central server in SDP application. Since all service requests do not require Desktop Central operations, this activity is limited by providing a **Template Action** check box in each service item form. This functionality is attainable only when Desktop Central 7.0 and above is integrated with SDP. Refer Desktop Central Integration to know more.

Click **Save** to save the details. Click **Save and Configure Requester** button, to configure service request form for requesters.

**Requester View**

The "Requester View" tab is available in the service form only if the requesters have permission to view the service request. Click the **Requester** View tab to view the requester preview of the service request.

The service form is similar to the technician preview except,

- The header section is grayed indicating that its non-editable,
- The service fields has limited parameters and the option to add new field is unavailable
- Parameters such as Mode, Request Type, Level, Impact, Impact Details and Urgency are unavailable for the requester preview.
- The Edit Field Properties option is absent for the fields.

You can drag the available service fields onto the service preview form. Place the field only in the yellow highlighted area of the form. You can also rearrange the existing fields in a similar manner. In addition, you can also set default values for the fields to appear while raising the service request.

Click **Save** to save the configured details. Click **Cancel** to exit the form.

**Disabling/Enabling Services**

By default, a newly added service is enabled in the list view. To disable a service,

1. Click the **icon beside the service category to list the services under them.**
2. Hover over the service to disable. Click **disable service** icon 🕵️‍♂️. The service is grayed and will not be listed along with the existing services in the home page.
To enable a service.

1. Click the icon beside the service category to list the services under them.
2. Hover over the service to enable. Click enable service icon ☑. The service is enabled and is listed along with the existing services in the home page.

**Editing Services**

To edit a service under a service category,

1. Click the icon beside the service category to list the services under them.
2. Hover over the service item to edit. Click the edit icon ✎. The service form for a technician opens where you can add new fields, rearrange the existing fields and edit the default values.
3. Click Save to save the configurations. Similarly, you can edit all the remaining tabs from the service catalog page.

Click Save and Configure Requester button, to configure service request form for requesters. To add tasks, click Save and Add Tasks.

**Deleting Services**

To delete services under a service category,

1. Click the icon beside the service category to list the services under them.
2. Hover over the service item to delete. Click the delete icon ✗. A confirmation dialog appears.
3. Click OK to proceed. The service item is deleted from the list.
Organization Details

Organization Details lets you configure the details of your organization such as, geographic region in which your organization is located, the list of branches, working hours, holiday list and departments. If you have multiple branches across the globe, this information is essential in setting the due date of the requests.

Apart from this, you can set the Incoming and Outgoing E-mail Settings, define Rules to Automate the tickets and define Service Level Agreements to set the due date for the requests.

You can also set certain rules to alert technicians after the completion of a task using Notification Rules. You can set notification rules for the Requests, Problems, Changes and Solutions module.

Organization Details Configurations

The following are the Organization Details configurations,

- **Organization Details**
  Set the details about your organization such as the Name, Logo, Address and Contact Information. This information is displayed in the Purchase Order form.

- **Mail Server Settings**
  Set the Incoming and Outgoing E-mail Sever Settings, configure Spam Filter and option to parse your e-mail tickets using E-mail Command.

- **Regions**
  Configure the various geographic locations of your organization.

- **Sites**
  Configure the various branches in each region.

- **Operational hours**
  Set the working hours of the organization. This is essential in calculating the due date for the request.

- **Holidays**
  Set the holidays during which your firm would remain closed. The holiday list is exclusive of the weekly holidays.

- **Departments**
  Configure the various departments in your organization. The department is essential while adding requesters and technicians since each requester or technician will be associated to a particular department of the organization.

- **Business Rules**
  Define rules to automate the incoming request (via web form and e-mail) and perform actions such as delivering them to groups, assigning status and other request parameters.
- **Service Level Agreements**
  Define rules based on requester, department or priority, to set the due date for the incoming incident requests.

- **Notification Rules**
  Set rules to alert technicians after the completion of a task.

- **Preventive Maintenance Tasks**
  Schedule periodic tasks, such as changing the printer toner or performing a service shutdown, for regular maintenance.
Configure Organization Details

You can configure your organization's details in the ServiceDesk Plus application. This information will be used in various cases. To configure your organization's details:

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Helpdesk block, click the Organization icon. The Organization Details form is displayed.
4. Enter the Name of your organization. You cannot leave the name field empty. The other fields can be empty. But if you have the required information, then enter them as explained in the following steps.
5. The description field can contain information about what your organization specializes.
6. The next block collects the address of your organization. Enter the address details in the relevant fields, such as address, city, postal code, state, and country.
7. If you have a common contact e-mail ID, then enter the same in the E-mail ID field.
8. Enter the phone and fax number, and the URL of your company's web site.
9. You can import the company logo and use that in places where the organization details are being used.
   1. Click Import Image button beside the Company Logo field.
   2. Click the Browse button and choose the image file from the file chooser window and click Open.
   3. Click Import.
10. By default, the Use this image check box is enabled. If you do not wish to use this image, then disable the check box.
11. Click Save.

At a later time, if you wish to edit the information that you entered now, you can do so by following the same procedure explained above.
Mail Server Settings

ServiceDesk Plus allows you to configure the incoming e-mail settings and the outgoing e-mail settings such that it fetches the mails that are sent to the IT help desk team and send notifications/feedback to the technicians, requesters, and vendors.

Incoming Mail Settings

To configure the incoming e-mail settings,

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Helpdesk block, click the Mail Server Settings icon 🌐. The Mail Server Settings page displayed will be as shown in the figure, with the incoming e-mail settings tab selected by default:

4. All the fields marked * are mandatory fields. Enter the server name, user name, password, e-mail address, email type, port, and the time interval in which the mail needs to be fetched periodically. The time period in minutes. The e-mail type is a combo box from which you need to select the value. If you have selected IMAPS then you have an option to enable Transport Layer Security (TLS).
5. Click Save. On successful connection to the server, the success message is displayed.

To start fetching the mails, click the Start Fetching button. Once the mail fetching is started, the Save button in the incoming mail server settings is disabled. If you wish to
change any of the settings, then you need to stop mail fetching, make the changes, save them and then restart the mail fetching.

**Outgoing Mail Settings**

To configure the outgoing mail settings,

1. In the **Email Settings** page, click the **Outgoing** tab. The outgoing mail settings form is displayed as above.
2. Enter the outgoing mail server name / IP address, reply-to e-mail address, and port. These three are the mandatory fields.
3. If there is an alternate server, then enter its name in the **Alternate Server Name / IP Address** field.
4. Enter the name of the sender in the **Sender's Name** field.
5. Choose the e-mail type, which is usually SMTP and SMTPS. By default, the port associated to SMTP is 25 and the port associated to SMTPS is 465.
6. If required, you can enable **Transport Layer Security** (TLS) from the drop down.
7. If your SMTP server for outgoing mails require authentication, then select the check box **Requires Authentication**.
8. Enter the **User Name** and **Password** in the respective fields.
9. Click **Save**.

**Spam Filter**

You can mark all you junk mails into spam by defining filter criteria for the mails. Once you set a criteria say, "Subject contains Out of Office or Spam", then mails matching this criteria will be dropped and no new request will be created out of them. To configure Spam Filter,

1. Click **Spam Filter** tab.
2. Define a rule on selecting Criteria from the drop down list and also mention the Condition.
3. Specify the filter content in the given text field by clicking choose button.
4. Say, if criteria is Sender and condition is then the content can be "mailer-daemon".
5. Click Add to Rules button to add the criteria to the rules and match it with the incoming mails. Specify Match all of the following (And) or Match any of the following (OR) option to match with the rule by selecting any of the radio buttons.
6. Click Save.

E-Mail Command

Currently, when e-mails are received, various fields are set according to business rules. E-mail Command allows the technician to delimit fields in the e-mail, according to which the e-mail can be parsed and corresponding fields can be set.

Consider a scenario where business rules needs to be created for the following criteria:

- To assign Category based on subject:
  1. When Subject contains “Printer”, set Category as “Printers”
  2. When Subject contains “Network”, set Category as “Network”
  3. When Subject contains “Routers”, set Category as “Hardware”
  4. When Subject contains “Switches”, set Category as “Hardware”

- To assign Priority based on subject:
  1. When Subject contains “High Priority”, set Priority as “High”
  2. When Subject contains “Low Priority”, set Priority as “Low”

- To assign Urgency based on subject:
  1. When Subject contains “Urgent”, set urgency as “Urgent”
  2. When Subject contains “High Urgency”, set urgency as “High”

For example, when the subject contains “Printer” and “High Priority” or when the subject contains “Printer” and “Low Priority”, separate business rules have to be written for each criteria. This becomes complicated further when more fields need to be set based on the incoming e-mail. We need to have hundreds of business rules to achieve combinations of several fields and that will complicate the entire business rule section.

Also, consider another scenario where business rules for incoming e-mails are set as follows:

- When Category is “Printer”, Subject contains “Crash” and Priority is “Low”, place in Group “Hardware problems”
Suppose an incoming e-mail has a subject line “Printer Crash” with high priority, then the request field will be set as ‘Category = Printer’ with ‘Priority = Low’ based on the existing business rule.

E-mail command overcomes this complication. Request fields can be defined through an e-mail itself. An incoming e-mail is parsed, and various request fields are set from the e-mail content based on the parsing delimiters.

To configure E-mail Command,

1. In the E-mail Settings page, click on E-mail Command tab. The E-mail Command configuration screen is displayed.
2. Click on the check box Enable E-mail Command to activate the e-mail parsing feature. If this option is not selected, then the incoming e-mail will be handled as a normal mail based on established business rules even if the incoming e-mails contain the parsing string in the subject.
3. In the E-mail Subject contains text box, enter valid subject that determines the e-mails which have to be parsed. E-mails containing this text will be parsed for various fields. Assume the E-mail Subject identifier is given as @@SDP@@, then all e-mails with subject as @@SDP@@ alone will be considered for parsing.
4. Provide any special character (@@, ##, $$, %%, &&, so on) as the Command Delimiter. The field values assigned between these special characters are assigned to the corresponding fields while the requests are created. Assume if the Command Delimiter is @@ and category field needs to be set to Printer, then the email description should contain @@Category=Printer@@.

![E-mail Command Configuration Screen]

E-mail Command can be used to parse the incoming e-mail and to set various request fields (like Category, Status, Priority) from the e-mail content. When Enable E-mail Command is enabled and incoming e-mail subject contains the E-mail Subject contains field value, e-mail content will be parsed and various request fields will be set based on Command Delimiter field value.

**Zoho Corporation**
Notes:

- A request can be created/edited/closed/picked up by a technician through e-mails. Operational string “Operation = AddRequest”, “Operation = EditRequest”, “Operation = CloseRequest” and “Operation = PickupRequest” is used for this purpose.
- To edit, pick up or close a request through e-mail, the corresponding operational string (EditRequest/PickupRequest/CloseRequest) and the RequestId must be present. If not, the e-mail will be processed normally and treated as a new request.
- When a request is edited through an e-mail, the conversation will not be added in the request. Hence attachments and inline images in the e-mail will not be updated in the request. However, the update information will be added in the history.
- If the field name given in the e-mail is not available in ServiceDesk Plus, then parsing will be excluded for that field.
- If there is more than one value present for a particular field in an e-mail, then the last value alone will be taken and others will be discarded.
- Request threads with subject containing the “RequestId” and no operational string (UpdateRequest) will be updated as a normal conversation and a new request will not be created.
- The e-mail sender should have a log in for ServiceDesk Plus for the E-mail Command to happen. This is because, various operations that can be handled by a user to parse an e-mail are defined by the user’s Role. Request authorization (close a request, pick up a request, update a request, accept closure of a request and so on) are set using Roles in ServiceDesk Plus.
- The e-mail sender will be considered as the requester if the requester name is not specified in the e-mail.
- Permissions and Parameters supported:
  - If the e-mail sender is a requester with requester permissions, then the fields that be parsed are limited. A requester can parse only those fields that he can view in the request form while creating a request.
  - If the e-mail sender is a technician with technician permissions, then the fields that can be parsed are same as those fields that he can view in the request form while creating a request.
  - Fields that can be parsed are LEVEL, MODE, PRIORITY, URGENCY, IMPACT, CATEGORY, SUBCATEGORY, ITEM, GROUP, TECHNICIAN, TECHE-MAIL, REQUESTER, REQUESTERE-MAIL, REQUESTID, REQUESTTEMPLATE, REQUESTTYPE, STATUS, SITE, ASSET and additional field label (the field label given in the e-mail must match the field label set in the product)
  - To change the fields that a requester or a technician can parse, go to Admin --> Request Templates (under Helpdesk domain), select Default Template and add or remove the fields.
- The RequestId present in the description of the e-mail it will be given higher precedence over the RequestId present in the subject of the e-mail.
Consider an example:

1. **To create** an e-mail that has to be parsed, the subject of the e-mail should be same as defined in the configurations (E-mail Subject contains), for example, "@@SDP@@" and the content is as follows:

   @@CATEGORY = Printers@@
   @@PRIORITY = High@@
   @@URGENCY = Normal@@
   @@LEVEL = Tier 4@@
   @@MODE = E-mail@@
   @@IMPACT = Affects User@@
   @@GROUP = Network@@

   When the request is created, say with a Request ID 6735352, the fields for the request are set based on the above content from the parsed e-mail.

2. **To edit** this request, say to assign a Technician or a Sub-Category, operational string “OPERATION = EditRequest“ along with the RequestId (or WorkOrderId) and the delimiting fields have to be specified in the e-mail as follows:

   @@OPERATION = EditRequest@@
   @@REQUESTID = 6735352@@
   @@TECHNICIAN = Administrator@@

   This updates the request 6735352 and assigns ‘Administrator’ to the ‘Technician’ field.

3. **To pick up** the request through an e-mail, the technician who has ‘AssigningTechnician’ permission should specify the operational string “PickupRequest” along with the RequestId should be mentioned in the e-mail. The technician can pick up the request only if the request falls under his site.

   @@OPERATION = PickupRequest@@
   @@REQUESTID = 6735352@@

3. **To close** the above request (6735352) through an e-mail, the operational string (CloseRequest) and the Request ID has to be present in the content of the e-mail.

   @@OPERATION = CloseRequest@@
   @@REQUESTID = 6735352@@
Regions

Organizations can have various branches to handle various specialized activities. Such branches can be located at different regions and data from each of these branches need to be maintained in the same place. You can configure the various locations of your branches in the ServiceDesk Plus application.

To open the organization regions configuration page,

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application using user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Organizational Details block, click the Regions icon . The next page displays the available list of regions. You can add, edit, or delete regions.

Add a Region

To add a new region,

1. Click Add New Region link available at the top right corner of the Region list page.
2. In the Add Region form, enter the Region Name. It is mandatory field.
3. Specify brief description about the core activities taking place in the branch in the Description text field.
4. Click Save to save and return to the list view. Click Save and Add New to save and add a new region. At any point, if you do not wish to add the region and would like to get back to the location list, click Cancel.

Edit a Region

To edit an already existing region,

1. In the Region List page, click the edit icon beside the Region Name that you wish to edit.
2. In the Edit Region form, modify the Region name and its Description.
3. Click Save to save the changes. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click Cancel. Even while editing a region, if you wish to add another new region, then click Save and add new button.

Delete Region

1. In the Region List page, click the delete icon beside the Region Name that you wish to delete. A confirmation dialog appears.
2. Click OK to proceed with the deletion. If you do not want to delete the region, then click Cancel.

On deleting a region, the corresponding sites and attributes such as groups, SLA, business rules, holidays and so on is also deleted. If the Region is specified in a module, then the region cannot be deleted from the list.
Sites

If your organization has various regional offices across the globe, then these offices are configured as Sites in ServiceDesk Plus. The purpose of configuring Sites is to maintain a single ServiceDesk Plus installation irrespective of the location, working hours and IT operations executed in the sites. By configuring Sites, you can restrict technicians from viewing requests, problems, changes and assets of certain sites, organize your IT operations across sites and enable prompt handling of requests raised from different sites.

When you get started with ServiceDesk Plus configurations, the Operational Hours, Holidays, Departments, Business Rules and Service Level Agreements configured is considered as the Default Settings. So while adding sites, you have options to either copy these default settings, refer the default settings, or configure separate settings for the site.

Example:

The options – Refer Default Settings and Custom Settings – can be explained better with an example.

Let’s say your head office is in New York, USA and you also have offices in Boston, Washington and Tokyo. The IT operations in the USA region are handled by technicians located in Boston. And the IT operations in Japan are handled by technicians in Tokyo. Assume the office in Tokyo works 6 days a week, while the office in USA region works 5 days a week. The Departments, Business Rules and Service Level Agreements are similar for all the sites. And, you have configured the default settings to suit the USA region.

In ServiceDesk Plus, the offices in New York, Boston, Washington and Tokyo are configured as sites. Since the default settings suit the USA region, you can Refer the Default Settings for the sites – New York, Boston and Washington. When you refer a default setting, the site will not have separate site based configurations i.e., these sites will not be listed in the drop down menu while viewing the settings.

Since the site Tokyo works 6 days a week, you need to customize the operational hours for the site by selecting Custom Settings beside operational hours. The site will be listed in Operational Hours for drop-down box and you can customize the operational hours for the site.

NOTE: Technicians with administrator privilege can add sites in ServiceDesk Plus. The Site Admin does not have the privilege to add sites but he can view, edit and delete his associated sites details.

To access the Sites configuration page,

1. Login to ServiceDesk Plus application using the username and password of the admin user.
2. Click Admin tab in the header pane.
3. On the Helpdesk block, click Sites icon.
Note: The administrator has the privilege to Add/Edit/Delete a site. The Site Admin can only View/Edit/Delete the sites to which he is associated from the Site List page.

Add Site

1. In the Site List view page, click Add New Site link on the right hand side corner. The Add New Site form opens.
2. Enter the Site Name in the text field provided. It is mandatory field.
3. Enter brief information in the Description field about what your organization does in the above mentioned site.
4. Select the Region and the Time Zone of the site from the combo box. The specified time zone is essential to calculate the operational hours for the site. Hence, any request raised in the site can be resolved within its operational hours.
5. Specify the Address of the organization along with City, Postal Code, State and Country.
6. Enter the Contact Information such as E-mail Id, Phone no, Fax no and the Web URL of your organization.
7. Enable any of the following related settings,
   - Refer Default Settings: The site follows the default settings configured in ServiceDesk Plus. Any change made under the default settings is also applied to the site.
     Let's take the same example of the 3 offices in the USA region. Since the default settings are configured to suit the USA region, you just need to refer the default settings to the 3 sites.
   - Copy Default Settings: A separate copy of the default settings is maintained for the site. With this separate site based configuration, you can alter the name of the default settings like the Department – IT Services can be renamed as IT operations in the site configuration. Or you can add additional holidays, business rules, technicians, support groups and service level agreements for the site alone.
     NOTE: Any change made in the default settings, say a new holiday is added in the default list, then the same is reflected in copy default settings.
   - Custom Settings: The site with this setting will neither follow the default setting nor maintain a separate copy of the default setting. You need to customize the configurations for the site.
     Taking the above example about the office in Tokyo that operates 6 days a week unlike the default operational hours that operates 5 days a week. While adding the site, select Custom Settings beside Operational Hours, after which, you can configure the working days for the site – Tokyo in Operational Hours.
8. Click **Save** button to save the site details and return to the list view. Click **Save and add new** button to save and add another site. If you wish to cancel the operation then click **Cancel**.

**Edit Site**

1. From the site list page, click the **edit** icon beside the site which you wish to edit. The Edit Site page opens with the existing details.
2. You can modify all the fields in this page.
3. Click **Save** to save the modified changes and return to the list view.

Even while editing a site, if you wish to add a new site, click Save and Add New button. This updates the site and reopens the Add Site form.

**Delete Site**

If the site is being used by a module, the site cannot be deleted. In turn, the site is grayed (marked inactive) to avoid the further usage of the site. If the site is associated to a Requester, Asset, Request Template or Preventive Maintenance task, then you have an option to associate a different site to these parameters.

To delete a site,

1. Select the site you wish to delete by enabling the check box.
2. Click **Actions** drop down -> **Delete Site(s)** option. A confirmation dialog appears.
3. Click **OK** to proceed.
4. If the Site is associated to a requester, asset, request template or a preventive maintenance task, **Change Site association** pop up appears listing the parameters to which the site is associated.
5. To associate these parameters to a different site, select the site from the drop down. By default, not associate to any site is populated.
6. Click **Associate**. The parameters are associated to the newly selected site. The site to be deleted is marked inactive and will not be populated wherever site is specified.

To bring the site back to active state,

1. Click the **edit** icon beside the site name.
2. From the edit site page, disable **Site not for further usage** check box.
3. Click Save to save the site details and return to the list view.

If the site is not used by any module, the site is removed from the site list view.

**Auto change of site from inactive to active state:**

a. Succeeding an Active Directory import, the grayed out site is automatically changed to the active state.
<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>b.</td>
<td>On performing a CSV Import of Users and assets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c.</td>
<td>Adding and Editing requesters associated to the inactive site through API.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d.</td>
<td>Editing an inactive site through API.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Inactive sites will not be auto activated for the following scenarios:**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a.</td>
<td>Creating requests through E-mail Command for an inactive site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b.</td>
<td>Creating and Editing Requests, Asset, Technician for an inactive site through API.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Operational Hours

You can set the operational hours of your organization situated in various sites. The operational hours for a site depend on the time zone configured for that site. The operational hours that you configure is used while calculating the request due by date and time. To set the organization's operational hours,

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Organizational Details block, click the Operational Hours icon. The Operational Hours form is displayed as shown below,

   ![Operational Hours Form]

4. Select the site from the Operational hours for comb box. By default, the Operational hours for combo box will display Default Settings.

   **Note:** The Site Admin can set the operational hours for the sites to which he is associated. The sites can be selected from the Operational Hours for combo box. The Operational hours for combo box will appear if the site is configured in Admin- Sites.
5. If your organization works round the clock, then select **Round the clock (24 hours)** radio button. If you do not work round the clock then, select the radio button beside **Select Operational Hours**. Specify the working hours of your organization by selecting the **Start Time** and the **End Time** from the drop down boxes.

6. Now, select the days that your organization works by selecting the check boxes provided beside the days of the week.

7. Click **Save**.

You can also view the operational hours of a site by selecting the site from Operational Hours for combo box.

If you have already set the operational hours and wish to modify the same, you still need to follow the same procedure as specified above. But in this case, when you click **Operational Hours** from the **Admin Home** page, it will open the **Operational Hours** form with the details that have been set earlier. You can make the necessary modifications and then click **Save**.
Holidays

You can set the holidays of your organization that is situated in various sites using the **Holidays** option available in the **Admin** page. This has the list of holidays during which the firm would remain closed and is exclusive of the weekly holiday when the firm does not function. You can also set repeated holidays such as, New Years Day, to an organization in a site. Thus by doing so, you need not manually add the holiday every year in the **Holidays** option.

The holiday list along with the operational hours will be used for calculating the expected completion time of a service request, depending on the priority or SLA applicable to that request. To open the holiday configuration page,

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
3. In the **Organizational Details** block, click the **Holidays** icon. This displays the **Default Settings** of the available list of holidays. You can add, view, edit, or delete holidays for a particular site.

   **Note:** The Site Admin can add and view the holidays to the site which he is associated. To view the holidays in a particular site, select the site from the **Holidays for** combo box.

   If the sites are not configured then the **Holidays for** combo box will not appear. To configure the sites refer Sites under Organizational Details block.

Add a Holiday

To add holidays in a site,

1. Select the site for which you want to add the holiday from the **Holidays for** combo box. If the sites is not selected then the holidays gets added under **Default Settings**.
2. Click **Add New Holiday** link available at the top right corner of the holiday list page. This opens the **Add New holiday** form.
3. Select the **Date** on which you want to add the holiday by invoking the calendar icon. This is mandatory field.
4. Enter a brief description of the significance of the holiday in the **Description** text field.
5. If the holiday occurs every year such as, 25th December (Christmas), then enable **Check if this is recurring holiday** check box. This will automatically add the holiday every year for the site.
6. Click **Save**. If you do not wish to add the holiday and would like to get back to the holiday list, click **Cancel**.
Edit a Holiday

1. Select the site for which you want to edit the holiday from the Holidays for combo box. This lists out the holidays for the corresponding site.
2. Click the edit icon beside the holiday Date that you wish to edit.
3. Modify the date and the description of the holiday, and enable/disable the 'check if this is recurring holiday' check box in the Edit Holiday form.
4. Click Save to save the changes. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click Cancel.

Delete Holiday

1. Select the site for which you want to delete the holiday from the Holidays for combo box. This lists out the holidays in that site.
2. Enable the check box beside the holiday Date which you want to delete from the holiday list page.
3. Click the Delete button on the left hand side of the page. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
4. Click OK to proceed with the deletion. If you do not want to delete the holiday, then click Cancel.
Departments

There can be various departments in an organization which can be situated in different sites, and each of these departments has a group of employees managed by a Department Head. In ServiceDesk Plus you can add, edit, or delete the various departments of your organization. These departments are essential while adding requesters and technicians since each requester or technician will be associated to a particular department of the organization.

To open the department configurations,

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Organizational Details block, click the Departments icon. This displays the available list of departments. You can add, edit, or delete departments.

Note: The Site Admin can configure the department in the sites which he/she is associated. The list of departments associated to the site can be viewed by selecting the sites from the Departments for combo box. The Department for combo box will appear if the site is configured in Admin- Sites.

Add Department

To add a department for an organization in a site,

1. Select the site for which you want to add the department from the Departments for combo box. By default, the department gets added under Default Settings.
2. Click Add New Department link available at the top right corner of the Department list page. This opens the Add Department form.
3. Enter the Department Name in the text field. This is mandatory field.
4. Provide a brief Description about the department in the text field provided.
5. The Department Head manages the department and plays a vital role in approving the service request. To select the Department Head, click the icon. The Requester List window pops up. Click on the name of the requester to select the department head.
6. Click Save. At any point, if you do not wish to add the department and would like to get back to the department list from the add department form, click Cancel.

Edit Department

To edit an existing department,

1. Select the site for which you want to edit the department from the Departments for combo box. This lists out the available departments corresponding to the site.
2. Click the edit icon beside the Department Name that you wish to edit. This opens the Edit Department form.
3. Modify the department name and its description.
4. Click **Save** to save the changes. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click **Cancel**.

**Delete Departments**

1. Select the site for which you want to edit the department from the Departments for combo box.
2. Enable the check box beside the department name which you wish to delete from the department list page.
3. Click **Delete** button. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
4. Click **OK** to proceed with the deletion. If you do not want to delete the department, then click **Cancel**.
Business Rules

You can define Business Rules for various sites of your organization. Business Rules enable you to organize the incoming requests (via web form and e-mail) and perform actions such as delivering them to groups, assigning status and other request parameters. Business Rule can be applied to a request when it is created (or received), edited or both. Notification can also be sent to the technicians once the Business Rule is executed.

To open the Business Rule configurations page,

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application with admin username and password.
2. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
3. On the **Helpdesk** block, click the **Business Rule** icon. The resulting page displays the available list of business rules under the Default Settings. You can add, edit, delete or organize business rules of a particular site.

**Note**: The Site Admin can add and view the business rules to the site which he is associated. To view the business rules of a site, select the site from the Business Rules for combo box. If the sites are not configured then the Business Rules for combo box will not appear. To configure the sites refer Sites under Organizational Details block.

Add a Business Rule

To add a Business Rule,

1. Select the site to which you want to add the business rule from the **Business Rules for** drop-down list. By default, the ‘Default Settings’ option is selected.
2. Click **Add New Business Rule** link available at the top right corner of the Business Rules List page.
3. The Add Business Rule form consists of three blocks to be configured namely, **Business Rule Details**, **Criteria and Actions** and **Notification**.

Business Rule Details

The details of the Business Rule are exclusively for the newly added business rule.
1. Specify a unique **Rule Name** in the given text field. It is a mandatory field.

2. The **Site** selected in Business Rules for drop down box is displayed in non-editable text.

3. Provide the content to describe the business rule in the **Description** text field.

4. Business Rule can be executed on a request when it is created via web form (or received via email), edited or both on choosing the options from **Execute when a request is** drop-down list. By default, the 'Created' option is selected.

5. You can disable a Business Rule by selecting **Disable Business Rule** check box. On disabling a Business Rule, the rule will not get executed on any new or edited request. The disabled business rule will be marked in grey in the list view.

6. By default, the execution of the business rule will stop once a rule is applied on a request. To continue execution of successive business rules even after a business rule is applied on a request, select **Turn on Cascade Execution** check box.

7. By default, when a business rule is applied, the request values will be changed with the values in the business rule only if the request value is empty. If the request value is not empty, the business rule value will not be applied. To override the request values with the values in the business rule enable **Override request values with Business Rule values**.

**Example:** If the **Priority** in a request is set to 'High' and the **Actions Set** in the business rule is 'Set Priority to Low', then the priority is automatically set to 'Low' when the business rule is applied.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Note:</strong></th>
<th>Bulk actions such as delete, disable/enable business rules, turn on/off cascade execution can be performed on a business rule by selecting the check box beside the business rule and click <strong>Actions</strong> drop down button.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>To turn on/off cascade execution to a business rule from the list view,</strong></td>
<td><strong>click the icon</strong> beside the business rule. A confirmation message appears. Click <strong>Ok</strong> to continue. The icon will be grayed if the cascade execution is discontinued.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Criteria and Actions**

Under this block, define the rules and criteria that need to be satisfied by the incoming request.
1. **Select the Criteria** and **Condition** from the respective drop-down list, and then the individual values that need to be matched by clicking the **Choose** button. The values from the database for those particular parent criteria that you chose from the drop down list opens. Choose the values you want and click **Ok**.

**Example:** If you want to match the requester name John, then select **Requester Name** in the Select Criteria drop down box. Now select the condition **is** or **is not** from the drop down list. The list varies for each criterion. Click **Choose** button to open the list of requesters in a pop-up window. Select the requester name from the list and click **Ok**. For multiple selection, press **Shift** or **Ctrl** key while selecting the names. The selected names appears in the text box just beside the choose button.

2. Click **Add to Rules** to add the defined rule to the rules table.

3. By default, the radio button **Match ALL of the following is selected**. If you do not want all of them to be checked but if it is enough if any one of the rules are matched, then select the radio button **Match ANY of the following**.

4. After defining the rules, you need to define the actions that need to be performed on the request matching the criteria. Choose the action from the **Choose Action** drop down list.

5. Click **Choose** button to select the values for the chosen action.

**Example:** If the action you had chosen was to **Place in Group**, then click the Choose button to display the list of groups available in the
corresponding site. Select the group to which the request has to be placed and click Ok.
6. Click Add to add the action in the actions table.

**Notification**

You can send Email and SMS notification to technicians once a business rule is applied.

**Caution:** Configure Mail Server Settings before enabling Notification.

To enable Email notification,

- Select the check box beside Email. Click Add to select the list of technicians from Select Assign to Technicians pop up window. Click OK to add the technicians.

To enable SMS notification,

- Select the check box beside SMS. Click Add to select the list of technicians from Select Assign to Technicians pop up window. Click Ok to add the technicians.

To edit the Email Template,

- Click Edit Email Template link to open the email template form. Make the required changes in the Subject and Message text field. Click Ok.

Click Save. If you want to add more than one business rule, then click Save and Add New. At any point, if you do not wish to add the business rule and would like to get back to the business rules list from the add business rule form, click Cancel.

**Edit a Business Rule**

To edit an existing business rule,

1. In the Business Rules List page, click the edit icon beside the Business Rule Name that you wish to edit.
2. In the **Edit Business Rule** form, you can modify all the fields mentioned in the add business rule form.

3. To edit the **Match the below criteria** set, click the **edit** icon beside the individual criteria. The respective selection window is opened in a separate pop-up. You can choose more values or remove a few values by de-selecting them.

4. You can also delete criteria completely. To delete criteria, click the delete icon beside the individual criteria.

5. In the actions to be performed, you can add new actions, edit or delete the existing actions.

6. Click **Save** to save the changes performed. At any point you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click **Cancel**. Even while editing a business rule, if you wish to add another new business rule, then click **Save and Add New** button.

---

**Delete Business Rule**

1. From the **Business Rule List** page, enable the check box beside the **Rule Name** you wish to delete.
2. Click **Actions** drop down button, and select the **Delete** option. A confirmation dialog opens.
3. Click **OK** to proceed with the deletion. If you do not wish to delete the business rule, then click **Cancel**.

---

**Organize Business Rules**

Organizing the business rules decide the order in which the rule is applied on the incoming request. You can organize the business rule to appear in a particular order in the list view,

1. Select the site for which you wish to rearrange the order of the business rule from the **Business Rules for** combo box.
2. Click **Organize Business Rules** link at the top right hand corner of the Business Rules List view page. A pop-up window opens displaying the list of available business rules in the order that is appearing in the list view.
3. Select a business rule, and click **Move up** or **Move Down** button beside the list.
4. Click **Save**.
Service Level Agreements

You can have Service Level Agreements (SLAs) defined for intra-organization service provided by the IT help desk team. These SLAs help evaluating the efficiency, effectiveness, and responsiveness of your help desk team. The SLAs can be defined for each individual, or departments, or workstations in a site. The priority for an incoming request is automatically set if the request is governed by an SLA rule. Also, if the request is not attended and resolved within the time specifications of the SLA, then you can set the escalation rules.

To open the SLA configurations page,

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application with admin username and password.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Helpdesk block, click the Service Level Agreement icon. The SLA list page opens. You can add, edit, or delete SLAs.
4. By default, all SLA based mail escalations will be enabled. If you wish to disable the escalation click Disable Escalation button.
5. By default, there are four SLAs set namely, High, Medium, Normal, Low SLAs. You can also add more SLAs to the list.

**Note:** The Site Admin can configure the SLA for the sites to which he is associated by selecting the site from the Service Level Agreement for combo box. The list of all SLAs corresponding to the selected site gets displayed. If the sites are not configured then the Service Level Agreement combo box will not appear. To configure the sites refer Admin- Sites.

Add a Service Level Agreement

To add an SLA,

1. Select the site to which you want to add the SLA from the Service Level Agreement for combo box. By default, the 'Default Settings' option is selected.
2. Click Add New SLA link at the top right corner of the SLA list page.
3. In the Add New SLA form, specify the SLA Name in the text field provided. It is a mandatory field.
4. The Site selected in Service Level Agreement for drop down box is displayed in non-editable text.
5. If required, you can provide a corresponding Description for the SLA.
6. In the SLA rules block, set the rules and criteria for the SLA. By default, the radio button **Match ALL of the following is selected**. If you do not want all of them to be checked but if it is enough if any one of the rules are matched, then select the radio button **Match ANY of the following**.

7. **Select the Criteria** and **Condition** from the respective text box, and then choose the individual values that need to be matched by clicking on the **choose** button. The values from the database for those particular parent criteria that you chose from the drop down list opens. Choose the values you want and click **Ok**.

   **Example:** If you want to match the requester name John, then select **Requester Name** in the combo box. Now click **Choose** button, to open the list of requesters in a pop-up window. Select the requester name from the list and click **Select**. For multiple selection, press **Shift** or **Ctrl** key while selecting the names. The selected names will appear in the text field just before the choose button.

8. Click **Add to Rules** to add the defined rule to the **Rules Set**.

9. Set the **Response Time** and the **Resolution Time** in terms of days, hours and minutes.

   **Note:** The Response Time is the initial response sent out by the technician to the requester for a request. Automatic replies from Service Desk Plus will not be counted as a response. The specified response time should be less that the resolution time.

10. If you want this duration to override the operational hours, the select the check box beside **Should be resolved irrespective of operational hours**. By selecting this, you will be overriding the operational hours of your organization.
and the due by time will be calculated from the creation time without taking into
consideration the holidays and operational hours.

11. The request can be escalated to other technicians when the request is not
responded or resolved within the specified time. There are two blocks of
escalations, one for the Response Time and the other for the Resolution Time.

### Response Time:

There is only one level of escalation if the response time elapses.

- To enable escalation, select the check box beside Enable Level 1
  notification.
- Click **Choose** button to choose the technicians to whom the SLA violation
  should be escalated.
- You can choose to escalate before the violation or after the violation. If you
  wish to escalate the request before the SLA violation then click **Escalate Before**
  option. Specify the number of days before the SLA violation is about to happen in
  the text box. This is to escalate to the technician about the onset of the violation.
  You can also specify the time of escalation.
- Similarly, click **Escalate After** option to escalate after the violation.
  Specify the number of days after the SLA violation has occurred in the text
  box. You can also specify the time of escalation.

### Resolution Time:

There are 4 levels of escalation if the specified resolution time elapses.

- To enable escalation, select the check box beside Enable Level 1
  notification.
- Click **Choose** button to choose the technicians to whom the SLA violation
  should be escalated.
- You can choose to escalate before the violation or after the violation. If you
  wish to escalate the request before the SLA violation then click **Escalate Before**
  option. Specify the number of days before the SLA violation is about to happen in
  the text box. This is to escalate to the
technician about the onset of the violation. You can also specify the time of escalation.

iv. Similarly, click **Escalate After** option to escalate after the violation. Specify the number of days after the SLA violation has occurred in the text box. You can also specify the time of escalation.

9. Click the **Save** button to save the SLA and return to the list view. If you want to add more than one SLA, then click **Save and Add New**.

At any point, if you do not wish to add the SLA and would like to get back to the SLA list from the add SLA form, click **Cancel**. Clicking the **View List** link on the top right corner of the add SLA form will also take you to the SLA list view.

**Edit a Service Level Agreement**

To edit an existing SLA,

1. Select the site of the SLA you wish to edit from the **Service Level Agreement for** combo box. The list of all the SLA corresponding to that site is displayed.
2. Click the edit icon beside the **SLA Name**.
3. In the **Edit SLA** form, you can modify all the fields mentioned in the add SLA form.
4. Click **Save** to save the changes. At any point you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click **Cancel**. Even while editing an SLA, if you wish to add another new SLA, then click **Save and Add New** button.

**Delete Service Level Agreement**

1. Select the site of the SLA you wish to delete from the **Service Level Agreement for** combo box. The list of SLA corresponding to the site gets displayed.
2. Enable the check box beside the SLA. Click the **Delete** button. A confirmation dialog appears.
3. Click **OK** to proceed with the deletion. If you do not want to delete the SLA, then click **Cancel**.

**Organize Service Level Agreements**

Organizing the SLAs decide the order in which the SLA is applied on the incoming request. You can organize the SLA to appear in a particular order in the list view,

1. Select the site for which you wish to rearrange the order of the SLA from the **Service Level Agreement for** combo box.
2. Click **Organize SLA** link available above the list of SLAs in the **SLA List** view. A pop-up window is opened with the list of available SLAs in the order that is appearing the list view.
3. Select an SLA, and click **Move up** or **Move Down** button beside the list.
4. Click **Save**.
Notification Rules

ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus allows you to send notifications to requesters and technicians through notification rules. The notifications can be of two types: email and SMS. These notification modes can be set across various modules of the application, such as requests, problem, change and solution. Any default actions that you might want to perform when the state of any item changes can also be defined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
<th>For all modules, notification will not be sent to the logged in technician.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Say, for notification like, &quot;Alert Technician by Email when a request is assigned.&quot;, if a technician picks up a request then a notification will not be sent to technician.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Similarly, for notifications like &quot;Alert the following technicians by email when a new request is created&quot;, notification will not be sent to the logged in technician if he is included in the notify list.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Further you can also customize the email template of the notification and prevent unwanted acknowledgements or notifications being sent to requesters/technicians through Junk Mail notification.

To set the notification rules and the message template,

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Helpdesk block, click the Notification Rules icon under Helpdesk block.
4. By default, all notifications are sent in Rich text format. Clicking on Plain text formatting button will switch all the notifications in Plain text format.
5. Click on the appropriate tabs to configure for request, problem, change and solution modules.
6. To enable or disable any of the notification rules, select or de-select the check box beside each of the rules.
7. For certain notifications you need to select the technicians who need to be notified when a new request is created.
   - Click Choose button.
   - Select the technicians from the list of technicians is displayed in a pop-up window.
   - For multiple selections, press Shift or Ctrl key and then select the technicians.
   - Click OK.
   - The selected technicians get listed in the text box beside the Choose technician(s) button.
8. Click Save.

Customize the Message Template
You can customize the message template for each of the notifications.

1. Click **Customize Template** link beside the notification for which you wish to modify the content that is being sent.

2. You can change the subject and the message content by typing the text of your choice and also adding other variables that you wish to display as a part of the subject or message content. To add more variables, just click the corresponding variable from the list box beside the respective field.

**Junk Mail Notification**

Junk Notification Filters prevents unwanted acknowledgements or notifications being sent to requesters / technicians when an information mail reaches the help desk. These mails are not requests and do not require any action to be taken.

Say, acknowledgement email like Out of Office replies, notifications that bounce back when the mail destination is not reachable (because of a wrong mail address) can be stopped from being acknowledged or notified.
To define a Junk Mail Notification,

1. Click **Edit Criteria** link.
2. Define a rule by select the criteria and condition from the drop down combo list.
3. Click **Choose**.
4. Enter the value in the field provided. Click **Save**.
5. Click **Add to Rule**.
6. You can either match all of the following (AND) or match any of the following (OR) criteria. Select an appropriate radio button.
7. Click **Save**.

You can also edit or delete the criteria on clicking the appropriate icon.
Preventive Maintenance

You can create a Preventive Maintenance Task for regular maintenance such as changing the printer toner every month or perform a regular service shutdown. Creating a preventive maintenance is a two-step process -

1. Creating a Task Template
2. Task Scheduling

To schedule a preventive maintenance task,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Helpdesk block, click the Preventive Maintenance Tasks icon. This opens the Configuration Wizard page.
4. Click the Preventive Maintenance Tasks link at the left side of the page under the HelpDesk block. This opens Request Maintenance Tasks page.
5. Click Add New PM Task link. This opens Add Preventive Maintenance Task page.

Create a Task Template

1. The Task Template opens to view the "Default Incident Template" form configured in Incident Template. To schedule a request using the templates, select the template from Change Template drop down.
2. In the default incident template, select the Request Type from the combo box. Request Type denotes the type of request sent by the requester to the help desk team.
3. Select the Status of the request, the Mode of request submission, Level and Priority of the request from the drop down box.
4. Also, select the Impact, Impact Details and Urgency of the request from the corresponding drop down box.
5. In the Requester Details block, specify the Requesters Name, Contact Number, Job Title and Department of the requester.
6. You can select the requester from the list of users configured in the application. Click requester lookup icon beside the requester name field. The Requester List window pops up.
To select a requester from the list, click the hyper-linked requester **Name**. The requester name and details associated with the requester are populated in the requester details block.

1. If the requester list is huge, then click on the **Alphabets** at the top of the page to view only a selected group of requesters.
2. Conduct an instant search for the requester by entering the search string in **Search Requester List** field and click **Go**.
3. If you are aware of any requesters details such as name, login name, department, email and so on, then conduct a column-wise search using the search icon 📚.
4. In addition, add new requester directly by clicking the **Add Requester** button from the requester list page.
5. Also, you have an option to edit the requester details directly from this page. Click the **edit** icon 📝 beside the requester name to perform the edit operation.

8. The assets associated to the requester are populated in the **Asset** drop down. Select the **Asset** from the drop down. If the issue is caused by a network resource such as a router or an access point, then click the icon 🌐 and select the asset.

---

**Zoho Corporation**
In **Select Assets** pop-up window, you can filter the assets by selecting the **Type of assets** such as, access point, routers, workstation and so on, from the drop-down. Selecting **All Assets** from drop-down menu lists all the assets available in the application, irrespective of the asset type.

9. By default, if the location of the requester is configured in the application, then the same is populated in the **Site** field. In certain scenarios, the requester may raise a request from one site to a problem in another site. In this case, the site in which the issue persists should be selected.

10. On selecting the site, the groups corresponding to the site gets populated under the **Group** field. The request is routed to the particular group by selecting the Group name from the drop down.

11. On selecting the Group, technicians associated with the Group alone are listed in the **Technician** drop down list. Select a **Technician** to handle the request from the drop down.

12. Select the **Service Category** which is effected by the incident from the drop down.

13. Select the relevant category under which the request is classified from **Category** drop down box.

14. Also, select the relevant **Sub-Category** and **Item** from the drop down box.
15. Specify the subject line to be displayed while sending the request in the **Subject** text field. The subject line is displayed as the request title and is a mandatory field.

16. Provide a detailed description with any other associated details relevant to the request in the **Description** text box.

17. To attach a file to the task template click **Attach File** button to attach files.

18. Click **Next>>** button for Task Scheduling.

**Task Scheduling**

To schedule a task, select the time frame from the listed options:

**Daily Schedule:** To run a daily maintenance task, click **Daily Schedule** radio button.

1. Select the **Time** at which the maintenance task should be scheduled from the combo box.
2. Select the **Date** on when the maintenance task should be scheduled from the **Calendar** button.
3. Save the details.

**Weekly Schedule:** To run a weekly maintenance task, click **Weekly Schedule** radio button.

1. Select the day of the week by enabling the corresponding check box beside the day of the week.
2. Else if you wish to schedule on all days of the week, then click **Everyday** check box.
3. Select the **Time** frame to schedule the task from the combo box.
4. Save the details.

**Monthly Schedule:** To run a monthly maintenance task, click **Monthly Schedule** radio button.

1. Select the month to run the task by enabling the check box beside **Every Month**.
2. Select the **Date** on when the task should be scheduled from the combo box.
3. Select the **Time** at which the task should be scheduled from the combo box.
4. Save the details

**Periodic Schedule:** To run a periodic maintenance task, click **Periodic schedule** radio button.

1. Specify the day (s) in the given text field to schedule the maintenance task. i.e after every specified nth day the maintenance task will be executed.
2. Save the details.

**One Time Schedule:** To run a one-time maintenance task, click **One Time Scheduling** radio button.

1. Select the **Date & Time** on when the maintenance task should be executed.
2. Save the details.

**For Example:**

If you wish to schedule a monthly task to change the printer cartridges,

1. Select **Monthly Schedule** radio button.
2. Select the check box **every month**.
3. Choose the **date** from the combo box. Ex: 3rd of every month.
4. Select the **time** from the combo box. Ex: 1500 hrs.
5. **Save** this schedule. A task to change cartridge will be sent to you every month on 3rd at 1500 hrs. helping you to complete the regular maintenance task in advance without any request sent from the users.
User Management

For making ServiceDesk Plus available and usable for all your users, you need to add Requesters and Technicians. The user information can be imported, if located in Active Directory or LDAP server, or can be manually added in the application. Each user accessing the help desk tool is assigned with Roles to execute specific tasks in the application. This enables the requesters to login to the Self-Service Portal to check the status of the requests reported by them, submit requests, and search the Knowledge Base online.

Support Groups enables you to classify your technicians into various support teams. This facilitates the incoming requests to be categorized and assigned to the specific group respectively.

With Technician Auto Assign, you don’t have to reply on Business Rules to assign technicians to requests. The Technician Auto assign follows the Round Robin or Load Balancing methods, and based on the availability of the technicians, the requests are assigned.

Apart from this, the User Management block consists of User - Additional Fields which help you add additional fields in the requester and technician form. And User Groups to restrict certain users to view service items, solutions, announcements and request template.
Roles

Each technician accessing the help desk tool will have a set of permissions to execute specific tasks in the application. These access permissions are termed as Roles in ServiceDesk Plus. Roles are defined based on the various modules in the application.

The Administrator has the privilege to create multiple roles and assign it to technicians based on the requirement. You can also view the list of technicians assigned to a particular role from the Role List View page.

Note: Please note that Roles can be assigned to technicians alone. The Roles for requesters are pre-defined and hence cannot be configured.

To access Roles Configuration Wizard:

1. Login to ServiceDesk Plus application using the Username and Password of a ServiceDesk Plus administrator.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In Users block, click Role icon. The role list view page is displayed.

Role List View page

The Roles List View page displays the list of default roles available in the application. You can perform actions such as, adding roles, editing and deleting roles, and viewing technicians assigned to a role.

The list of technicians assigned to a particular role can be viewed from the Role List View page by clicking View Technicians configured with this role icon. This makes it feasible for the administrator to assign access permissions to technicians. To know more on viewing technicians assigned to a role, refer Viewing Technicians assigned to a Role.
Default Roles

The default roles (also known as **System Roles**) are pre-defined. The roles and their description is given in the tabular column below,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roles</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AERemote Control</td>
<td>Role to perform <strong>Remote Control</strong> on workstations located remotely. This role should be combined with a role providing full control permission over the assets module.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable CMDB</td>
<td>Role to access the CMDB module. If a technician is provided with this role alone, then he would be able to view the Assets and CMDB module. Apart from viewing the relationship map in CMDB module, he would also be able to <strong>Import CIs from a CSV file</strong>. If the technician is provided with Asset module permissions like add, edit and delete, then the same operations can be performed in the CMDB module for the CIs. To add attributes and relationships, the technician should be provided with add and edit permission over the assets module. Technician, without SDAdmin role, would not be able to setup the Configuration Item Types and Relationship Types in the Admin module.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDAdmin</td>
<td>Role given to the administrator. The administrator has access over all the modules in the application. The administrator alone has the privilege to access the <strong>Admin module</strong> which is the key to operate the application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDChange Manager</td>
<td>Role to access the entire <strong>Change module</strong> and perform operations such as adding change, editing, deleting and assigning change to technicians. The SDChange Manager alone has the privilege to approve/reject a change. The <strong>Dashboard</strong> display widgets related to Change module such as, <strong>Change by Type</strong>, <strong>Approved Changes</strong> and <strong>Unapproved Changes</strong>. Technicians with this role can also view only their schedule in <strong>Schedule calendar</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDCo-ordinator</td>
<td>Role to access the entire <strong>Request module</strong> and perform actions such as, creating incident/service requests, editing, deleting and performing all the actions over the requests. The <strong>Dashboard</strong> display widgets related to Requests module such as, <strong>Requests by Technicians</strong>, <strong>Open Requests by Priority</strong>, <strong>SLA Violation by Priority</strong>, <strong>Unassigned and Open Requests</strong>, <strong>SLA Violated requests</strong> and <strong>Requests Approaching SLA Violation</strong>. Technicians with this role can also view the <strong>Technician Availability Chart</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Zoho Corporation**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roles</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SDGuest</td>
<td>Role to access the application from self service portal. Technicians/Requesters with this role can only add requests and view solutions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDReport</td>
<td>This role, by default, provides permission to create and schedule survey reports alone. This role when combined with another role, allows the technician to access reports based on the modules enabled in the other role.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDSiteAdmin</td>
<td>If Sites are configured in the application, the SDSite Admin role provides full control permission over his/her associated sites. The Site Administrator can configure all the Admin configurations pertaining to his/her site alone.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The above seven default roles cannot be deleted. However, SDSiteAdmin Role can be edited to suit your organization’s needs.

**Contents**

- Add a Role
- Edit a Role
- Viewing Technicians Assigned to a Role
- Delete a Role

**Add a Role**

To add a role,

1. Click the **Add New Role** link.
2. In the Add Role form, enter a unique name for the role in **Role Name** field. The Role Name is a mandatory field.
3. Enter a brief description about the role in the **Description** field.
4. Set the **Access Permissions** for the role by selecting the check boxes beside the access levels defined for each module of the application.

**Access Permissions**

The following are the access permissions for the eight modules in the application:
**Access Permissions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>View</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Control</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**View**

View permission enables the technician to only view the selected module. They cannot perform any further operation.

**Add**

Add permission allows the technician to perform Add operation for the selected module. On selecting the Add option for a module, the View permission check box is automatically enabled.

*Note:* If you have selected **Add** check box for request module, then the Add option under **Advanced Permission - Request module** is automatically enabled. Similarly, if Add check box is selected for purchase module, then the Add option under Advanced Permission - Purchase module is also enabled.

**Edit**

Edit permission enables the technician to perform Edit operation for the selected module. The technician cannot perform Add or Delete operation. However, on selecting the Edit option for a module, the View permission check box is automatically enabled.

*Note:* If you have selected **Edit** check box for request module, then the Edit option under **Advanced Permission - Request module** is automatically enabled. Similarly, if Edit check box is selected for asset module, then the Edit option under Advanced Permission - Assets module is also enabled.

**Delete**

Delete permission allows the technician to perform Delete operation for the selected module. The technician cannot perform Add nor Edit operation. However, on selecting the Delete option for a module, the View permission check box is automatically enabled.

*Note:* If you have selected **Delete** check box for request module, then the Delete option under **Advanced Permission - Request module** is automatically enabled.

**Full Control**

Selecting full control check box for a module automatically enables View, Add, Edit and Delete check box for that module. Full control allows the technician with full access over the selected module.

If the selected module has Advanced Permissions, then those options are enabled automatically.

*Note:* If an action is disabled in Advanced Permission, say, Adding Requesters under Request module, then Full Control permission for request module gets automatically disabled.

**Example:** If you wish to provide full control permissions over the requests, assets, contract and solutions module, then select **Full Control** check box beside these modules. This will automatically enable all the operations of the corresponding modules.
5. The access permissions for modules Requests, Purchase and Assets are further categorized and defined under **Advanced Permission**.

**Request FGA (Fine Grained Authorization):**

Set the advanced permission for **Add**, **Edit** and **Delete** operations by enabling any of the following check boxes.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Advanced Permissions</strong></th>
<th><strong>Description</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adding/Editing Request Task</td>
<td>Permission to Add/Edit the request tasks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding Requesters</td>
<td>Permission to add new requesters on the fly while creating a new requests/problem/change. Adding requesters without this permission pops up an error message stating &quot;Requester Does not Exist&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resolving Request</td>
<td>Permission to change a request status to Resolved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disabling Stop Timer</td>
<td>Permission to change the status of a request to Onhold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merging Requests</td>
<td>Permission to merge two or more requests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closing Request</td>
<td>Permission to change the status of a request to Closed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modifying Due Time</td>
<td>Permission to change the Due By Time and also the First Response Time of a request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modify Resolution</td>
<td>Permission to add/edit a resolution for a request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Re-opening Request</td>
<td>Permission to change the status of the request to Open from the previous state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assigning Technicians</td>
<td>Permission to assign/reassign requests to technicians.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing Requester</td>
<td>Permission to edit the requesters name while viewing the request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deleting Others Notes</td>
<td>Permission to edit/delete notes added by other users/technicians. If the option is disabled, then the technician can delete the notes added by him/her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deleting Others Time Entry</td>
<td>Permission to delete the Work Order details entered by other technicians. If the option is disabled, then the technician can only edit/delete his/her Work Order Entry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deleting Request Task</td>
<td>Permission to delete the request tasks of a request.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Scan FGA (Fine Grained Authorization):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Advanced Permissions</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scan Now</td>
<td>Permission to scan workstations from the workstation details page.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Purchase FGA (Fine Grained Authorization):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Advanced Permissions</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adding New Product</td>
<td>Permission to add new products while creating a purchase order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding New Vendor</td>
<td>Permission to add new vendors while creating a purchase order.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** For instance, if all actions under Advanced Permission Request - Edit are disabled, then the technician is allowed other edit permissions such as editing the request type, status, mode, level, urgency, priority, impact and category of the request.

6. You can also choose to restrict technicians from viewing the requests, problems, changes and assets in the application. To do this, select the corresponding radio button in **Technicians allowed to view**,
   - **All**: The technician can view the requests, problems, changes and assets for all the configured sites.
   - **All in associated Site**: The technician can view the requests, problem, changes and assets for his/her associated sites alone. To associate sites to a technician refer Technician.
   - **All in Group & assigned to him [Requests only]**: The technician can view only the requests assigned to his/her associated group, and also the requests that are assigned to him/her.
   - **Assigned to him [Requests only]**: The technician can view only the requests assigned to him/her alone.

**Example:** A site has two groups, say Group1 and Group2. Adam is a technician associated to Group1 with the privilege to view requests All in group & assigned to him. Adam can view all the requests in Group1 and the requests assigned to him. He has the privilege to re-assign the requests to other technicians in his associated sites but once this is executed, the request will not be visible to Adam.
NOTE: Please note that the technician has permission to view Requests, Problems, Changes and Assets only if the View permission for these modules is enabled under Access Permissions.

7. You can also provide permission to approve solutions by enabling the check box beside Technician allowed to Approve solution. The technician assigned with this role will be able to approve solutions.
8. Click Save button. The role is displayed in the list view page. If you want to add another role, click Save and Add New button.

At any point, if you decide not to add the new role, then click Cancel to get back to the role list. Click View List link to go back to the role list view page.

Edit a Role

To edit an existing role,

1. In the Role List page, click the edit icon beside the role name that you want to edit.
2. In the Edit Role form, you can modify the name of the role, description, and the permissions associated with the role.
3. Click Save to save the changes. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click Cancel.

While editing a role, if you wish to add a new role, then click Save and add new button.

Viewing Technicians Assigned to a Role

To view technicians assigned to a role,

1. In the Role List page, click View Technicians configured with this Role icon.
2. The Role to Technicians pop up appears listing the number of technicians configured with this role. The names of the technicians are also displayed.

![Image of Role To Technicians pop up](image-url)
Deleting Role

1. In the Role List page, click the delete icon beside the role name that you want to delete. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
2. Click OK to proceed with the deletion. If you do not want to delete the role, then click Cancel.
3. If technicians are assigned with the role, then the Technician List is displayed in a popup window.
4. You can notify the technician by selecting the technician and clicking Send Notification check box. The e-mail address of the technician appears in the To filed. You can add CC recipients for this notification, if required. Enter the Subject and Description. Click OK. The notification is sent to the technician.
User - Additional Fields

While adding new requester or technician, you might want to record additional information about the users apart from the preset fields. The User - Additional Fields lets you configure any number of additional fields that would appear in requester or technician forms, or common fields for both requester and technician.

To access User - Additional Fields configuration wizard,

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of a ServiceDesk Plus administrator.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Users block, click the User - Additional Fields icon.

By default, the User - Additional Field list view displays the list of Common Additional Fields that are configured in the application. To view the Requester Additional Fields list, select Requester Additional Fields option from Filter by Type drop-down menu. Similarly, if you want to view the Technician Additional Field list, select Technician Additional Field option.

Adding Custom Fields

Say for instance, you want to configure additional fields that should appear in the requester as well as the technician forms i.e., Common Additional Fields. To add the custom fields,

1. In Filter by type drop-down menu, select Common Additional Fields option. The list of Common Additional Fields configured in the application is displayed.
2. Click Add Field button.
3. In the Add Field form, select the type of field. The Field Type is Text, Numeric and Date/Time Fields. The Text Fields are of 3 types namely,
   - Single-line Text Fields: A Single-line text field allows you to add just a text field.
   - Multi-line Text Field: The Multi-line text field allows you to add a text box where a lengthy description can be added
   - Pick List Fields: A Pick List allows you to add a list menu from which you can select.

To add items for the pick list, enter the value in the text filed and click Add Item. The value will get added to the list below. To select the default selected value of the list, click on the value in the list.
4. Enter a unique name for the additional field in the Field Name text field.
5. If you have selected Single-line or Multi-line text fields, then you can enter Default Value. The default value is displayed in the new requester/technician form and can be edited, if required.

   **NOTE:** Please note that you cannot enter default values for Date/Time fields.

6. Enter brief description about the field in the Description text field.
7. Click Save button. The additional fields appear in the List view of the selected Filter by type.

   **NOTE:** If you want to add additional fields for requester, then select Requester Additional Fields option from Filter by type drop-down menu, and follow the steps given above. Similarly, if you want to add additional fields for technician, then select Technician Additional Fields option.

### Editing Custom Fields

1. In the User - Additional Fields List view, select the filter type under which you want to edit the additional fields.
2. Click Edit icon beside the Field Name to edit. The Add Field form is displayed with values filled while adding the field.
3. Edit the fields in the form.
4. Click Update button.

### Deleting Custom Fields

1. In the User - Additional Fields List view, select the filter type under which you want to delete the additional fields.
2. Click **Delete** icon beside the Field Name. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **OK** to proceed. The additional field is deleted from the list.

**NOTE:** Please note that while deleting the additional fields, the value entered in the new requester or technician form will be lost.
Requesters

You can add, edit, or remove requesters from ServiceDesk Plus application and also provide them with login permissions to access the self-service portal.

To open the requester configuration page:

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application with the user name and password of a ServiceDesk Plus administrator.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Users block, click the Requesters icon. The next page displays the available list of requesters. You can add, edit, or delete requesters.

Add Requester

There are three ways through which you can add requesters in the application

- Importing requesters from Active Directory
- Import from CSV
- Add New Requester from the application

Adding Requesters from the application

1. Click Add New Requester link from the Requester List page. This opens the Add Requester form
2. In the Personal Details block, enter the Full Name and Employee ID of the technician. The name is a mandatory field. Specify any relevant information about the requester in the Description text field.
3. In the contact information block, enter a valid e-mail ID. If the requester has a phone and a mobile number, you can enter the same in the space provided for entering these values.
4. Specify the department details such as, Site and the corresponding Department Name to which the requester belongs from the combo box. The requester has an option to view, only his requests, all his department requests or all the requests in the site to which he is associated. Select the options from the Requester allowed to view combo box. Specify the Job Title of the requester in the field provided.
5. If you have added any organization-specific fields for the new requester form, those will be available under the Additional Requester Details block. Enter the relevant information.
6. In the Self-Service Access Details block, enter the Login Name and Password, if you wish to provide self-service access to the requester. Enter the password again in the Re-type Password field.
7. If the requester is associated to a domain then select the Domain from the drop down list.
8. Certain requesters can also approve purchase order in an organization. Upon enabling the check box adjacent to Purchase Order Approvers, a link is sent to the requester to accept or reject the PO. Also, set the Approver Limit within which the requester can approve the PO.
9. You can also provide requester with the privilege to approve Service Requests raised in the application. Enable the check box beside Service Request Approver.
10. Click Save. If you want to add more than one requester then, click Save and add new button.

At any point if, you decide not to add the new requester, then click Cancel to get back to the requester list. Clicking the View List link on the top right corner of the add requester form will also take you to the requester list view.

**Import Requesters from Active Directory**

You can also import requesters from an active directory. To import requesters from active directory

1. Click Import from Active Directory link in the Requester List page. The Import From Active Directory window pops up.
2. From the list of domains that are listed in the Domain Name combo box, select the domain name in which the active directory from which you wish to import is installed. If the other details such as domain controller name, user name, and password have already been entered in the Domain scan page, then that will be populated automatically. Else enter the name of the domain controller in the Domain Controller Name field, login name and password in the corresponding fields.
3. Select the Fields for Import from the active directory by enabling the check box. The fields name configured in Active Directory can be specified beside the corresponding text fields. The unselected fields are not imported.
4. Click Import Now!. The import wizard displays the various Organizational Units (OUs) available in that domain. Choose the specific OU from which you wish to import users by selecting the check box beside it.
5. Click Start Importing. Once the import is complete, the data on how many records were added, how many overwritten, and how many failed to import will be displayed.

**Import Requester from CSV (Comma Separated Value) Files**

You can also add requesters by importing from CSV files. To import requesters from CSV file

**Step 1: Locate the CSV file**

1. Click Import from CSV link in the Requester List page. The Import Wizard opens in a pop-up window.
2. Click the Browse button in the wizard.
3. Select the CSV file in the file chooser window and click Open.
4. Click Next.

**Step 2: Customize Mapping**

1. The CSV column names are populated in the select boxes beside each label. Map the ServiceDesk Plus requester fields with the field names from the CSV file.
2. Click **Next**.

**Step 3: Import**

1. Click **Import Now** button. The values from the CSV file will be imported to the requester details. Once the import is complete, the data on how many records were added, how many overwritten, and how many failed to import.

If at any point you wish to stop importing from the CSV file, click the **Exit** button.

| Note 1: Login name column will be the identifier for requesters. No two requesters can have the same login name. Hence the existence of a requester will be checked based on the login name value. |
| So, if by mistake there was any mismatch of fields during mapping, and a new import of CSV is performed, the records will be updated based on the login name value. If there were any records that did not have any login name at all or there was mismatch in the login name itself, then duplicate entries will be created. In these cases, delete such entries from the requester list and import again or manually edit the information available. |

| Note 2: While Importing users using CSV, the existing user information is overwritten based on two criteria - Username and Domain, and the Email id. If the Domain is not specified for a user and on performing a new import of CSV, the user information will be overwritten but the Domain will remain null even if the field is specified. |

**Viewing Requester Details**

To view the details of a requester, click the name of the requester. While viewing the details of the requester, you have options to

- Edit the details of the requester
- Change the requester as technician
- Associate Workstations to the requester
- View requests raised by the requester, and
- Attach any documents related to the requester.

**Editing Requester details**

To edit the requester details,

1. In the Requester details page, click **Edit** button. The **Edit Requester** form is displayed.
2. You can modify all the fields displayed. You can also change the login name of the requester.
3. Click **Save**. If you do not wish to modify any of the details, click **Cancel**.

**Resetting Requester Password**

You can change the requester's password while editing the requester details.

1. To change the password of the requester, click the **Reset Password** link. The reset password window is opened.

2. Below the **Login Name** display, enter the **New Password** in the text field.
3. Click **Reset Password**. If you do not wish to change the password, click **Close** instead of **Reset Password**.

**Change Requester to Technician**

You can change a requester to technician without having to delete the requester information and recreate the same as a technician. To change requester to technician,

1. In the Requester details page, click **Change as Technician** option. The page refreshes to display the edit technician form.
2. Change the roles assigned to the requester from **SDGuest** to any other role that you wish to provide the technician.
3. Enter any other details that you wish to enter including the **Cost per hour** and so on.
4. Click **Save**. If you do not wish to change the requester to technician, click **Cancel** instead of **Save**.

If you want to continue adding technician after converting a requester to technician, then instead of clicking **Save**, click **Save and add new** button. This saves the technician details and reopens the add technician form after displaying a success message for changing the requester to technician.
Associate Workstation to Requester

You can also associate a workstation with the requester. To associate a workstation with the requester

1. Click **Associate Workstation** option. The associate workstation window is opened.
2. In the **Associate Workstation** pop-up, select the workstations that you wish to associate with the requester from the **Workstation List** and move them to the **Associated Workstations** list by clicking the >> button. To dissociate workstations, select the respective workstations in the **Associated Workstations** list and click the << button. If you wish to dissociate all the workstations, then click **Dissociate All**.
3. After associating the required workstations, click **Save Changes**.
4. A message is displayed. Click the **Close** button.

View Requests

While viewing the Requester details, you can view all the open requests raised by the requester. Click **View Requests** option. The page redirects you to the Requests module where the list of all **Open Requests** raised by the requester is displayed.

Delete Requesters

1. In the **Requester List** page, enable the check box beside the requesters to delete.
2. Click **Actions** drop-down menu -> **Delete User(s)** option. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **OK** to proceed with the deletion. If you do not want to delete the requester, then click **Cancel**.

Search Requesters

To search requesters

1. In **request list** view, click on the alphabet with which the name of the requester starts. This lists the requesters whose name starts with that alphabet.
2. If you are unsure of the starting letter, then you can type the name (first name or the last name, which ever you know) or email ID or any other parameter that will identify the requester in the field beside the **Search Requester List**. This lists the requesters whose details matches the search string that you entered.

You can also search requesters from the **Search** available on the left menu in the other pages of the application. From the **Search in** combo box, select **Requesters** and type your search string in the **Enter Keyword** text field. Click **Go** or press **Enter**. The requester names that match the search string are listed in a separate pop-up window.

Another option to search requesters will be using the column-wise search option. To perform a column-wise search
1. Click the **search** icon at the end of the requester list view headers. This opens the search field just below every column that is visible in the list view.
2. Enter the search key in field under the column of your choice.
3. Click **Go**. The search results matching the search string(s) are displayed.

**Requester List View Customization**

To customize the requester list view

1. Click the **column edit** icon available at the corner of the requester list headers. This opens the available columns that can be displayed in the list view. All those that are visible currently, will have the check box beside them selected.
2. To remove a column, disable the check box beside the column name.
3. To add a column to the list view, enable the check box beside the column name.
4. To change the column order, click the up and down arrow after selecting the column that you wish to move.
5. Click **Save**.

This will add only those columns which you have chosen in the list view. You can also sort the list view based on columns. To sort requester list by column, click the column header. Clicking it once will sort it in ascending order. Clicking twice will sort the column in descending order.
Technicians

The IT help desk team comprises of technicians who are responsible for handling requests raised by the employees of the organization. Each technician in the help desk team is assigned with Roles to perform specific tasks in the application. If your organization is spread across multiple sites, then you can associate sites to the technicians. The site association restricts the technician's access to other site information.

Apart from this, you can also assign technicians to specific Technician Groups. Grouping technicians facilitates the incoming requests to be categorized and assigned to the specific group respectively.

To access Technician configuration wizard,

1. Login to ServiceDesk Plus application using the Username and Password of a ServiceDesk Plus administrator.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Users block, click Technicians icon. The Technician List view is displayed where you can add, edit, and delete technicians from the application.

NOTE:

1. If multiple sites (with Related Settings as Copy default settings or custom settings) are configured in the application, then a Technicians associated for drop-down box is displayed in the Technicians List view.
2. If you are logged in as a Site Administrator, then you have the privilege to add, edit and delete technicians associated to your sites.

Topics discussed under this section:

- Adding Technicians
- Editing Technicians
  - Changing Password
  - Adding/Removing Login Permissions
- Associating/Dissociating Workstations to Technicians
- Changing Technicians as Requesters
- Associating Technicians to Site
- Dissociating Technicians to Site
- Deleting Technicians

Adding Technician

To manually add a technician in ServiceDesk Plus,

1. In the Technician List view, click Add New Technician link.
2. Enter the Personal Details of the technician, such as the Name and Employee ID. The name is a mandatory field.
3. Specify the **Contact Information** of the technician, such as the **E-mail Address**, **Phone Number**, **Mobile Number** and **SMS Mail ID**.

4. Specify the **Cost per hour** of the technician.

5. Select the **Department** of the technician and the designation in **Job Title** field.

6. If you have configured sites in the application, then **Associate the site(s) with Technician** block is displayed. The sites configured in the application are displayed in **Available Sites** column. To associate sites with technician, select the sites and click **>>** button. The selected sites are listed in **Associate Sites** column.

   **NOTE:** If a technician is not associated to any site, then by default, the technician is associated to **Not in any Site**.

7. The technician groups configured in the application are listed in **Available Groups** column. To assign groups for the technician, select the groups and click **>>** button. The selected technician groups are listed in **Associated Groups** column.

8. If you have configured any **Technician-Additional Fields**, then the same is displayed under **Additional Technician Details** block. Enter relevant values for the additional fields.

9. If you want the technician to approve service requests, then select **Service Request Approver** check box. An email is sent to the technician to approve or reject the service request.

10. You can also assign the technician with the privilege to approve **Purchase Orders** by selecting **Purchase Order Approver** check box. Set the **Approver Limit** within which the technician can approve the PO. An email is sent to the technician to accept or reject the PO.

   **NOTE:** If you have selected any of the check boxes (Service Request Approver or Purchase Order Approver), then the email address of the technician should be specified.

**Providing Login Credentials and Roles**

1. Select **Enable login for this technician** check box. The **Login Details** block is displayed.

2. Enter the **Login Name** and **Password** for the technician. Re-type the password in the **Re-type Password** field. Please ensure that the login name and password are mandatory fields. Also note that the login name should be unique for each technician.

3. Select the **Domain** of the technician from the drop-down box.

4. Select **Roles** to be assigned to the technician. The Role will define his access privilege to various modules of the application.

   - **Enable Administrator Privileges (SDAdmin):** Technician with this role will has complete access over all the modules in the application. The administrator alone has the privilege to access the Admin module which is the key to operate the application.

   **NOTE:** If you are logged in as a Site Administrator, then this option will not be available.
- **Enable administrator privileges for the sites selected above (SiteAdmin):** Technician with this role has complete administrator access for the above selected sites. The Site Admin can configure all the Admin configurations pertaining to his/her site alone.

- **Enable Custom Privileges:** The Roles configured in the application are listed in **Available Roles** column. To assign roles, select one or more roles from the Available Roles column and click **>>** button. The selected role(s) is listed in the **Assigned Roles** column.

5. While enabling login permission to a technician, you can also provide the technician with Desktop Central login access and DC Role. The two DC Roles are **DC Admin** and **DC Guest**. Select the check box **Enable to access Desktop Management Functionality** and provide either of the role to the technician. When the technician logs into ServiceDesk Plus using his/her credentials, the technician can view the **Desktop Management** drop-down menu, from where, the technician can perform Desktop Management functionality from within ServiceDesk Plus web console.

6. The **API Key** for the technician is essential while integrating ServiceDesk Plus with REST API or with Desktop Central application. The API Key performs as an authentication mechanism between the two applications.

   To generate the API Key, click the **Generate** link. Select a time frame for the key to expire or simply retain the same key perpetually. If a key is already generated for the technician, a **Re-generate** link appears.

11. Click **Save** button. If you want to add more than one technician then, click **Save and Add New** button. If you decide to give the login access for the technician at a later time, then you can save the technician details without the login details. For this you need to stop with Step 10 and click Save. You can add the login details by editing the technician details.

   At any point, if you decide not to add the new technician, then click **Cancel** to get back to the technician list.

In general, the users are imported into the application using any of the following methods namely, **Active Directory Import**, **LDAP** or **Import from CSV file**. The imported users are listed in **Admin -> Requesters**. From the Requesters List view, you can categorize the users into Requesters and Technicians. To change a user as technician, click **Change as Technician** option and associate sites, assign technician group and provide access permissions to the technician.

**Editing Technician**

If you want to add/remove the login credentials for a technician or you want to change a technician’s password, then you can so while editing the technician’s details.

To edit the technician information.

1. In the Technician List view, click the **edit** icon beside the technician to edit.
2. Modify the details in **Personal Details** block, **Contact Information** block, **Cost Details** block and **Department Details** block. You can also associate/dissociate sites with the technician, and also assign/unassign groups for the technician.

3. Click **Save** button. Even while editing a technician, if you wish to add a new technician, then click **Save and add new** button after making the changes. At any point, if you want to cancel the edit operation, then click **Cancel**.

**Changing Password**

You can change the password of the technician while performing the edit operation.

1. Click **Reset Password** link beside the Password field.

2. In **Reset Password** popup window, enter the **New Password** in the field provided.

3. Click **Reset Password** button. If you do not want to change the password, then click **Close** button.
4. If you have enabled **Send Self Service Login details** option in **Admin -> Notification Rules**, then the new password is sent as an email notification to the requester.
5. Click **Save** in the technician form.

**Adding/Removing Login Permissions**

You can add/remove the login permission of the technician while performing the edit operation.

**Adding Login Permission**

To add login credentials for the technician, refer the topic Providing Login Credentials and Roles under **Adding Technicians**.

**Removing Login Permission**

1. In Login Details block, click the **Yes** link beside **Remove Login** field. A dialog box confirming to remove the login permission for the technician appears.
2. Click **OK** to proceed. If you do not want to remove the login permission, click **Cancel**.
3. Click **Save** in the technician form.

**Associating/Dissociate Workstations to Technicians**

To associate workstations to the technician,

1. In the Technician List view, select the technician to associate workstation.
2. Click **Associate Workstation** option. The Associate Workstation window pops up. By default, all the workstations configured in the application are listed in **Workstation List** column. You can also choose to display the unassigned workstations alone by selecting **Show unassigned only** link.

**NOTE:** Selecting **Show unassigned only** link changes the link to **Show assigned only**.

3. To associate workstations, select one or more workstations from Workstation List column and click **>>** button. The selected workstation(s) are listed in **Associated Workstations** column.
4. Click **Save** button.

To dissociate workstations for the technician,

1. In the Technician List view, select the technician to dissociate workstation.
2. Click **Associate Workstation** option. The Associate Workstation window pops up. By default, all the workstations configured in the application are listed in
The workstations associated with the technician are listed in **Associated Workstation** column.

3. Click **Dissociate All** button. The workstations are dissociated from the technician.

**Changing Technicians as Requesters**

To change technician as requester,

1. In the Technician List view, select the check box beside the technicians to change as requesters.
2. Click **Actions** drop down button.
3. Select **Change as Requester** option. A dialog box confirming the operation appears.
4. Click **OK** to proceed. The selected technicians are changes as requesters and listed in the Requester List view.

**Associate Technicians to Site**

You can associate bulk technicians to sites using this option. If you have added the technician without associating the sites then the same can be done from the Technician List view.

1. Select the check box beside the technician(s) to associate site.
2. Click **Actions** drop down button.
3. Select **Associate to Site** option. The Associate Technician(s) to site pops up.
4. Select the **Site** to which you want to associate the technician.
5. Click **Associate** button. The technician is associated to the site.

**Dissociate Technicians from Site**

You can dissociate bulk technicians from a site using this option.

1. In Technician List view, select the check box beside the technician dissociate site.
2. Click **Actions** drop down button.
3. Select **Dissociate from Site** option. The Dissociate Technician(s) from site pops up.
4. Select the **Site** from which you want to dissociate the technician.
5. Click **Dissociate** button. A dialog box confirming the operation appears.
6. Click **OK** to proceed. The technician gets dissociated from the site.

**Deleting Technicians**

To delete technician(s),

1. In the Technician List view, select the check box beside the technician to delete.
2. Click **Delete** button. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **OK** to proceed with the deletion. The selected technician(s) is deleted from the list.

**NOTE:** The delete icon will not be present for the technicians logged into the application. To delete that technician, you need to log out and log in as a different technician and then delete the details. Also, the administrator technician details can be deleted only by another technician with administrative privileges.
Support Groups

Support Groups denote the classification of your help desk team, so that the incoming requests are categorized and based on the technicians expertise, the requests are distributed.

By configuring support groups, multiple support teams can be managed by classifying them into individual groups with e-mail settings for each group. So when an e-mail is sent to a group mail ID, the request is fetched and automatically sent to the group.

Say for instance, you are managing two support groups - hardware and network with the email IDs hardware@domain.com and network@domain.com respectively. The two mail IDs are linked to a single mail account that is fetched by ServiceDesk Plus. So on configuring the group mail IDs, e-mails sent to hardware@domain.com are automatically assigned to the hardware group and the conversation threads possesses the group mail ID in the address field.

Further, you can restrict technicians to view requests in their Group alone. This can be done by creating a Role "All in group & assigned to him" and assigning this role to the technician to restrict his view. Refer Roles to know more.

You can also enable notifications to be sent to the technicians on receiving a new request and if a request is left unpicked. The configured groups are listed in the Groups drop-down menu in the New Request form.

To open the Group configuration page

1. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
2. In the Users block, click the Support Groups icon. The available support groups are listed. From this page you can add, edit and delete groups.

Add Support Group

1. Click Add New Group link available at the right top corner of the Group list page.
2. In the Add Support Group form, enter the group name in the Name field. This is mandatory field.
3. Select the Business Impact caused by this support group on other CIs.
4. Select the technicians that you wish to group under this Support Group from the Available Technicians list box and click >> button to move them to Technicians interested in this Group.
5. You can choose the technicians of the Group to whom you wish to notify for a new request creation in the Group. To do this,
   1. Select the check box Send notification to Group technician(s) when a new request is added to this Group.
   2. Click Choose button. The technicians under the group are listed in a pop-up window.
   3. Select the technicians to notify and click OK.
6. To choose the technicians to send notification for unpicked requests in the Group,
1. Select the check box **Send notification to technician(s) when a request in this Group is left unpicked.**
2. Click **Choose** button. The complete list of technicians available in your help desk appears in a pop-up window.
3. Select the technicians from the list box and click **OK**. The technicians get listed in the field provided.
4. Enter the time period, from the creation of the request in Group, after which the notification of unpicked requests will be sent to the selected technicians.
7. If you wish to describe the Group in detail enter the same in the **Description** text box.
8. If you wish to automatically assign the incoming tickets to the group, enter the **Group E-mail ID**. Each support group can possess multiple e-mail IDs which should be unique and separated by commas or semi colon.

**Note:** Please note that the group e-mail IDs should be aliased to a mail account which is fetched by ServiceDesk Plus.
9. Specify the **Sender’s Name** and the **Sender’s E-mail** in the given text field. The senders name will be specified while sending e-mails.
10. Click **Save**. The new Group is added to the support group list.

At any point, if you decide not to add the new Support Group, then click **Cancel** to get back to the Group list. Clicking the **View List** link on the top right corner of the add Group form will also take you to the Group list view.

```
Note: Enabling the check boxes while adding Group does not ensure that the notification will be sent. This setting is just to choose the technicians to whom the notification needs to be sent and the time frame after which the unpicked request notification is to be sent. To actually send the notification, you need to enable the corresponding setting under the **Notification Rules** under the Admin tasks, which are:

1. Notify Group technician by mail when request is added to Group.
2. Notify technician by mail when request is unpicked in Group.
```

**Edit Support Group**

To edit an existing Support Group

1. In the **Support Group List** page, click the **edit** icon to edit.
2. In the **Edit Support Group** form, you can modify the name of the Group, the technicians belonging to the Groups, the notification settings, and description.
3. Click **Save** to save the changes. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click **Cancel**.

Even while editing a Group, if you wish to add a new Group, then click **Save and add new** button instead of clicking **Save** button after making the changes.
Delete Support Group

1. In the **Support Group List** page, enable the check box beside the group name to delete.
2. Click **Delete** button. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **OK** to proceed with the deletion. If you do not want to delete the Group, then click **Cancel**.
User Groups

You can classify all the ServiceDesk Plus end-users (requesters) within your organization into various User Groups. In Site based implementation, categorizing users into groups is especially necessary to prevent users from accessing certain items. The users can be restricted to view certain service items, solutions, announcements and request template.

For instance, the announcement - Nortel network is down for a day due to maintenance in the site New York. This announcement is vital for users in site New York alone. A user group is created such that the announcement is available only to the users associated to site New York. The user group can also be filtered based on Department, Email ID, Job Title and Name.

To access the user group configuration page,

1. Click Admin tab in the header pane to open the configuration page.

2. Click User Groups icon under Users block. The User Group list view page is displayed where you can add, edit and delete a user group.

Adding New User Group

1. Click Add User Group link from the User Group list view page.

2. Specify a unique Name for the user group. Say, Sales Team in New York. This field is mandatory.

3. Enter a short Description about this user group.

4. Set the Filter by selecting the Criteria and Condition from the drop down. Enter the value in the text field.

You can also perform a search operation for the values using the search icon. A pop up listing the values for the selected criteria appears. Select a value click ok.
5. To view the requesters under the specified criteria, click **Preview** button. The
requesters list appears in a pop up window.

6. To add another criteria, click the addition button and repeat the similar
process. Choose to match **All the conditions** (And) or **Any one of the
condition** (Or) from the drop down.

7. Click **Save** to save the user group and return to the list view. Click **Save and
Add New**, to save the user group and add another.
The configured User Groups appear while creating a new Service Item, solution,
announcement and request template.

**Editing User Groups**

1. From the User Groups list view page, click the **edit** icon beside the user group
name to edit. The Edit User Group form appears.
2. Modify the Name and Description field.
3. You can also alter the existing filters set or add new filters using the criteria and
condition drop down.
4. Click **Save**, to save the user group and return to the list view. Even while editing,
you can add another user group by clicking **Save and Add New** button.
Deleting User Groups

1. From the User Groups list view page, enable the check box beside the user group to delete.
2. Click **Delete** button. A confirmation dialog appears.
3. Click **OK** to proceed. The User group is deleted from the list.
Active Directory

You can configure to authenticate the requester login with the active directory (AD). On configuring AD authentication, if there are any changes made in the password made in AD, the same is reflected in ServiceDesk Plus. So the requesters can login using the login name and password of the system.

**Note:** Please ensure that before you start configuring the AD Authentication, you have already imported the requesters. Only if a user account is available in ServiceDesk Plus application, it will authenticate the password for that user account from the active directory. Hence, when none of the users have been imported from the active directory, the authentication cannot be done for the user account.

To configure the Active Directory Authentication,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the **user name** and **password** of a ServiceDesk Plus administrator.
2. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
3. In the **Users** block, click the **Active Directory Authentication** icon. Here you can enable or disable active directory authentication. By default the AD authentication will be disabled.
4. If you have already imported requesters from the any of the domains in your network, then click **Enable** button.

Even after enabling Active Directory (AD) Authentication, if you would like to bypass the AD Authentication, then in the application login screen, you need to select **Local Authentication** from the Domain list box after entering the login name and password, and then click **Login** button to enter ServiceDesk Plus.

**Configure Pass - through Authentication**

On enabling single sign-on, ServiceDesk plus directly authenticates your windows system user name and password. Hence you need not login over again to enter into ServiceDesk plus or remember too many passwords.

ServiceDesk Plus Pass through Authentication uses NTMLV2 which provides better security and validates the credentials using NETLOGON service.

2. If you like to activate single sign - on, select the **Enable Pass-through Authentication (Single Sign-On)** option.
3. You can enable Pass-through authentication for users from a particular domain. To do so, select the **Domain Name** from the drop down list. Enabled domain should be two way trusted.
4. Specify the **DNS Server IP** of the domain in the provided field.
5. To use the NTLM security provider as an authentication service a computer account needs to be created in the Active Directory with a specific password.
Specify a unique name for the **Computer Account** and **Password** for this account.

6. **Bind String** parameter must be a fully qualified DNS domain name or the fully qualified DNS hostname of a particular AD server.

7. **Save** the authentication. You will get a confirmation message on the authentication.

Upon saving the details, a new computer account will be created on the Active Directory (with the help of VB Script). If the user specifies existing computer account name, the password specified here will be reset on the Active Directory for the computer account. User can choose to reset the password of computer account by clicking on the Reset Password link as well.

Even if there is a problem creating Computer Account or Resetting Password of already created Computer Account using VB script from SDP server (upon save, the script will be called automatically), the details specified here will be saved and user can execute the script locally on the AD server specifying the same details to create computer account / reset password.

If there is an issue with computer account creation, user can specify an already created computer account name and reset password of that computer account with the help of reset password script.

**Importing Requesters from Active Directory**

If you have not yet imported requesters from any of the domains, you can import them by clicking **Import Requesters from Active Directory** link. The **Import From Active Directory** window pops up.

1. From the list of domains that are listed in the **Domain Name** drop-down box, select the domain name in which the active directory from which you wish to import is installed. If the other details such as domain controller name, user name, and password have already been entered in the Domain scan page, then that will be populated automatically. Else, enter the name of the domain controller in the **Domain Controller Name** field, login name and password in the corresponding fields.

2. You also have an option to select the fields to be imported from Active Directory. To do this, enable the check box beside the default fields namely, Phone, Department, Job Title, Mobile, Site Name and E-mail. Specify the field name configured in Active Directory for the selected fields.

   Say, if "Phone" is configured as "telephoneNumber" in active directory, then enter telephoneNumber in the text field provided. The unselected fields are not imported. This is to avoid over riding of the new values by the old values from the directory.

3. Apart from the default fields, you can also **Import Requester Additional Field** details from the active directory. If you have not configured any requester additional fields, then select **Click here to configure** link. This takes you to Requester - Additional Field page, from where you need to configure the additional fields to be imported from Active Directory. The configured requester additional fields - Text, Numeric and Date/Time fields, appear in **Import from Active Directory** window indicated in the colors Blue, Green and Red respectively. Enable the check box beside the requester additional fields to
import, and specify the field name configured in active directory beside the selected field. The unselected fields are not imported.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field Name</th>
<th>Field Type</th>
<th>Distinguished Name (DN) in Active Directory</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Email Address</td>
<td>Text</td>
<td>mail</td>
<td>Email Address of the requester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country Code</td>
<td>Numeric</td>
<td>countryCode</td>
<td>Country Code of the requester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Log on</td>
<td>Date/Time</td>
<td>lastLogon</td>
<td>Last Logged on date/time of the requester.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

1. To configure the date format according to your Active Directory settings, update the entry in globalconfig table as, globalconfig set paramvalue ="Date-Format", where category ="AD_DATEFORMAT" and parameter="UDF_DATE". Restart the application to reflect the changes.

2. The numeric additional fields hold up to 19 digits. If your numeric value exceeds 19 digits, then configure the value in text field.

4. If the site associated to the user/department is changed in Active Directory, then the assets belonging to the user/department should be moved to the new site. To update this information on every import, enable **Move associated assets** check box. De-selecting this check box will not move the asset to the new site.

5. Click **Import Now**. The import wizard displays the various **Organizational Units** (OUs) available in that domain. Choose the specific Organizational Unit from which you wish to import users by selecting the check box beside it.

6. Click **Start Importing**. Once the import is complete, the data on how many records were added, how many overwritten, and how many failed to import will be displayed.

**Schedule AD import**

You have an option to schedule Active Directory import in specified number of days. When you schedule an Active Directory Import, data from all the domains available in the application is imported at the specified number of days.

1. Select the **Schedule AD import** check box. Specify the number of days in the text box. The requester details gets imported automatically once in specified number of days.

2. Click **saveADSync** button to be in sync with the active directory.
LDAP

You can also import users from the LDAP server through the domain controller. On enabling the LDAP authentication, the users can login using their LDAP credentials. By default, the LDAP authentication will be disabled.

**Note:** Ensure that before you start configuring LDAP authentication the users are already imported from the domain. The LDAP authentication supports both linux and windows users. On enabling LDAP authentication for windows users, the AD authentication gets disabled automatically.

To import users from a New Domain,

1. Login to ServiceDesk Plus application using your username and password.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Users block, click the LDAP Authentication icon. By default, the LDAP authentication will be disabled.
4. Click Add New Domain button under Domain Controllers block. This opens the Add New Domain Controller form as shown below,

5. Specify the Domain Controller from where the users have to be imported in the Domain Controller text field. For ex: ldap://<server name>:<port number>. The default port is 389.
6. Enter the User Name along with the Organizational unit (OU) in the given field. For ex, CN:john, CN=Users, DC=domain name, DC=com.
7. Specify the Password in the respective field.
8. Specify the Base DN which represents the distinguished base name such as, CN = Users, DC = domain name, DC = com.
9. Specify the criteria which you want to apply on that particular domain controller in the search filter text field. For ex: mail=* will import users from the parameter mail in the specified domain controller.
10. Select the LDAP Server Type from the combo box. For ex. OpenLDAP.
Note: If you have chosen the Server type as default LDAP such as, Microsoft Active Directory, Novell eDirectory and OpenLDAP then the Login Attributes Label, Mail Attribute Label and Distinguished Name Attributed Label will appear in a non-editable text.

11. If the LDAP Server Type is Others then, specify the Login Attribute Label and Mail Attribute Label in the respective fields.

12. The Distinguished Name Attributed Label is similar to the Base DN.

13. Click Save to save the domain controller. If you want to save and import the users, click Save and Import.

You can also import users from the existing domain by clicking Import Now of the corresponding Domain Controllers. The existing data will be over written on importing the users from the same domain. Once the users are imported, Enable LDAP Authentication by selecting the check box.

Click Save. The user can login to the application using his LDAP credentials.

**Edit Domain Controller**

1. Click domain controller name which you wish to edit. This opens the Add new domain controller form.

2. Modify the changes and click Save. To save and import the users from the domain controller, click Save and Import.

**Delete Domain Controller**

1. From the domain controller list view page, enable the check box adjacent to the domain controller which you wish to delete.

2. Click Delete button. A pop up window confirming the delete operation appears. Click Ok to continue. The domain controller gets deleted from the list.

On deleting a domain controller, the users imported from that domain controller will not be able to login to the application using LDAP credentials.
Leave Types

In most cases, your technicians may be unable to work for a day or two. In order to avoid requests being assigned to them, the technician can apply for leave under Scheduler.

The most common reasons for applying leave are configured in Leave Types. You can denote the type of leave with the help of color code. This facilitates the administrator to comprehend the reason for applying leave by the technician.

To access Leave Types configuration wizard,

1. Login to ServiceDesk Plus application using the Username and Password of an admin user.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In Users block, click Leave Types option. By default, there are four Leave Types displayed in the List View. From this page, you can add, edit and delete leave types.

Add Leave Type

1. In Leave Types List view, click New Leave Type link. This opens the Add-Leave Type form.
2. In Add New Leave Type form, enter the Name of the leave type. For example, Sick Leave, On Duty, Optional and so on. The Name should be unique and is a mandatory field.
3. Select a Color to denote the leave type in the Technician Availability Chart using icon.
4. Specify brief description about the leave type in the Description text field.
5. Click Save button. The leave type is saved and displayed in the list view. Click Save and Add New button to add another leave type.

Edit Leave Type

1. In Leave Types List view, click the edit icon beside the leave type to edit. The Edit Leave Type form is pre-filled with values configured while adding the leave type.
2. Modify the Name, the Color code and the Description of the leave type.
3. Click Save button. You can also save and add another leave type from Update page by clicking Save and Add New button.

Delete Leave Type

1. In Leave Types List view, select the check box beside the leave type to delete.
2. Click Delete button. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click OK to proceed. The leave type is deleted from the list.
Robo Technician

Using Robo Technician you can reset the user password quickly & easily. This involves two steps process to reset the user password such as, 1) configure robo task 2) creating a request template.

To open the robo technician page,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of a ServiceDesk Plus administrator.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Users block, click the Robo Technician icon. On purchasing the license for the robo technician the Robo Task Configuration page is displayed.

Configuring Robo Task

1. Click Enable robo task option to perform the robo task operations by clicking the enable icon. By default the status of the robo task would be disabled.
2. There are three blocks available in the configuring robo task page such as, Task Options, Action On Success & Action On Failure. In the Task Options block select Password Reset Type from the combo box. You have four passwords reset types such as,
   
   **Random Password:** In this case the robo technician assigns a random password to the user.

   **Typed Password:** In this type the logged in technician will enter the password in the given text field.

   **Same as the User Name:** The robo technician will assign the same user name a password.

   **Blank Password:** In this type the password assigned will be a blank password.

3. If you wish, you can select User must change password on next login check box. Generally this option should be enabled for security purpose.
4. On resetting the password successfully you can configure the corresponding actions to be performed in the Action On Success block. Select the Request Status you wish from the combo box.
5. Specify the Resolution Details in the text field.
6. If the password-reset action is failed then you can configure the corresponding actions to be performed in the Action On Failure block. To assign the event to the currently logged in user select Assign to Invoker check box.
7. Or you can assign it to the Group under which the problem is associated.
8. And also you can assign the problem to the corresponding Technician.
9. Specify the notes about the issue in the Notes text field.
10. Click Save button to save the details.
11. Click Save and go to Template button to go to the Request Template page.
Creating a Request Template

On installing Robo Technician it automatically creates a default Request Template for a particular Robo Task. You can also edit this request template based on your needs.

Example: Say if a user requests technician for password reset, and if the technician has already configured robo task, then he can create a request to reset password using this default template.
Technician Auto Assign

Apart from assigning technicians to requests using Business Rule, selection of category or from the UI, technicians can be automatically assigned to requests on configuring the Technician Auto Assign option. The Technician Auto assign follows the Round Robin or Load Balancing methods, and based on the availability of the technicians, the requests are assigned. So if a technician is unavailable on a specific day, and the due by time of certain requests falls on that day, the technician on leave will not be assigned to those requests.

**Note**

For site specific requests, the technicians associated to the sites are auto assigned to the requests. Similar for requests associated to groups, the technicians associated to the groups are assigned to the requests.

To access Technician Auto Assign Configuration,

1. Click the Admin tab in the header pane to open the configurations wizard page.
2. Click Technician Auto Assign icon under Users block. The Technician Auto Assign page opens.

Enabling Technician Auto Assign

1. Select Enable Technician Auto Assign check box.
2. Requests are assigned to the technicians either through Round Robin or Load Balancing model.
   
   **Load Balancing:** The number of requests that are In progress and assigned to a technician is taken as the load of the technician. So on selecting this model, technicians with the least load are assigned to requests.
   
   **Round Robin:** In this model, technicians are assigned to the request irrespective of the load.

3. The tech auto assign is executed for newly created requests, edited requests or, to both created and edited requests. Select your option by enabling the radio button.
4. On creating a new request, the technician auto assign can be applied to either the Unassigned Requests or to the assigned/unassigned Requests.

**Unassigned Requests:** On selecting this option, the technician auto assign is applied to requests that are unassigned even after passing through all the Business Rules and Category selections.

**All Requests:** When this option is selected, the technicians assigned to the requests through business rules or category selection will be overridden.
Note: While editing a request, technician auto assign is applied to requests that remain unassigned even after the application of Business Rules and Category selection. The auto assign is not applied to requests that are assigned to technicians.

Excluding Technicians from auto assign

You can exclude certain technicians from being auto assigned say, the administrator, site admin, change manager.

1. Click **Exclude the following Technician** check box.
2. Click **Add Technicians to exclude** link. The list of technicians available in the application appears.
3. Select the technicians to be excluded by clicking on their Name link. These technicians get listed under **Selected Technicians**. Click **Ok** button.

You can delete individual technicians from the Selected Technicians list using the delete icon. Click **Delete All** link to delete all the technicians from the Selected Technician list.

Excluding Requests from auto assign

You can also exclude certain requests from being auto assigned to technicians. Say for example, requests with the priority as "High" should not be auto assigned to technicians.

1. Select **Enable Exceptions** check box.
2. Choose the **Column** from the drop down and its corresponding **Value** using the icon.
3. Choose to match all the exceptions (AND) or any of the exceptions (OR) from the drop down.
4. **Save** the details.
Problem / Change Management

The goal of Problem Management is to find the root cause of incidents and reduce the impact on business. The goal of Change Management is to control and manage approved changes with accepted risk. ServiceDesk Plus allows you to implement a comprehensive problem management and change management system. Problem/Change related configurations are:

1. Problem Additional Fields
2. Problem Closure Rules
3. Change Type
4. Change Status
5. Change Advisory Board
6. Change Additional Fields
7. Change Closure Rules

To access Problem/Change related configurations:

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane. The problem/change management block is below the Help Desk block.
Problem Additional Fields

You have pre-defined fields by default in the New Problem form to enter the details about the problem. If you need any additional fields in the New Problem form then, you can add your own additional fields using this option. You can add text, numeric and date/time fields in the form.

To add your own custom fields in the New Problem form:

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the **user name** and **password** of a ServiceDesk Plus administrator.
2. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
3. In the **Problem/Change Management** block, click the **Problem - Additional Fields** icon. This opens the Problem - Additional Fields page. You can add three types of fields in the form: text, numeric and date/time.
4. To add the text fields, enter the label name in the form fields below the **Label** heading. If required, enter the description for the field.
5. You can choose the type of text field that you wish to add by selecting the radio buttons.
   - A **Single-line text field** allows you to add just a text field.
   - The **Multi-line text field** allows you to add a text box where a lengthy description can be added.
   - A **Pick List** allows you to add a list menu from which you can select. In all the three cases, you can add default values for the text field in the space provided for the same.
6. To add items for the pick list, enter the value in the text filed and click **Add Item**. Select the default selected value of the list, click on the value in the list.
7. To add numeric fields, click the **Numeric** tab and then enter the label name in the form fields provided for the same.
8. To add date/time fields, click the **Date/Time** tab and enter the required details.
9. Click **Save**. A message for successful creation of the fields is displayed.

These fields appear under the grouping **Additional Problem Details** in the New Problem form. To delete the user-defined fields, in step 4 through 7, instead of adding the label names, delete the label names that you wish to remove from the fields of the form and click **Save**. The respective fields that you deleted will be removed from the New Problem form.
Problem Closure Rules

Problem closing rules can be used to select the mandatory fields to be filled in by the technicians while closing the problems and also includes optional rules that can be enabled by the technician on closing the problem.

Example: If you have selected 'Associated Tasks should be closed' as a mandatory field in this page, then the technician whoever resolving the problem, should close all the related tasks to a problem and enter the details in the corresponding field before closing it. Else an error message pops up, asking you to fill the details in the field. If you have selected the optional rules as, E-mail all requesters affected by this problem and Close all associated incidents, on closing the problem a pop up window listing the selected optional rules appears. Based on the incident the technician can enable the check box corresponding to the optional rules.

To configure the problem closing rules,

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Problem/Change Management block, click the Problem Closure Rules icon. This opens the Problem Closure Rules page.
4. Select the Mandatory Fields from the list to be filled in before closing the problem by enabling the check box.
5. Select the Optional Rules by enabling the check box. The selected rules will get listed to the technician on closing the problem. Based on the incident the technician can,
   - E-mail technician working on incidents associated with this problem: An e-mail notification is sent to the concerned technicians working on the incident associated with the problem.
   - E-mail all requesters affected by this problem: An e-mail notification is sent to all requesters who have raised requests concerning the problem.
   - Copy problem solution and workaround to all associated incidents: The solution to the problem and workaround is copied to all associated incidents.
   - Close all associated incidents: All the associated incidents is closed on resolving the problem.
6. Save the details.
Change Type

The change types show the significant changes in the organization which involves cost and time. By default, you have four change types and Standard is a pre-defined change type hence cannot be edited. And the Standard Change type is a pre-approved change type which will not require approval from the change manager.

To access the Change Type configuration wizard,

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Problem/Change Management block, click the Change Types icon. This opens the Change Type list page.

Adding Change Type

1. Click on the New Change Type link. This opens the Add New page.
2. Specify the Name for the change type in the given text field, say Significant. This is a mandatory field.
3. Select the Color by clicking the color icon to indicate the severity of the change. This is a mandatory field.
4. Specify the Description about the change type in the description field.
5. Save the changes. You can see the change type getting listed in the change type list view.
6. Click the Save and add new button to save the Change Type and add another Change Type.

Editing Change Type

To edit an change type,

1. In the Change Type list page, click the edit icon beside the change type name that you wish to edit.
2. In the Edit Change Type form, edit the fields you want to change.
3. Click Save to save the changes. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click Cancel.

Even while editing a change type, if you wish to add a new change type, then click Save and add new button instead of clicking Save button after making the changes.

Delete Change Type

1. From the Change Type list page, enable the check box beside the change type name that you wish to delete.
2. Click Delete button. A confirmation dialog appears.
3. Click OK to proceed with the deletion. The change type gets deleted from the available list. If you do not wish to delete the change type, then click Cancel.
Change Status

Change Status shows the current state of the change in the organization. You have a list of default change status. Rejected is a pre-defined change status hence cannot be deleted.

To access the Change Status configuration wizard,

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the \textit{user name} and \textit{password}.
2. Click the \textbf{Admin} tab in the header pane.
3. In the \textbf{Problem/Change Management} block, click the \textbf{Change Status} icon. This opens the \textbf{Status List} page.

Adding New Change Status

1. Click on the \textbf{New Status} link on the right hand side of the page. This opens the \textbf{Add Status} page.
2. Specify the \textbf{Name} of the status in the given text field.
3. Specify the \textbf{Description} about the status in the given text field.
4. \textbf{Save} the changes. You can see the new status getting listed in the status list page.
5. Click the \textbf{Save and add new} button to save the Change Status and add another Change Status.

Editing Change Status

To edit an change status,

1. In the Change Status list page, click the edit icon \textcircled{编辑} beside the change status name that you wish to edit.
2. In the \textbf{Edit Change Status} form, edit the fields you want to change.
3. Click \textbf{Save} to save the changes. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click \textbf{Cancel}.

Even while editing a change status, if you wish to add a new change status, then click \textbf{Save and add new} button instead of clicking Save button after making the changes.

Delete Change Status

1. From the Change Status list page, enable the check box beside the change status name that you wish to delete.
2. Click \textbf{Delete} button. A confirmation dialog appears.
3. Click \textbf{OK} to proceed with the deletion. The change status gets deleted from the available list. If you do not wish to delete the change status, then click \textbf{Cancel}.

\textit{Zoho Corporation}
Change Advisory Board

The Change Advisory Board (CAB) is a body that exists to approve changes and to assist Change Management in the assessment and priorities of changes. The members of the CAB are selected based on their expertise and capability to assess change adequately from business and technical point of view.

To add new a CAB,

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Problem/Change Management block, click the Change Advisory Board icon. The Change Advisory Board (CAB) page opens.
4. Click New CAB button to open the Add CAB page.
5. Specify the Name of the CAB in the given text field. It is a mandatory field.
6. Specify the Description of the CAB in the description field.
7. Click Add CAB Member icon to select the members for the CAB. The list of users appears in a pop up window. If the list is vast, select the number of users to be listed in a page from Show page drop down box. You can navigate to the next and previous pages using the navigation options.
8. Select the members of the CAB from the users list by enabling the check box beside their name and clicking Add CAB Member button. Click Add CAB Member and close, to add a CAB Member and close the pop up window.
9. The selected Members in this CAB are listed in the Add CAB page. You can delete a CAB Member on selecting the delete icon beside their name.
10. Click Save to save the CAB details and return to the list view. Click Save and Add New button to save the CAB and add another CAB.
Change Additional Fields

You have pre-defined fields by default in the New Change form to enter the change details in the form. If you need any additional fields in the New Change form then, you can add your own additional fields using this option. You can add text, numeric and date/time fields in the form.

To add change additional fields,

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Problem/Change Management block, click the Change Additional Fields icon. This opens the Change Additional Fields page. You can add three types of fields in the form: text, numeric and date/time.
4. To add the text fields, enter the label name in the form fields below the Label heading. If required, enter the description for the field.
5. You can choose the type of text field to add by selecting the radio buttons.
   - A Single-line text field allows you to add just a text field.
   - The Multi-line text field allows you to add a text box where a lengthy description can be added.
   - A Pick List allows you to add a list menu from which you can select. In all the three cases, you can add default values for the text field in the space provided for the same.
6. To add items for the pick list, enter the value in the text filed and click Add Item. To select the default selected value of the list, click on the value in the list.
7. To add numeric fields, click the Numeric tab and then enter the label name in the form fields provided for the same.
8. To add date/time fields, click the Date/Time tab and enter the required details.
9. Click Save. A message for successful creation of the fields is displayed.

These fields appear under the grouping Additional Change Details in the New Change form. To delete the user-defined fields, in step 4 through 7, instead of adding the label names, delete the label names that you wish to remove from the fields of the form and click Save. The respective fields that you deleted will be removed from the New Change form.
Change Closure Rules

Change closing rules can be used to select the mandatory fields to be filled in by the technicians before closing the changes.

**Example:** If you have selected Impact as a mandatory field, then the technician whoever doing the change, should enter all the impact details of the change before closing it. Else an error message pops up, asking you to enter the details of the impact in the corresponding field.

To select the mandatory fields,

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the **user name** and **password**.
2. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
3. In the **Problem/Change Management** block, click the **Change Closure Rules** icon. This opens the Change Closure Rules page.
4. Select the mandatory fields for closing the change from the list by enabling the check box.
5. Save the details.
Discovery

Discovery - Scan Workstations and Other Network Devices

With ServiceDesk Plus you can scan all your windows domain, networks part of your enterprise, Linux, MAC, Solaris, AIX machines and IP based IT assets. Also, you can set up audits for scheduling periodic scanning and regular cleanup, scan assets in remote locations and perform individual scan for newly added workstations.

**Note**

1. Please note that, only technicians with administrator privilege can perform and configure a Scan.
2. ServiceDesk Plus currently supports scanning for the following OS - **Linux**, **Solaris**, **MAC**, **IBM-AIX** and IP devices - **Printers**, **Routers**, **Switches** and **Access Points**.

Scanning Mechanisms

- **Windows Domain Scan**

  Scans all the **Windows Workstations and Servers** that are,
  
  a. part of **Windows domain**
  
  b. scanned using **Active Directory**, and
  
  c. part of **Windows workgroup**

  You can also scan workstations using an Agent or Agentless mode (scans machines using WMI).

- **Network Scan**

  Scan workstations and devices that are part of your network range. Network Scan supports,

  a. OS workstations like, **Linux**, **MAC**, **Solaris**, **IBM-AIX** machines
  
  b. **Windows workgroup** (workstations that are not part of any domain controller).
  
  c. IP devices like **Printer**, **Router**, **Switches** and **Access Points**.

- **Schedule Scan**

  Schedule scan at periodic intervals to scan domains and networks that are part of your enterprise. Also, you can set re-scanning intervals to discover newly added workstations.
• Scanning machines outside a domain/network

Scan **Windows Workstations and Servers** outside a domain/network using **Standalone Workstation Audit** or by installing an **Agent** in the remote machine. Both these methods involve script installed in the remote workstations which scans and pushes the inventory details to the SDP server.

• Workstations/Device Scan

Use this option to scan an individual or newly added machines in your network. Machines like **Windows**, **Linux**, **Solaris**, **IBM-AIX**, **MAC** and IP devices like **Printers**, **Routers**, **Switches** and **Access Points** are currently supported.

• Distributed Asset Scan

For all your remotely located workstations that cannot be accessed by the Central SDP server, a Remote AE server is installed in each location which scans the workstation information, and pushes the data to the Central server either manually or automatically.
Scan Windows Machine

ServiceDesk Plus provides you various options to scan your Windows machines. You can scan machines that are part of a domain, network, workgroup and even schedule to scan the windows machines. Apart from this, you can scan remotely located Windows machines and workstations that are manually entered in the application.

Scanning Mechanisms

- Types of Scan
- Modes of Scan

Types of Scan

The list below shows the different methods through which a Windows machine can be scanned:

- Windows Domain Scan
  
  Scans all the **Windows Workstations and Servers** that are,
  
  a. part of **Windows domain**
  b. scanned using **Active Directory**, and
  c. part of **Windows workgroup**

  By default, when you start the application for the first time, the Windows domain in the network is automatically discovered.

- Network Scan

  Windows workstation that are part of a network can be scanned using the Network Scan. The communication protocol and login credentials for windows workstations are given below,

  a. **Communication Protocol**: WMI or Agent
  b. **Login Credentials**: Credentials of the domain controller

- Scanning machines outside a domain/network

  The Windows workstations/servers that are not part of a domain or network are scanned using **Standalone Workstation Audit** or by installing an **Agent** in the remote machine. The remote workstations are scanned using a script and the inventory details are pushed to the SDP Server.

- Workstation/Device Scan

  Scan your newly added windows machines by specifying the workstation/device credentials.
Modes of Scan

- Agent Mode

Agent based scanning involves an agent to be deployed in Windows workstations through Active Directory or Windows Domain Scan deployed manually or from the ServiceDesk Plus Application. The Agent mode is easy to deploy, more secure and provides easy access for remote control.

- Agentless Mode

Agentless mode uses a built-in agent such as Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI) installed in each Windows machines. The ServiceDesk Plus server should be installed in a Windows machine to scan Windows workstations and servers.
Modes of Scan: Agent and Agentless

With the evolution of network discovery solutions in recent times, two technologies have emerged into existence - Agent and Agent-less mode of scan. While Agent-less scans inventories using WMI (Windows Management Instrumentation) and does not involve any client side software installed in the host, the Agent is an instance of software, installed in the host to scan inventories and access them remotely.

ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus supports both, Agentless and Agent modes to scan all your Windows workstation and servers.

This section will cover the following topics:-

- Agent Mode
  - Methods of Deployment
  - Uninstalling Agent
- Agentless Mode
**Agent Mode**

For a wide spread organization with a complex network infrastructure, the Agent based scanning is most effective and provides easy deployment, more security and low bandwidth.

The application provides an agent, which can be deployed in the network workstations through various methods. [Refer Methods of Agent Deployment]. Once the agent is deployed in the network workstations, it scans all the workstations and provides easy access for remote assistance.

The following topics are discussed in this section:-

- Agent Settings
- Agent Configuration in ServiceDesk Plus application
- Delta Scan
- Pros and Cons of Agent mode

**Agent Settings**

Choose to scan all your Windows workstations in both, Agent and Agentless mode by selecting the corresponding option from Agent Settings under the Admin tab. If you have enabled Agentless mode, the Windows workstation and servers are scanned using WMI. If you have enabled both the modes, the agent based scanning is performed and if that fails, the agentless scanning is performed.

**Note**

1. **Windows** is the only Supported Platform for Agent.
2. The Ports used in Agent based Scanning are TCP 9000.
Agent Configurations

For a successful scan, the agent should communicate with the ServiceDesk Plus server. The server details are configured under **Agent Configurations**. By default, the server in which the application is installed is populated as the server details.

![Agent Configuration](image)

You can modify these configurations to create your own Agent Configurations.

- **Server Name**: The server name or IP address of the computer where ServiceDesk Plus is installed. The agent residing in the client computers communicates with the ServiceDesk Plus server using this Server Name/IP address.
- **Server Port**: The port configured for the application.
- **Protocol**: The protocol used to communicate with the server.
- **Agent Port**: The port number of the agent.
- **Scan at System Startup**: On enabling this option, the agent scans the workstation on every startup.

Click **Create New Agent** button. Clicking on **Cancel** takes you to the agent settings page.

**NOTE:**

a. You can also modify the configurations to create your own Agent Configurations.
b. If the agent is installed in all the Windows machines and if any of the below circumstances occurs, the agent details can be updated using a script.
   a. ServiceDesk Plus application is moved from one server to another or if the AE port or protocol (http or https) has been changed.
   b. If agent port needs to be changed in all the machines or enable/disable scanning on system startup.

This script can be run as a logon script in the Active Directory or manually in each machine to update the configurations in the agent. While executing the script, the parameters should be in the format "-servername <AE server name> -port <AE port> -protocol <http or https>".

Please contact our support team for the script.
Delta Scan

While performing a scan (Domain scan or Scheduling a scan) through Agent or Agentless mode, some amount of data is obtained in the ServiceDesk Plus Server. The data obtained in the AE Server through an Agent scan is comparatively minimal to that of Agentless. The agent transfers only the changes ("delta") that occur between two subsequent scans to the server, and automatically strips out any unchanged data, thus reducing the data transfer to 1 - 2kb instead of the usual 20 - 30kb.

Pros and Cons of Agent Mode

Agent based scan Pros:

1. Only one port is required during scan, which can be configured under Admin -> Agent settings -> Agent Configuration -> Agent Port.
2. Performs scan on system boot up and pushes the data to AE application.
3. The data transfer in agent scan is very minimal compared to agentless scan and even more less when compared to delta scan (difference in data between two subsequent scans is fetched).
4. Quick access to the remote machine on performing Remote Control.
5. Easy to deploy agent through active directory.
6. Dependencies over DCOM and RPC settings are eliminated.
7. Once the agent is installed in all the machines, you can scan those machines from Linux server.

Agent based scan Cons:

1. Agent should be upgraded if the version is changed. This can be performed from the Active Directory.
Methods of Agent Deployment

If you have enabled Agent Mode, you can deploy the agent in the Windows machine through any of the methods given below,

**Agent Deployment Methods**

**ServiceDesk Plus installed in Windows server:**

1. Import from Active Directory logon script
2. ServiceDesk Plus Application
   - Bulk Deployment of Agent
   - Upgrading the Agent
   - Installing Agent in individual machine
3. Manual Installation of Agent
4. Installing Agent through PsExec utility

**ServiceDesk Plus installed in Non-Windows server:**

1. Import from Active Directory logon script
2. Manual Installation of Agent
3. Installing Agent through PsExec utility
4. Configuring Agent details using Orca editor

**ServiceDesk Plus installed in Windows server**

If ServiceDesk Plus is installed in a Windows server, then you can deploy the agent using the following methods,

1. **Import from Active Directory logon script**
2. **Deploying Agent from ServiceDesk Plus Application**
3. **Manual Installation of Agent**
4. **Installing Agent through PsExec utility**

**Method #1: Import from Active Directory logon script**

An instant method to push the agent in all the Windows machine within a domain is through Active Directory logon script. Instead of providing permission to all the scanned workstations for file transfer, the agent is installed once the user logs into the machine. In addition, the agent can be deployed to all the newly added workstations automatically on scheduling an AD Import.

To install the agent from Active Directory,

1. Create a network share like, `\\MyServer\MyShare`
2. Click **Download Agent** and run the agent.msi file.
3. Save the agent and the script in the network share.
4. In your Domain controller, click **Start -> Administrative Tools -> Active Directory Users and Computers.**
5. In the console tree, right click on your domain, and select Properties.


7. Right click on the name of domain or the Organizational unit for which you would like to configure the script. Click Create and Link a GPO Here... option.
8. Type a name for the new GPO say, AGENT DOWNLOAD and click **Ok**. The GPO is added to the existing list.
9. Right click on the newly created GPO and click on **Edit** option.

10. In the new window go to the **User Configuration** -> **Windows settings** -> scripts -> double click Logon.
11. In the new Logon Properties window click on **Add**. Now Browse and select the script "\MyServer\MyShare\InstallAgent.vbs". The script should be accessible by the target workstations.
12. Specify the Script parameters as msi file name with path (eg. \MyServer\MyShare\ManageEngineServiceDesk PlusAgent.msi) and click **Ok**.
13. Close the Group Policy Window and click **Ok**.
15. When the client computer starts the agent is automatically installed.

**Note**

1. The agent can be deployed to all the Windows Workstations and Servers within the domain.
2. The agent is deployed when the user logs into the machine.

**Method #2: Deploying the Agent from ServiceDesk Plus Application**

Apart from Active Directory which involves deployment of agent in workstations of a particular domain, you can deploy agents in workstations that are part of a network group or workgroup from the ServiceDesk Plus application. You can choose to deploy the agent as a bulk or in individual machines.
Configurations essential to deploy the agent from the AE application

1. Scan the workstations using the Scanning Prerequisites.
2. After a successful scan, enable "File and Printer share" on executing the command (given below) in the command prompt of the workstation to install the agent.

```plaintext
netsh firewall set service FILEANDPRINT
```

**a. Bulk Deployment of Agent**

1. From the Workstation Configuration page, click on Agent Details link. The workstation for which the agent is not installed is listed.

2. Select the check box beside the workstations for which the agent should be installed.
3. Click Install Now. The agent is installed in the selected workstations.

**b. Upgrading the Agent**

In certain cases, the agent installed in the workstation may be of an older version. You can upgrade to the latest agent version from the AE application,

1. Select Agent with older version from the Filter drop down.
2. Select the check box beside the workstations for which the agent should be upgraded.
3. Click Upgrade.
c. Installing Agent in Individual machine

In credentials for Agent Installation page,

- **Name/IP**: Enter the workstation name or the IP address of the workstation for which the agent should be installed.
- **Login Credentials**: Select the login credentials as either Global or Local. Global credentials are common login permissions for all the assets. Local credentials are private login permissions for an asset.
- If you have enabled **Local Credentials**, specify the login credentials to your machine.

If you have enabled **Global Credentials**

- **Scan Type**: Specify the scan type as Domain mode/Network mode under which the workstation is configured.
- **Domain Name**: Select the Domain name/network under which the workstation is configured.
- **Login Name & Password**: Specify the domain credentials.

**Method #3: Manual Installation of Agent**

To download and install the agent as a service.

1. Click on **Download Agent** button.
2. Run the ManageEngineServiceDeskPlusAgent.msi file. The **ManageEngine Asset Explorer Agent Setup Wizard** appears.
3. Click **Next >**.
4. Choose the **Installation folder** name under which the Agent needs to be installed. By default, the folder name is specified as C:\ManageEngine\ServiceDesk directory.
If you want to change the installation directory, then, click the **Browse** button beside the directory path. From the file chooser window, choose the directory of your choice and click **Ok**.

5. Click **Next >**.
6. The next step is **Agent Configurations**, if you have not yet configured the agent, you can specify the server details and agent settings. Click **Next >**.
7. You also have an option to enable scan whenever the **system starts up**. Click **Next** to install the agent.

**Method #4: Installing Agent through PsExec Utility**

You can install agents through PsExec utility in Windows Workgroup.

1. Download the PsTools.
2. Install the software in one of the Windows machine.
3. From the command prompt, go to the directory where the PsTools is installed.
4. Execute the command as given below, to install the agent on each computer listed in the file.

   ```
   psexec.exe @<file name> -u <domain name>\user name> -p <password> 
   msiexec /i <msi file name>
   ```

   **For example:**

   ```
   psexec.exe @ComputersList.txt -u WORKGROUP\administrator -p password 
   msiexec /i "\ae-test1\msi\ManageEngineServiceDesk PlusAgent.msi"
   ```

**ServiceDesk Plus installed in Non - Windows Server**

If ServiceDesk Plus is installed in a Non - Windows server say, Linux, you can still use the Agent Mode to scan Windows machines. But, you can neither configure the Agent details from Agent Settings page nor install and upgrade the agent from the Linux server.

Some of the methods through which you can configure and deploy the agents are,

1. **Importing from Active Directory logon script**
2. **Installing Agent through PsExec utility**

**Method #1: Import from Active Directory logon script**

To deploy the agent through Active Directory, use the logon script and provide additional parameters as given below,

```
<agent with directory name> <server protocol> <server ip> <server name> <server port> <agent port>
```
For example:

\server\share\ManageEngineServiceDesk PlusAgent.msi http 192.168.112.153 servicedesk 8080 9000

On entering the additional parameters, follow the steps as in Active Directory logon script.

Method #2: Installing Agent through PsExec Utility

You can install agents through PsExec utility in Windows Workgroup.

1. Download the PsTools.
2. Install the software in one of the Windows machine.
3. From the command prompt, go to the directory where the PsTools is installed.
4. Execute the command as given below, to install the agent on each computer listed in the file.

    psexec.exe @ComputersList.txt -u administrator -p Zoho123SDP msiexec /i <msi file name>
    SERVERIP=<server ip address> SERVERNAME=<servername> PROTOCOL=<http or https> PORT=<port no> AGENTPORT=<agent port> SCANATBOOT=<0 or 1>

For example:

    psexec.exe @ComputersList.txt -u WORKGROUP\administrator -p password msiexec /i "\Linux_Agent.msi" SERVERIP=199.1.1.1 SERVERNAME=servicedesk PROTOCOL=http PORT=8080 AGENTPORT=9000 SCANATBOOT=1

Configuring Agent details using Orca editor

To configure the agent details, you need to modify the .msi file using Orca editor and then proceed with the installation. Once the parameters are configured, you can install the agent using Active Directory logon script or through PsExec utility.

1. Download the Orca editor.
2. Install the editor in one of the Windows machine.
3. Download the agent from ServiceDesk Plus server and copy it to the Windows machine having the Orca editor.
4. Right-click the .msi file and select Edit with Orca option. The Orca editor window pops-up, listing all the tables on the left hand side.
5. Click Property table.
6. In the right panel, right-click and select Add Row option.
7. Enter the property as SERVERNAME and value as the name of the ServiceDesk Plus server. Also, provide the following details,
### PROPERTY | VALUE
--- | ---
SERVERIP | IP Address of the ServiceDesk Plus Server
PORT | Port No. of the ServiceDesk Plus Server
PROTOCOL | Protocol used by the server, whether it is http or https.
AGENTPORT | Port No. of the Agent. This port should be open in the Windows machine to install the agent.

8. **Save** the provided details.
9. **Close** the editor and proceed with the installation.
Uninstall the Agent

You can manually un-install the agent from Add/Remove Programs or from the ServiceDesk Plus application. If you are unable to un-install the agent from the Control Panel then follow the steps below,

1. Click Workstations link from the Assets block.
2. From the Workstation list view page, click on Agent Details link. By default, the workstation for which the agent is not installed is listed.
3. Select the options either Agent with older version or Agent installed Workstations from the Filter drop down.
4. Select the check box beside the workstations to un-install the agent.
5. Click Un-install button. The agent is removed from the selected workstations.
Agentless Mode

As the name suggests, the Agentless mode does not involve any client side software installed in the host. Instead, the agent-less mode uses a built-in agent such as **WMI** ([Windows Management Instrumentation](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Windows_Management_Instrumentation)) installed in each Windows machines to scan the inventory details and to access the workstation remotely.

The agentless mode is most appropriate for small organization where the network is less complex and does not involve installing, upgrading and maintaining an additional software program on each machine.

**Credentials for Scans**

**NOTE:** Please note that the agentless supports only 'Windows' platform.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Communication Protocol</th>
<th>Login Credentials</th>
<th>Ports</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WMI (Supports only Windows platform)</td>
<td>Credentials of Domain Controller.</td>
<td>TCP 135, 445 and one random port greater than 1024.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuring RPC and DCOM Settings**

The accessibility of the data using WMI is controlled by the RPC and DCOM settings which should be configured in the workstations.

**For Windows Firewall and DCOM option**

1. Download the file `scan_setup.txt`
2. Copy the file as "scan_setup.vbs" in the target workstation.
3. Execute the script using Cscript from command prompt as follows:
   ```
   DIR_OF_SCRIPT_FILE> CSCRIPT scan_setup.vbs
   ```
4. **Restart** the workstation.

   **NOTE:** This script can also be configured as Logon Script in the Domain Controller, to configure Firewall for all computers in the domain. Click here to know more.

**Pros and Cons of Agentless mode**

**Agentless scan pros:**

1. Does not involve an agent to be installed, upgraded and maintained in each workstation.
Agentless scan cons:

1. The DCOM and RPC settings should be configured.
2. More number of ports used when compared with agent mode.
3. ServiceDesk Plus server should be installed in a Windows machine to scan windows workstations/servers.
Scan Linux, Solaris, MAC and AIX machines

Apart from scanning Windows machines, ServiceDesk Plus scans workstations/servers of other Operating Systems such as Linux, Solaris, MAC and IBM-AIX.

There are two methods, through which these machines can be scanned in ServiceDesk Plus application,

- **Network Scan** - Scan workstations/servers that are part of your network.
- **Workstation/Device Scan** - Scan your newly added machines by specifying the workstation credentials.

**Ports and Credentials to perform scan for these machines are,**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Communication Protocol</th>
<th>Login Credentials</th>
<th>Port</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Telnet</td>
<td>Telnet Credentials</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSH (Secure Shell)</td>
<td>SSH Credentials</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Click here to know more on ports used for scan.
Scan VMWare Hosts

ServiceDesk Plus scans the VMHost machines in your network and also determines the VMs that are running on these hosts. Apart from this, the scan would also discover the complete hardware details of the VMHost and the relationships between the VMHost and the VMs.

There are two methods, through which these machines can be scanned in ServiceDesk Plus application,

- Network Scan - Scans the VMHosts that are part of your network.
- Workstation/Device Scan - Scan the VM Host machine by specifying the HTTPS credentials.

Ports and Credentials to perform scan for these machines are,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Communication Protocol</th>
<th>Login Credentials</th>
<th>Port</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VMWare vSphere web services</td>
<td>HTTPS Username and Password</td>
<td>443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>API</td>
<td>(default)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Click here to know more on ports used for scan.
Scan Printers, Routers, Switches and Access Points

ServiceDesk Plus currently supports the scanning of IP devices namely, Printers, Routers, Switches and Access Points.

There are two methods, through which these devices can be scanned in the application,

Network Scan - Scans devices that are part of your network.

Workstation/Device Scan - Scan your newly added devices by specifying their credentials.

**Note:** Please note that ServiceDesk Plus does not scan other IP devices like Firewall, Hubs, IP Telephones and so on.

Ports and Credentials to perform device scan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Communication Protocol</th>
<th>Login Credentials</th>
<th>Port</th>
<th>Service Performed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol)</td>
<td>SNMP Credentials</td>
<td>161</td>
<td>Fetches and Identifies the IP devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSH (Secure Shell)</td>
<td>SSH Credentials</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>Fetches additional information on Routers and Switches.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Click here to know more on ports used for scan.
Windows Domain Scan

You can configure and scan all the available Windows Workstations and Servers in your domain network using ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus. When you set up ServiceDesk Plus application and start it for the first time, the application automatically discovers all the available Windows domain in your network.

To discover workstations in a domain,

- Select a Domain and enter the domain controller and login credentials for the domain controller.
- Select the Organizational Units (OUs) from the list.
- The workstations in the OUs are retrieved, enumerated and scanned (ten workstations are scanned simultaneously)
- The machines in the specified domain then is Pinged.
- If the machine responds to the ping, scan the inventories (hardware/software information) in the machine using Agent or Agentless mode.

The Windows Domain Scan page can be access in two ways,

a. Quick Actions drop down  
b. Admin Tab  

Quick Actions drop down

The Quick Actions drop down is a quick navigator to instantly access the Domain List page.

Admin Tab

1. Click Admin tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click Windows Domain Scan icon under Discovery. The Domain list view page opens where you can add, edit, delete and scan a domain.

Add a New Domain

If you find that there are some domains that are missing in the list, then you can add those domains manually.

1. Click Add New Domain link.
2. Enter the Domain Name. The name should be unique to identify the domain and is a mandatory field. Say, Acme.
3. If you want the domains to be displayed in the login screen when Active directory Authentication is enabled, select the check box beside Public Domain. Else un-check the Public Domain check box to list the domain as Private Domain.
4. Enter the **Domain Controller** name for the Active Directory Server. The organizational units are listed only if the domain controller name is provided.

5. Specify the Login Credentials for the domain controller in **Username** and **Password** fields.

6. If you wish to add any description for the domain, enter it in the **Description** text box.

7. Click **Save**. The domain is listed in the domain list view page.

Click **Save and Scan now** button to save and scan the domain immediately. Clicking on **Cancel** button takes you back to the list view.

| Note | For the workstation scan to execute successfully the following things need to be true:
|      | a. WMI should be enabled in the workstation where the Asset Explorer server is running.
|      | b. COM/DCOM service should be switched on in all the workstations belonging to the windows domain. |

**Scanning a Domain**

1. Click **Scan Domain** icon of the domain to be scanned from the Domain list view page.

2. Choose the **Organizational Units** for which you want to import the workstations by enabling the check box.

3. Select the **Site** to associate the scanned workstations from the **Choose Site** option. This option is available only if the sites is specified.

4. Click **Start Scanning** button to start the scanning process.

You will get the complete report of the scan listing the total number of scanned workstations, successful scanned workstations and the number of failed workstation list.

**Editing a Domain**

1. Click **Edit** icon beside the **Domain Name** you wish to edit.

2. In the **Edit Domain** form, you can modify the name of the domain, login name, password, and description of the domain.

3. Click **Save** to save the changes performed. Click **Save and Scan now** button to save and scan the domain immediately. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click **Cancel**.

**Deleting a Domain**

1. Click **Delete** icon beside the **Domain Name** you wish to delete. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.

2. Click **OK** to proceed with the deletion. The domain gets deleted from the list. If you do not wish to delete the domain, then click **Cancel**.
Network Scan

With Network Scan you can discover all the **Linux, Solaris, MAC, IBM-AIX machines** and devices such as **Printers, Routers, Switches and Access Points** that are part of your network. In addition, you can also scan **Windows machines** and **Workgroup** (Windows machines that are not part of a domain), and **VMWare Host** machines.

To discover workstations in a network,

- Enter the **Network Range** to scan.
- The workstations and devices in the network are retrieved, enumerated and scanned (ten workstations are scanned simultaneously)
- The machines in the specified range is **Ping**ed.
- If the machine responds to the ping, **scan the inventories** (hardware/software information) in the machine. Use **SSH or Telnet** for Linux, Solaris, MAC, IBM-AIX machines, **SNMP** for Printers, Routers, Switches and Access Points, **WMI** for windows machines.

The Network Scan page can be accessed by two ways in ServiceDesk Plus application,

a. Quick Actions drop down menu
b. Admin Tab

**Quick Actions drop down menu**

The **Quick Actions drop down** menu is a quick navigator to instantly access the Network Scan page. From the Quick Actions drop down select **Network Scan** option.

**Admin Tab**

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click **Network Scan** icon under Discovery block. The Network list view page opens where you can add, edit, delete and scan a network.

**Ports and Credentials to scan machines using Network Scan**

- Linux, MAC, Solaris, IBM-AIX

  **Communication Protocol:** Telnet or SSH

  **Login Credentials:** Telnet Credentials

  **Port for Telnet:** 23
Port for SSH: 22

- VMWare Host machines

**Communication Protocol**: VMWare vSphere web services API

**Login Credentials**: HTTPS Username and Password

**Port**: 443 (default port)

- Printers, Routers, Switches, Access Points

**Communication Protocol**: SNMP + SSH (devices are identified and fetched using SNMP. If SSH credentials is provided, additional information on routers and switches can be fetched)

**Port for SNMP**: 161

**Port for SSH**: 22

- Windows Machines

**Communication Protocol**: WMI or Agent

**Login Credentials**: Credentials of the domain controller

---

Add New Network

**Linux, MAC, Solaris, IBM-AIX**

1. Click **Add New Network** link.
2. Enter the **Network Address**. You can either scan the **Entire Network** say, all workstations under 192.168.27.0 or particular **Range of Network** say 192.168.27.0 to 192.168.27.30 by clicking the corresponding options.
3. Select the **Protocol** say, SSH or Telnet.
4. If license software are installed in Linux and Solaris machines, enable **Scan Software in Linux and Solaris workstations** check box.
5. If you have enabled SSH, then you have an option to enable key based authentication for Linux machines.

The key based authentication is an alternative authentication mechanism of the username and password, and it’s known to be more secure. To enable key based authentication, you need to generate a pair of public and private keys from a Linux machine. Select **Use Public Key for authentication** check box and enter the **Private Key** in the field provided.
6. If you have enabled SSH, enter the SSH login credentials. If you have enabled Telnet, enter Telnet Credentials in the **Login Name** and **Password** fields.
7. Provide any relevant information pertaining to the network details in the **Description** field.
8. Click **Save**. Click **Save and Scan now**, to save and scan the workstations in the specified range.

**VMWare Host Machines**

1. Click **Add New Network** link.
2. Enter the **Network Address**. You can either scan the **Entire Network** say, all workstations under 192.168.27.0 or particular **Range of Network** say 192.168.27.0 to 192.168.27.30 by clicking the corresponding options.
3. Enter the HTTPS credentials in the **Login Name** and **Password** fields.
4. Provide any relevant information pertaining to the network details in the **Description** field.
5. Click **Save**. Click **Save and Scan now**, to save and scan the workstations in the specified range.

**Printers, Routers, Switches and Access Points**

1. Click **Add New Network** link.
2. Enter the **Network Address**. You can either scan the **Entire Network** say, all workstations under 192.168.27.0 or particular **Range of Network** say 192.168.27.0 to 192.168.27.30 by clicking the corresponding options.
3. If the **Protocol** is SSH, enable the corresponding radio button.
4. If SSH is enabled, enter the SSH **Login Credentials** which provides additional information on routers and switches.

5. For SNMP discovery of network devices enter the **Community String**.

   SNMP is used for identification of printers, routers, switches and access points. In case of printers the complete inventory is being fetched using SNMP. In case of routers and switches basic inventory is being fetched using SNMP and a more detailed inventory is done using SSH or telnet (if credentials are provided).

6. Provide any relevant information pertaining to the network details in the **Description** field.

7. Click **Save**. Click **Save and Scan now**, to save and scan the devices in the specified range.

**Windows Machine**

1. Click **Add New Network** link.
2. Enter the **Network Address**. You can either scan the **Entire Network** say, all workstations under 192.168.27.0 or particular **Range of Network** say 192.168.27.0 to 192.168.27.30 by clicking the corresponding options.
3. Enter the **Login Credentials** of the domain controller in the **Login Name** and **Password** fields. The login Name should be provided as <DOMAIN_NAME>/<USER_NAME>. For instance, ACME/administrator.
4. Provide any relevant information pertaining to the network details in the **Description** field.
5. Click **Save**. Click **Save and Scan now**, to save and scan the workstations in the specified range.

**Scan Domain**

1. From the Network List View page, click **Scan Network** icon.
2. If your organization is distributed across various sites, select the **Site** to which the workstations/devices are associated.
3. Click **Start Scanning**. Once scanned, you will get the complete report on the success and failed workstations of the scan.

**Edit Network**

1. From the Network List View page, click the **Edit** icon of the network to be edited.
2. Edit the network details and **Save** the changes. Click **Save and Scan now**, to save and scan the workstations in the specified range.

**Delete Network**

1. From the Network List View page, click the **Delete** icon beside the network to delete. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
2. Click **OK** to continue. The network is deleted from the list.
Workstation/Device Scan

If a new workstation/device is added in your network, and you wish to scan only the newly added workstation instead of the entire network, you can specify the workstation/device credentials and scan.

You can scan workstations/devices using **Global** Credentials or **Local** Credentials. Global Credentials are common login permission for all assets which can be scanned with Domain mode or Network Mode. Local credentials are private login permissions i.e., login permission to the workstation/device to be scanned.

**Note**
Local Credentials are generally selected for scanning devices such as servers and routers which needs private or local user name and password. You can also scan VMHost machines using Local Credentials.

The Workstation/Device Scan can be access by two ways in ServiceDesk Plus application,

**a. Quick Actions drop down**

**b. Asset Tab**

**Quick Actions drop down**

Click Quick Actions drop down -> **Workstation Scan** option. The Quick Actions drop down is a quick navigator to instantly the **Scan configuration page**.

**Asset Tab**

1. From the **Assets** block, click any one of the IT Assets.
2. Click **New Scan** button to open the Scan Configuration page.
3. Specify the **Name or IP address** of the workstation to be scanned. This field is mandatory as the workstation in the network is identified with the Name or IP address.
4. Select any one of the credentials by enabling the radio button.

**Global Credentials**

1. Select the **Scan Type** from the drop down. The scan type can be either Domain Mode (if the workstation is Windows) or Network Mode.
2. Choose the **Domain Name/Network** from the drop down. If the domain/network is unavailable in the list, you can add a new domain/network using the **Add New** link. [Refer Network Scan to add a new network].
3. Specify the **Login Credentials** for the Domain/Network in the Login name and Password field.
4. If you have selected Network Mode to scan a device, enter the **Community String** of the device in the field provided.
5. Click **Scan**. The workstation/device is scanned and the information is obtained.

**Local Credentials**

1. Select the **Device Type** from the drop-down. Say, Windows, Unix or other device.
2. Select the communication **Protocol** as SSH or Telnet for workstations like Linux, Solaris, MAC, AIX and devices such as router, switches, access points and printers.
3. If license software are installed in Linux and Solaris machines, enable **Scan Software in Linux and Solaris workstations** check box.
4. If you have enabled SSH, then you have an option to enable key based authentication for Linux machines.

   The key based authentication is an alternative authentication mechanism of the username and password, and its know to be more secure. To enable key based authentication, you need to generate a pair of public and private keys from a Linux machine. Select **Use Public Key for authentication** check box and enter the **Private Key** in the field provided.
5. Specify the **Login Credentials** for the workstation/device in the Login Name and Password field.
6. Click **Scan**.

**NOTE:** To scan VMWare host machines, select the Device Type as **Other devices** from the drop-down menu and enter the HTTPS login credentials in the **Login Name** and **Password** fields.
Scanning Machines outside a domain/network

All Windows workstations/servers that are not part of a domain/network are scanned using **Standalone Workstation Audit** or by installing the **Agent** in the remote machine. Both the methods involve a script installed in the remote workstations which scans and pushes the inventory details to the SDP server.

**Method #1: Standalone Workstation Audit**

Scanning remote workstations involves two simple steps,

1. Download the `ae_scan.vbs` script from ServiceDesk Plus application and execute the script in the workstation to be scanned.
2. On executing the script a XML file is generated. Import the XML file into the ServiceDesk Plus application. You can see the standalone workstation details in the list view.

The script can also be configured as Logon/Startup script in the Domain Controller.

**Accessing Standalone Workstation Audit configuration**

The standalone Workstation Audit can be accessed from the **Quick Actions drop down**. Click Quick Actions drop down -> **Standalone Workstation Audit** option. The Quick Actions drop down is a quick navigator to instantly the Scanning Windows Workstation through WMI Script page.

1. Click the **Click to Download** option to download the `ae_scan.vbs` script. Save the file.
2. Open the command prompt. Change the directory to folder where the script is saved and execute the following script.

```
CSCRIPT ae_scan.vbs
```

3. On executing the script, a XML file is generated in the same folder.
4. Import the XML file to the application and **Submit** it.
5. On importing the XML file, the standalone workstation is scanned and gets listed in the Workstation list view page.

**Method #2: Installing Agent in the remote machine**

The Windows workstations/servers that are not part of the domain/network can also be scanned using the **Agent**. The steps involved to scan machines outside a domain/network,

1. Install the agent in the remote machines with "**Scan on system startup**" option enabled.
2. Make sure your ServiceDesk Plus server is on a **public IP** to accomplish this process.

3. **Restart** the remote machine. The system is scanned and the xml is pushed to the ServiceDesk Plus server.
Ports used during Scan

The various ports used during the scan and remote control is illustrated with the help of a diagram below,

* The range of the random port can be minimized. Click here to know how to restrict random ports.

**Note:**

1. The ports - **ICMP echo** and **ICMP echo reply**, should be allowed in the firewall as it is used to ping the target machines.
2. If the target machine has non English OS, then port TCP/7 should be added in the exception list of the firewall.
Scan WAN environment

For a Wide Area Network (WAN) such as an organization distributed across various geographical locations, two methods of scanning mechanism can be put to practice

- Distributed Asset Scan

  This method involves a Remote AE server to be installed in each geographical location to scan and maintains all the workstations, and user information of the respective sites. The data from the Remote AE Server is pushed to the Central AE Server either manually or by scheduling the data periodically.

- Open the Firewall ports between the sites.

  To know more on this section refer Ports used for scan.
Schedule Scan

With Schedule Scan, you can schedule periodic scanning of your domain/network, enable regular cleanup of scanned information and set re-scanning interval for scanning workstation.

To access the schedule scan configuration page,

1. Click the Admin tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click Schedule Scan icon under Discovery block. The Schedule Scan form opens.

Enabling Schedule Scan

Select Enable Scheduled Scan check box to configure regular scanning of the workstations. Select any of the 5 radio buttons below:

- **Scan Once**
  Select the date on which you want to scan your network using the calendar icon. And set the time to scan on the chosen date.

- **Daily Scan**
  Select the time (hours and minutes) from the combo box to scan workstations on a daily basis. Then select the date from the calendar button to schedule scans.

- **Weekly Scan**
  In the weekly scan option, you can also choose to schedule a daily scan. Select Everyday check box to enable scan on all the days of the week. Or, select the check box beside a particular day of the week. Then set the time (hours and minutes) of the scan to start the scanning process on the selected day of the week.

- **Monthly Scan**
  In the monthly scan option select the check box Every Month to scan every month throughout the year. Or, you can also choose the months you want to scan by selecting the check box beside the name of the months.

  Also, you can choose to schedule a weekly scan by enabling the radio button Day and select the scanning day of the week from the drop down. Or, select Date radio button and select the date from the drop down.

  Finally select the time (hours and minutes) of the scan.

- **Periodic Scan**
  You can enter a random period of time to repeat the scan. Enter the number in the field provided. The scan will be performed on every specified nth day. Where n is the number you enter in the field. The default value is 7th day.

Scan History Clean up

You can enable regular cleanup of the scanned information, by selecting the Enable Scan History Clean up check box and specifying the number of days after which the scanned history information should be deleted.
NOTE: We suggest you to clean up the scanned history periodically to enhance ServiceDesk Plus performance.

Checking for Newly Added workstations

You can also check for newly added workstations by performing a re-scan of your domain/network. For this you need to select Check for newly added workstations check box and enter the number of days when the periodic re-scanning of your domain/network should be performed.

Click Save, to save the details. Click Reset button to reorganize the settings.
Distributed Asset Scan

In a wide spread organization distributed across various sites, the ServiceDesk Plus server may not be able to access all the assets in sites. Hence, a Remote AE server is installed in each site which scans and maintains all the workstations, and user information of the respective sites. The data from the Remote AE Server is pushed to the ServiceDesk Plus Server either manually or by scheduling the data periodically.

Since there is a constant need to update the users and workstation information in the ServiceDesk Plus Server, you can automate the process by specifying the central server details in the remote server thereby synchronizing the two servers.

Methods to perform Distributed Asset Scan

Manual

1. Extract the data in a zip format from the Remote AE server and export it to the SDP server.
2. Import this zip file into the SDP Server.

Auto Synchronization

1. Configure the SDP Server details in Central Server Settings.
2. Select Export and Push data to Central Server now button. The data is automatically pushed to the SDP server provided the server is reachable.
Asset Scan in Remote AE Server

The scanned information in the Remote AE Server can be updated periodically either manually or automatically to the SDP Server.

Installing the Remote AE Server

You can install AssetExplorer as a Remote Server by choosing the server type as Remote AE Server on starting the application for the first time. The application gets started as the Remote AE Server.

Accessing the Configuration

1. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
2. Click Distributed Asset Scan icon under Discovery block.

Methods to export the data

The data can be exported manually or pushed automatically in the SDP Server.

Manual

1. Click on Export Data to export the asset data into a zip file.
2. A confirmation message appears. Click Ok to proceed.
3. If the data has been generated successfully, an Export Data box pops up.
4. Click on the link to download the zip.
5. Send the zip file to the central server location through E-mail or through some storage device.
Auto Synchronization

If the central server is reachable, configure the details of the SDP Server by clicking on Central Server Settings.

- **Server Name**: Enter the Server Name or IP Address of the SDP Server.
- **Server Port**: The port where the SDP Server is installed.
- **Server Protocol**: The protocol to connect the SDP server and the remote server. Say, Http, Https
- **Site**: Site where the Remote AE Server is installed. The site specified must be configured in the SDP server so that the assets and users is associated to the appropriate site.
- **Username & Password**: Credentials of the SDP Server.
- **Domain Name**: Specify Domain Name if Active Directory authentication is enabled in SDP Server.

The Central Server may be connected through a proxy server. In this case,

- Enable **Is connected through Proxy Server** check box.
- **Proxy Server Name**: The Server Name or IP Address of the Proxy server.
- **Proxy Server Port**: The port of the proxy server.
- **Proxy Username & Password**: Credentials of the Proxy Server.

On configuring the Central Server Settings, you can export and push the data to central server automatically by clicking on **Export and Push Data to Central Server Now** button. The executed date, status of the operation and related comments is displayed in the List View.

**Schedule Pushing of data to SDP Server**

You can schedule to push the data from the remote AE server to the SDP Server at periodic intervals.

1. Click on **Schedule to synchronize data with Central Server** link.
2. Select **Enable** radio button.
3. Select the number of days after which the data should be pushed to the central server.
4. Select the date from the calendar icon to start the process. Also select the **Time** in hours and minutes from the drop down.
5. If there is a failure in pushing the data to the central server, you can send a **Notify** to the technician. Specify the email address in the text provided.
Importing data into SDP Server

Accessing the Configuration

1. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.

2. Click on Distributed Asset Scan icon under Discovery block.

3. Click Browse and locate the zip file of the scanned assets.

4. Select the Site of the remote server from the drop down.

5. Click Import button to import the data. On importing the data successfully you get a success message.
General Settings

In General Settings, you can configure Invalid Service Tags, provide option for MAC address identification during scan, and for OIDs with unknown type; option to specify the product type and product name.

Configure Invalid Service Tags

While performing a scan, the Workstations and Servers are uniquely identified based on its Service Tags, Name and MAC address. So when the service tags are not incorrectly configured by the OEM, many machines would result in similar service tags. In such cases, if a scan is performed, one workstation details would be overwritten by the other. To avoid this, you can add the service tag under Invalid Service Tag list such that, the workstations with the service tag is ignored during a scan.

Enable/Disable MAC address identification during scan

Machines connected through VPN or VMware have similar MAC address. So while performing a scan in similar network environment, one machine is overwritten by the other. Hence you can uniquely identify the MAC address by enabling/disabling the radio button.

OIDs with Unknown Type

While performing a scan, the routers, switches, printers and access point in the network generate an OID which uniquely denotes the assets. If the OID of the asset is not available in the database, a new entry is populated from where you can choose the product type and specify the product name.
The below table lists the OIDs which were detected during scan but the corresponding product is unavailable. Kindly choose the product type and specify the product name so that it would be used during subsequent scans.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OID</th>
<th>Identified In</th>
<th>Product Type</th>
<th>Product</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.1.3</td>
<td>192.168.113.59</td>
<td>-- Select --</td>
<td>HP 305S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.6.1.4.1.311.1.1.3.1.2</td>
<td>192.168.113.64</td>
<td>Access Point</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.1.3.6.1.2.1.1.2</td>
<td>192.168.113.222</td>
<td>Printer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Asset Management

The Asset module of the ServiceDesk Plus application enables you to keep track of the various assets available in your organization and their corresponding usage and availability. It also helps you monitor your assets online in any of the networks in your firm. This helps you in proactively planning your resource allocation and purchases. Before you start using the inventory module, you have to configure the inventory-related information.

The inventory-related configurations are:

- **Product Type**: Categorize all the products purchased by your organization into specific product types.
- **Product**: Denotes the assets purchased by your organization.
- **Vendors**: Configure the vendors with whom your organization has business contacts for purchasing resources.
- **Workstation-Additional Fields**: Set your own custom fields apart from the default fields in the add workstation form.
- **Assets-Additional Fields**: Set your own custom fields apart from the default fields in the add assets form.
- **Resource State**: Configure the various states of a resource in the Asset Lifecycle.
- **CMDB - Configuration Item Types (CI Types)**: Categorize your CIs into specific CI Types. Also configure default attributes and relationships for each CI Type.
- **CMDB - Relationship Types**: Configure relationships types between the CIs. The Relationship Types shows how the CIs are interconnected and interdependent with other CIs.
Configuring Product Types

Each product purchased by a firm can be categorized into a specific product type. This is the high-level categorization for the assets that are bought. For example, Adobe Photoshop or Macromedia Flash can be categorized under the product type Software, while HP Inkjet Printer can be categorized under the product type Printer. In general, product type is a parent category under which you can group each of the specific assets owned by your firm. Proper categorization helps in estimating how much has been spent for purchasing each of the product type assets (Printer, Scanners, etc.), how much assets in each of the product types are available in the organization and so on.

- **Product Type:** Product Type is the high level categorization in grouping products. Say, Workstations in an organization are grouped under the product type "Workstations".
- **Type:** Type is a subdivision of product types that is classified into Asset, Components and Consumable. Say, Workstation is an Asset, Keyboard is a Component and the Printer Toner is Consumable.
- **Category:** Category is a common attribute of Product Types and Types. They are classified into IT and Non-IT. Say, Workstation is an IT asset, and Projector and Scanners are Non - IT assets.

Example: Adobe Photoshop & HP Inkjet Printer can be categorized as,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assets</th>
<th>Product Type</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Category</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adobe Photoshop/Macromedia</td>
<td>Software Licenses</td>
<td>Components</td>
<td>IT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Licenses</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HP Inkjet Printer</td>
<td>Printer</td>
<td>Asset</td>
<td>IT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To open the product type configuration page:

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
3. In the **Asset Management** block, click the **Product Types** icon. The next page displays the available list of product types. You can add, edit, or delete product types.

**Adding Product Type**

To add a product type,

1. Click **Add New Product Type** link.
2. In the **Add Product Type** form, specify the **Product Type Name** which will uniquely identify the individual product types. Say, Printer.
3. Select the **Type** from the drop down. Say, Asset, Component, and Consumable.
4. Select the **Category** from the drop down. Say, IT, Non-IT.
5. Specify any relevant information about the product type in the **Description** field.
6. Click **Save** button.

If you want to add more than one product type, then instead of clicking Save, click **Save and add new** button. This adds the new product type and reopens the add product type form after displaying a message that the a new product type is added.

At any point, if you decide not to add the new product type, then click **Cancel** to get back to the product type list. Clicking the **View List** link on the top right corner of the add product type form will also take you to the product type list view.

**Editing Product Type**

To edit a product type,

1. In the **Product Types List** page, click the **edit** icon beside the **Product Type Name** that you wish to edit.
2. In the **Edit Product Type** form, you can edit the product type name, type, category and the description.
3. Click **Save**. At any point, if you wish to cancel the operation that you are performing, click **Cancel**.

Even while editing a product type, if you wish to add new product type, then click **Save and add new** button instead of clicking **Save** button after making the changes.

**Deleting Product Types**

To delete a product type,

1. In the **Product Types List** page, select the check box beside the product type to delete.
2. Click **Delete** button. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **OK** to proceed with the deletion. If you do not want to delete the product type, then click **Cancel**.
Configure Products

Products refer to the commodities purchased by your organization. For instance, the workstation "Latitude D600" is a Product with the Product Type "Workstation". You can either import the product details from a CSV file or manually add the products in the application. Configuring products are essential while adding assets in the Asset module and while purchasing products using the Purchase Order form.

As and when the firm purchases a product, the product details should be entered in the application. If a product is discarded, then you can remove it from the list by deleting the same.

Most of the products wear out and decrease in value, over a period of time. For such products, calculating the depreciation is essential for financial reporting. You can configure depreciation using any of the 4 methods provided in the application.

To access the Product configuration wizard,

1. Login to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Asset Management block, click the Products icon. The Product List view is displayed. You can add products, edit and delete products, and configure depreciation for products.

Adding Product

To add products,

1. In the Product List page, click Add New Product link available at the top right corner.
2. In the Add Product form, select the Product Type under which you wish to classify the product that you are adding from the drop-down.
3. Enter the Product Name. This field cannot be blank.
4. If you know the manufacturer of the product, enter the same in the Manufacturer field.
5. Enter the Part No. of the product.
6. If required, you can add relevant Description for the product.
7. Click Save. A message is displayed and the product is added. Click Save and Add New to save the product details and open the add product form to add another product. Click Cancel to go back to the Product List page, without saving the details.

Configuring Depreciation

If the selected Product Type is an asset or component, then the Depreciation Details block is displayed. ServiceDesk Plus allows 4 methods to calculate the depreciation of a product.
Methods of Calculating Depreciation

- Declining Balance
- Double Declining Balance
- Straight Line
- Sum of the Years Digit

Before we begin configuring depreciation, there are certain terms related to depreciation calculation:

- **Useful Life**: The period during which an asset is expected to be available for use.
- **Salvage Value**: The estimated selling value of any asset, after it has reached the end of service life or its value has depreciated substantially. It is the total net worth of any asset after it has exhausted its useful life span.

To configure depreciation details while adding the product,

1. Select the **Depreciation Method** from the drop down box. If the Depreciation Method is **Declining Balance**, then the **Useful Life** radio button and **Decline Percent** radio button appears. If the depreciation method is **Straight Line**, then the **Useful Life** radio button and **Depreciation Percent** radio button appears.
2. Specify the **Useful Life** of the product. If you have enabled Decline Percent or Depreciation Percent radio button, then specify the **Decline Percent** or **Depreciation Percent** of the product.
3. Specify the **Salvage Value** of the product.
4. Click **Save** button.

If you have not configured the depreciation details for a product, then you can also configure it from the Product List view.

1. Select the check box beside the product for which you want to configure depreciation.
2. Click **Configure Depreciation** button.
3. Select the **Depreciation Method** from the drop down box.
4. Specify the **Useful Life** and the **Salvage Value** of the product.
5. Click **Save** button. The depreciation details are configured for the selected product(s).

The configured Depreciation Details can be viewed in the **Costs** tab of the Assets details page. The depreciation is calculated only if the Purchase Cost and Acquisition Date is specified for the asset.

**Associating Vendor**

You can also associate the vendor to a product. To do so,

1. Click the **Vendor** tab.
2. Select the vendor of the product from **Vendor Name** drop-down.
3. Enter the **Price** of the product. The Vendor Name and Price are mandatory fields.
4. If there is any **Tax Rate** for the product, specify the same in the field provided.
5. If you know the warranty period of the product, enter it in the **Warranty Period** by choosing the number of years and months from the combo box.
6. Select the **Maintenance Vendor** of the product from the drop-down.
7. If you wish to add any comments, add it in the **Comments** text box.
8. Click **Save** to save the details. You can add more than one vendor who supplies the product. The vendors associated to the product information is displayed below the add vendor form.

If you do not wish to associate the vendor now, then click **Cancel**. It goes back to the **Product List** page.

**Edit Product**

You can edit the product details from the Product List page. To edit the product information,

1. Click the **Edit** icon beside **Product Name** in the **Product List** page.
2. Edit the fields in the form.
3. Click **Save** to save the details. While editing a product, you can also add new product by clicking Save and Add New button. Click Cancel to go back to the Product List page.

In some instances, you may add the product without associating the vendor. In such cases, you need to edit the product to associate the vendor.

1. Click the **Vendor** tab to associate a vendor for the product.
2. The Product Name is a non-editable field but you can add/edit the other fields in the form.
3. Click **Save**.

**Delete Product**

If a product is not used by a module, then you can delete the product from the list.

1. In the **Product List** page, enable the check box beside the product name.
2. Click **Delete** button. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **OK** to proceed. The product is deleted from the list.
Configure Vendors

An organization can have business contacts with more than one vendor for buying the various resources of the organization. It is very essential for the firm to keep track of its vendors and the products supplied by these vendors. To configure these details, you can use the configuring vendors option available in the admin page.

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Asset Management block, click the Vendors icon. You can add, edit, or delete vendors.

Add Vendors

To add vendors:

1. In the Vendor List page, click Add New Vendor link available at the top right corner.
2. In the Add Vendor form, enter the Vendor Name. This name needs to be unique and this field cannot be blank. All the other fields are optional.
3. Enter relevant Description for the vendor.
4. Enter the Contact Name at the vendor location.
5. Enter the address details of the vendor in the respective fields.
6. Enter the vendor e-mail ID, phone, fax, and web URL.
7. Click Save. A message is displayed and the vendor is added. Simultaneously, a Products tab is also added. This tab is for adding the list of products that are supplied by the vendor.
8. Click the Products tab.
9. Click Associate Product button.
10. In the associate product form, choose the product name from the combo box and enter the price of the product. These are the two fields that are mandatory.
11. If you know the warranty period of the product, enter it in the Warranty Period by choosing the number of years and months from the combo box.
12. Choose the maintenance vendor from the combo box.
13. If you wish to add any comments, add it in the Comments text box.
14. Click Add. The page is refreshed to display the product association information. Repeat the steps 9 - 14, till you have added all the products supplied by this vendor.

If you do not wish to add the product list after opening the associate product form, then click Cancel. It goes back to the Vendor Details tab.

If you wish to add more than one vendor, then in step 7, instead of clicking Save, click Save and add new button. This would add the vendor and open the add vendor form for you to add more vendors. In this case, the product list needs to be added later. To get back to the vendor list page without adding the vendor or after adding the list of product supplied by the vendor, click View List link at the top right corner of the Add Vendor form.
Edit Vendor

If you have added the vendor without adding the product list, then you have to add the list of product supplied by the vendor only by editing the vendor information.

To edit the vendor information:

1. Click the edit icon beside Vendor Name in the Vendor List page.
2. In the Edit Vendor form, you can edit all the form fields mentioned in the add vendor procedure.
3. Click the Products tab to add the list of products supplied by the vendor and follow the steps 9 through 14 in add vendors.

Even while editing the vendor information, if you wish to see the vendor list page, click the View List link at the top right corner of the Edit Vendor form. Also if you want to add a new vendor, then in the vendor details tab, click the Save and add new button.

Delete Vendors

To delete a vendor, it is necessary that the product vendor association is first removed and then the vendor is deleted. Also ensure that the particular vendor is not used elsewhere. Follow the steps below to delete a vendor:

1. In the Vendor List page, click the edit icon beside Vendor Name.
2. Click the Products tab.
3. Click the delete icon beside the Products. A confirmation dialog is opened.
4. Click OK to proceed with the deletion. Delete all the products listed.
5. Click view list link on the top right corner of the center pane.
6. Now, click the delete icon beside the Vendor Name for which you removed the product list. A confirmation dialog is opened.
7. Click OK to proceed with the deletion. If you do not wish to delete the vendor, click Cancel.
Workstation Additional Fields

You can define your own organization specific fields that need to appear in the new workstation form apart from the default fields. You can add text fields, numeric fields, and date/time type fields in the form.

Adding Workstation Additional Fields

1. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
2. Click Workstation Additional Fields icon in the Configuration Wizard page. This opens Workstation – Additional Fields page.

Configuring Additional Text fields

1. By default the list of all additional text fields are displayed. Specify the Label for the Workstation Additional Fields.
2. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the Description text field.
3. Specify the Type of the text field by enabling the radio button. It can be either Single-Line, Multi-Line or drop down menu list.
4. Specify the Default Values in the given text field.
5. Click Save to save the settings.

Configuring Additional Numeric fields

1. Click the Numeric tab.
2. Specify the Label for the additional field. This is a mandatory field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the Description text field.
4. Click Save to save the settings.

Configuring Additional Date/Time fields

1. Click the Date/Time tab.
2. Specify the Label for the additional field. This is a mandatory field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the Description text fields.
4. Click Save to save the settings.
Asset Additional Fields

You can define your own organization specific fields that need to appear in the new asset form apart from the default fields. You can add text fields, numeric fields, and date/time type fields in the form.

Adding Asset Additional Fields

1. Click Admin tab in the header pane.
2. Click Assets Additional Fields icon in the Configuration Wizard page. This opens Assets – Additional Fields page.

Configuring Additional Text fields

1. By default the list of all additional text fields are displayed. Specify the Label for the asset additional fields.
2. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the Description field.
3. Specify the Type of the text field by enabling the radio button. It can be either Single-Line, Multi-Line or drop down menu list.
4. Specify the Default Values in the given text field.
5. Click Save to save the settings.

Configuring Additional Numeric fields

1. Click the Numeric tab.
2. Specify the Label for the additional field. This is a mandatory field.
3. Specify any relevant information for the additional fields in the Description field.
4. Click Save to save the settings.

Configuring Additional Date/Time fields

1. Click Date/Time tab.
2. Specify the Label for the additional field. This is mandatory field.
3. Specify any relevant information for the additional fields in the Description field.
4. Click Save to save the settings.
Asset State

Asset State denotes the different states of assets in the organization such as, assets in Use, In Store, Expired and so on.

To access the asset state configuration wizard page,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane. This opens the Configuration Wizard page.
2. Under the Asset Management block click the **Asset State** icon. This opens the Asset State List page where you can add, edit and delete an asset state. By default, you have five asset states available in ServiceDesk Plus which can neither be edited nor deleted.

Add Asset State

1. Click **New Asset State** link.
2. Enter a name for the **Asset State**. This field is mandatory.
3. Specify any relevant information about the asset state in the **Description** field.
4. Click **Add Asset State** button. The newly added asset state is added to the Asset State List.

Edit Asset State

1. From the Asset State List view page, click the **Edit** icon beside the asset state to edit. The edit form is pre-filled with the values entered while adding the asset state.
2. **Modify** the Asset State and Description.
3. Click **Update Asset State** button to update the changes.

Delete Asset State

1. From the Asset State List view page, click the **Delete** icon beside the asset state to delete. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
2. Click **OK** to proceed. The asset state is deleted from the list.
Configuration Item Types (CI Types)

**Configuration Item Types (CI Types)** denote the broad classification of different entities, under which, the **Configuration Items (CIs)** are categorized. Any organization specific entity can be considered as a CI Type, such as Business Services, Workstations, Servers, Documents and even the People working for your organization.

Each CI Type can be defined with specific **Attributes** and **Relationships** that are unique for the CIs classified under them.

In case your CI Type structure is granulated and possess various types, then you can further drill it down to **Sub Types.** For instance, the CI Type-Server may possess various sub types such as File Server, Application Server, Database Servers and so on.

To access the **Configuration Item Types List** view,

1. Click **Admin** tab in the header pane.
2. In Asset Management, click **Configuration Item Types.** The Configuration Item Types List view is displayed.

From this page, you can add CI Types, create new CIs for a CI Type, view CIs under a CI Type, and also view the relationship map with the default relationship attributes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topics discussed under this section:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Representation of Icons in the CI Type List view</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Adding CI Type</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Attributes</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Attributes for CI Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using Drag and Drop Field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing &amp; Deleting Attributes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Setting default Relationships</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding Relationships</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding Relationship Attributes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viewing Relationship Map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Editing &amp; Deleting Relationship</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Representation of Icons in the CI Type List View**

- To create a new CI under a CI Type. Clicking this icon takes you to the Add New CI form.
- To view CIs under a CI Type.
- To view the relationship map for a CI Type. The relationship map holds the default relationships configured for the CI Type.
Adding CI Type

To add CI Type from the Configuration Item Types list view page,

1. Click Add New CI Type link. The Add New CI Type form pops-up.
2. Enter a Name for the CI Type. For example, Workstations, Business Services, Department. This field is mandatory.
3. If the structure of the CI Type is granulated, then you can further drill it into Sub Types. For instance, the CI Type-Workstation can be further drilled down into Sub Types like IBM Workstation, Unix Workstation and Windows Workstations.

If the entered CI Type name is a sub type, then select the Parent Type from the drop down.

4. Enter brief Description about the CI Type in the field provided.
5. Click Save button.

The page navigates to the Edit Configuration Item Type with the CI Type name, Parent Type and Description pre-populated with the specified values.

6. Choose an Icon to depict this CI Type in the list view. By default, an icon is uploaded for the CI Type. To upload a different icon, click Change link. Click Browse to select the image and click Import Image button.

**NOTE:** The support formats to import images are jpg, gif and png.
7. Most of the CIs populated in the CMDB may be assets or components, such as Workstations, Servers, Access Points, Keyboards and so on. These CIs can be tracked as assets in the asset database.

To track CIs under a CI Type as an IT or Non-IT assets/components in the Asset module, enable **Track as asset** check box. Select the **Category** and asset **Type** from the drop down.

**NOTE:** The **Track as asset** option is available only for the parent CI Type.

**Attributes**

Attributes are data elements that describe the characteristics of the CI Type. For instance, the attributes for the CI Type-Workstation could include Model, Service Tag, IP Address, Processor Speed and so on. By default, the form displays the Attributes tab.

**Setting Attributes for CI Type**

You can set two types of attributes for a CI Type namely, **Default Attributes** and **Attributes Specific to CI Type**. Default Attributes are common to all the CI Types, such as Name, Site, Department and so on. To add a default attribute, click **Edit** button. [Refer Using Drag and Drop Fields topic to know more on configuring default attributes].

**CI Type Specific Attributes** provide more information on a particular CI Type. The attributes for the CI Type-Workstation can be considered as the attributes specific to the CI Type. The attributes, default attributes and CI Type specific attributes, are configured using the Drag and Drop fields.

**Using the Drag and Drop Fields**

The Drag and Drop Field section consists of different customizable fields such as, **Single line**, **Multi line**, **Pick List**, **Numeric** and **Date** fields. Apart from these customized
fields, **System Attributes** (entities configured in the Admin tab or data fetched during scan) can also be set as attributes for the CI Type.

### Adding System Attributes

1. Drag the **System Attribute** field in the form. The System Attributes form opens.
2. Choose the System Attributes from the drop down. You can enter a different name for the system attribute in **Label Name** field.

   ![System Attributes Form](image)

   2. Click ![Add](image) icon to add another system attribute.
   3. Click **Add** button to add the system attribute(s) in the form.
   4. Click **Save**.

### Adding Customizing Fields

To add the other customized fields,

1. Drag and drop the field (Single Line, Multi Line, Pick List, Numeric or Date field) in the CI Type attribute form.
2. The **Add Attribute** form pops up where you need to enter the **Attribute Name** and **Description**. In the case of Pick List fields, enter the options to add to the list.

3. Click **Save**. The customizable field is added in the form.

You can re-arrange fields in the form by dragging the fields and placing it over the highlighted area.

**NOTE:**

1. Newly added **Product Type** with **Type** field as **Assets or Components** will be considered as CI Type and populated automatically in the CI Type List view.
2. You cannot create a sub type for the CI Type - People. Instead you can create sub types for Requesters and Technicians.
3. The sub types inherit the Attributes and Relationships from the parent CI Type. Apart from this, attributes and relationships can also be configured for sub type.

**Editing CI Attributes**

To edit a customized attribute,

1. Click the **Edit** icon beside the field to modify. The **Edit Attribute** form pops up with the values pre-filled while adding the attribute.
2. Modify the **Attribute Name** and **Description** field.
3. Click **Save**. The form is populated with the newly added changes.
Deleting CI Attributes

You can remove unwanted attributes from the CI Type form. To delete a customized attribute,

1. Click the Delete icon beside the field. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
2. Click OK to proceed. The field is removed from the form and is added to system attributes list.

**WARNING:** Deleting a CI Type attribute will remove the attribute from the form. You may lose the data configured for the attribute in the CI form.

Setting Default Relationships

You can establish default relationships between the newly added CI Type and other CI Types from the Relationships tab. For instance, the relationship set for the CI Type Workstation can be,

```
Workstation       Runs          Software
(Needed added CI Type)    (Relationship Type)          (CI Type)
```

the inverse of this relationship type will be automatically added for CI Type - Software as,

```
Software          Runs on       Workstation
(CI Type)         (Relationship Type)       (CI Type)
```

Setting default relationships provides feasibility while adding relationship between the CIs categorized under the CI Type. For a sub type, the parent CI Type relationships are adapted, apart from which new relationships can also be created. Using the Relationship Map, the relationship configured with other CI Types can be viewed, and the map can be exported or printed.

Adding Relationships

To establish a relationship between two CI Types,

1. Click Relationships tab in Edit Configuration Item Type form.
2. Click Add button. The Add Relationship form pops up.
3. Select the nature of the relationship between the CI Type and another CI Types from Relationship Type drop down.
4. Select the CI Type to which the relationship is established. Both the Relationship Type and CI Type are mandatory fields.
5. Click Save. The attributes associated to the relationship can be set.
Adding Relationship Attributes

Relationship Attributes provides more information on the relationship between the CI Types. For instance, the relationship attributes between the CI Type Workstation and Software can be, the Version of the software installed, the Installation path, Installed on, service pack details and so on.

To add relationship attributes,

1. Click **Add Relationship Attribute** button.
2. Enter the **Attribute Name**. Say, Version Installed.
3. Select the **Field Type** from the drop-down. The field type can be either Single Line, Multi Line, Pick List, Numeric or date field.
4. Enter brief **Description** about the relationship attribute in the field provided.
5. Click **Save**. The attribute is added to the relationship attribute list.

To delete a relationship attribute,

1. Enable the check box beside the **Attribute Name** in the Add Relationship form.
2. Click **Delete** button. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **OK** to proceed. The relationship attribute is deleted from the list.
Relationship Map

The default relationships configured with other CI Types are viewed in the Relationship Map. Click Relationship Map icon to view the map.

Editing Default Relationships

To edit a CI Type relationship,

1. Click the edit icon beside the CI Type relationship to edit. The Edit Relationship Type form pops up pre-filled with values configured while adding the relationship.
2. Modify the Relationship Type and CI Type. Both the fields are mandatory.
3. Even while editing, you can add new relationship attributes or edit the existing relationship attributes by clicking on the Attribute Name link.
4. Click Save.

Deleting Default Relationships

To delete a CI Type relationship,

1. Click the delete icon beside the CI Type relationship. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
2. Click OK to proceed. The relationship is deleted from the CI Type relationship list.

WARNING: Deleting a CI Type relationship will remove the relationship from the relationship map.
Relationship Types

Relationship Types denotes the nature of relationship between a CI and another CI. It shows how the CIs are interconnected and interdependent with other CIs. The Relationship Type is expressed twice, one as Relationship Type and the other as Inverse Relationship Type. Some of the examples of relationship types are Runs::Runs On, Sends data to::Receives data from, Located In::Houses and so on.

Let's take a look at an example with the Relationship Type as Runs::Runs On. The relationship between a server and application is expressed as Server1 Runs Application1, while the relationship between the application and server is automatically expressed with the inverse relationship type, Application1 Runs On Server1.

Using relationship types, CI Type relationships can be set from Admin -> CI Type and from the CI form. For establishing relationship using the Relationship Types, refer Relationships under CI Types.

To access the Relationship Type configuration wizard,

1. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
2. Click Asset Management in the left pane and select Relationship Types option. The Relationship Types List view is opens, displaying the default relationship types. From this page, you can add a new relationship type, edit relationship type and perform bulk delete of relationship types.

Adding New Relationship Type

1. Click Add New Relationship Type link.
2. In the Add New Relationship Type form, enter the Relationship Type and the Inverse Relationship Type. For example, Runs::Runs On. Both fields are mandatory.
3. Enter brief Description about the nature of the relationship type in the field provided.
4. Click Save. The relationship type is saved and displayed in the list view. To cancel the operation and return to the list view, click Cancel.

Editing Relationship Type

1. In the Relationship Types List view, select the relationship type to edit. The Edit Relationship type form opens with the fields pre-filled with values entered while adding the relationship type.
2. Modify the field values for Relationship Types, Inverse Relationship Type and Description.
3. Click Save. The changes are saved and displayed in the list view. If you do not want to edit the relationship type, then click Cancel.

NOTE: The following default relationship types cannot be edited, Depends On::Used By, Uses::Used By, Runs::Runs On, Connected to::Connected to and Includes:: Member of.
Deleting Relationship Type

To delete the newly added relationship types from the list view,

1. Enable the check box beside the Relationship type to delete.
2. Click the **Delete** button. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
3. Click **OK** to proceed. The relationship type(s) is deleted from the list view.

**NOTE:** Please note that the pre-configured relationship types cannot be deleted.
Software Management

Software

Software helps you to configure all the software related tasks such as Software Type, Software Category, Software License Types and Additional fields for software license and license agreement.

- Software Type
- Software Category
- License Additional Fields
- Software License Types
- Agreement Additional Fields
- Import License (s) from CSV
**Configuring Software Type**

All different forms of software such as, licensed, prohibited, freeware, shareware, excluded and un-identified software comes under this category.

To access the Software Type configuration page,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane. This opens the Configuration Wizard page.
2. Click the **Software Type** icon under the Software block. This opens the **Software Type list** view page. By default there are six software types that cannot be edited nor deleted.
   - **Shareware**: Software that is available free of charge, may be distributed for evaluation with a fee requested for additional features or a manual etc.
   - **Freeware**: Software that is provided without charge.
   - **Prohibited**: Software that is prevented from use.
   - **Excluded**: Software that is omitted from use.
   - **Managed**: All licensed software comes under this software type.
   - **Un-Identified**: Unknown software can be categorized under this software type.

**Adding New Software Type**

1. Click the **New Software Type** link. This opens the Software Type Details page.
2. Specify the **Software Type** name in the given text field. This is a mandatory field which will uniquely identify individual software type.
3. Specify any relevant information about the Software Type in the description field.
4. Click **Add Software Type** button. This adds the software type to ServiceDesk Plus and gets displayed below the add software form.

**Editing Software Type**

1. From the Software Type list view page, click the **Edit** icon beside the software type to edit.
2. Modify the necessary changes.
3. Click **Update Software Type** button.

**Deleting Software Type**

1. From the Software Type list view page, click the **Delete** icon beside the software type to delete. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
2. Click **OK** to proceed. The software type is deleted from the list.
Software Category

The software available in the application are organized by grouping them into specific Software Categories. Some of the default software categories available in the application are Accounting, Internet, Graphics, Multimedia, Operating System, Game and much more.

To access the software category configuration wizard,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click **Software Category** icon under **Software** block. The Software Category list view page opens. From this page, you can add, edit and delete a software category.

By default, there are nine software categories listed in the application. These software categories can neither be edited nor deleted.

Adding Software Category

1. Click **New Software Category** link.
2. Specify a unique name for the **Software Category** in the provided field. The Software Category is a mandatory field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the category in the **Description** field.
4. Click **Add Software Category** button to add the software category to the list. Click **Cancel** to go back to the list view. The added software categories are displayed while adding new software.

Editing Software Category

1. Click the **Edit** icon beside the software category to edit.
2. Modify the **Software Category** name and **Description** fields.
3. Click **Update Software Category** to update the changes.

Deleting Software Category

1. Click the **Delete** icon beside the software category to delete. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
2. Click **OK** to proceed. The software category is deleted from the list.
License - Additional Fields

If you require any further additional information while adding the software license details, apart from the pre-set fields in the Add software licenses form you can configure them under License - Additional Fields. You can add text fields, numeric fields, date type fields and Cost fields as the additional fields in the form.

To add license - additional fields,

1. Click the Admin tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click License - Additional Fields icon under Software block. The License Additional page opens to view the following tabs namely, Text, Numeric, Date/Time and Cost. You can add up to twelve text and cost fields, and four numeric and date/time fields.

Configuring Additional Text fields

1. By default, the Text tab is selected. Specify the Label for the Additional field.
2. Specify any relevant information about the additional field in the Description text field.
3. Select the Type of the text field by enabling the radio button. It can be either Single-Line, Multi-Line or Pick List (drop down list).
4. You can also specify default values to be pre-filled in the software license form.
5. Save the settings.

Configuring Additional Numeric fields

1. Click the Numeric tab.
2. Specify the Label for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the Description text field.
4. Save the settings.

Configuring Additional Date/Time fields

1. Click the Date/Time tab.
2. Specify the Label for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the Description text field.
4. Click Save to save the settings.

Configuring Cost fields

1. Click the Cost tab.
2. Specify the Label for the Additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional field in the Description text field.
4. You have two cost type fields, Add cost (for cost addition) and Subtract cost (for cost subtraction). Click the corresponding radio button to select the cost fields and also specify the Default values to be pre-filled in the software license form.
These additional fields will appear while adding a software license under the **Additional Information** block. To delete a user-defined fields, instead of adding the label names, delete the existing label names you wish to remove from the fields of the form and click **Save**. The fields are automatically removed from the Software License form.
Software License Types

Every software manufacturing company has their unique software license type apart from the several common license types. Since it is not feasible to support all these license types, ServiceDesk Plus helps you customize the license types for all software manufacturers based on the workstations and users.

To access the Software License Types configuration page,

1. Click the Admin tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.
2. Click Software License Types icon under Software block. The list of default license types filtered by the manufacturer is displayed.
   - Individual: License type for single installation
   - OEM (Original Equipment Manufacturers): License type for software that is already installed in the hardware.
   - Named User License: License Type for a specific user.
   - Volume: License Type supporting multiple users.
   - Client Access License (CAL): License type that gives a user the rights to access the services of the server.
   - Trial License: License Type for trial versions of software.
   - Enterprise (Perpetual): License Type that does not require renewal and is for life long.
   - Concurrent License: License Type for software that can be accessed by a specific number of users at a time.
   - Free License: License Type for freeware software.
   - Enterprise Subscription: License Type that requires renewal for every specific period.
   - Node Locked: License Type for workstations with specific configurations.

Apart from the default license types available in the application, you can add, edit and delete Software License Types.

Adding New License Type

1. Click Add New License Type link.
2. Enter the License Type say Volume, Enterprise, Standard and so on. In general, each manufacturer depicts their license types uniquely and so the license type needs to be specified accordingly to the manufacturer. This field is mandatory.
3. Select the software Manufacturer from the drop down. If required, you can also add a new manufacturer using the Add New Manufacturer icon.
4. The software license can be tracked by workstations or users.
   - Workstations: The license is allocated to the workstation.
   - User: The license is allocated to the workstation as well as the user.

Select the corresponding option from Track By drop down.
5. Choose any one option from **Installation allowed** drop down.

   - **Single**: Similar to Individual license, only one installation is allowed for this license type.
   - **Volume**: Multiple installation(s) is allowed for this license type.
   - **Unlimited**: Unlimited installation(s) is allowed for this license type.
   - **OEM (Original Equipment Manufacturers)**: The software license is attached to the hardware i.e. hardware say, laptops for which the software is installed. The software cannot be transferred to another workstation and the license expires once the workstation is moved to Disposed state.

6. If you have selected **Workstation** as the Track By option, the **Is Node Locked** option appears. This option can be enabled for workstation with specific configurations. Enabling this option automatically changes the Installation Allowed field to Single.

7. If you have selected **Users**, the **Users Allowed** field appears. From this field you can select the number of users who can access the software, say, Single, Volume (multiple) or Unlimited.

8. If the software is one time installation and does not require a renewal, enabled **Is Perpetual** check box.

9. If the software is freeware with unlimited installations and no expiry date, enable **Is Free License** check box.

10. Few software license types can be divided into sub license types say for instance, with Client Access License (CAL) you can purchase license for every user who access the server (Per User) or license for every device that accesses the server (Per Device).

    Enter the **License Option** and click **Add** to add it in the pick list field. You also have an option to delete the License Option from the pick list field. Select the license option and click the delete icon 🗑.

**Editing License Type**

1. From the Software - License Types page, click on the **Edit** icon 🖋 beside the License Type you wish to edit.
2. The Software - License Types page opens with the values populated while adding the License Type.
3. Modify the required details and Save the changes.

**Deleting License Type**

1. From the Software - License Types page, select the Manufacturer from the **Filter** drop down.
2. Select the check box beside the license type to be deleted.
3. Click **Delete** button. A dialog box confirming the delete operation appears.
4. Click **OK** to continue. The Software - License Type is deleted from the selected manufacturer list.
License Agreement- Additional Fields

If you require any further additional information while adding the software license agreement details, apart from the pre-set fields in the license agreement form you can configure them under License Agreement - Additional Fields. You can add text fields, numeric fields, date type fields and Cost fields as the additional fields in the form.

To add license - additional fields,

1. Click the Admin tab in the header pane to open the configuration wizard page.

2. Click Agreement - Additional Fields icon under Software block. The License Agreement Additional page opens to view the following tabs namely, Text, Numeric, Date/Time and Cost. You can add up to twelve text and cost fields, and four numeric and date/time fields.

Configuring Additional Text fields

1. By default, the Text tab is selected. Specify the Label for the Additional field.
2. Specify any relevant information about the additional field in the Description text field.
3. Select the Type of the text field by enabling the radio button. It can be either Single-Line, Multi-Line or Pick List (drop down list).
4. You can also specify default values to be pre-filled in the license agreement form.
5. Save the settings.

Configuring Additional Numeric fields

1. Click the Numeric tab.
2. Specify the Label for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the Description text field.
4. Save the settings.

Configuring Additional Date/Time fields

1. Click the Date/Time tab.
2. Specify the Label for the additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional fields in the Description text fields.
4. Click Save to save the settings.

Configuring Cost fields

1. Click the Cost tab.
2. Specify the Label for the Additional field.
3. Specify any relevant information about the additional field in the Description text field.
4. You have two cost type fields, **Add cost** (for cost addition) and **Subtract cost** (for cost subtraction). Click the corresponding radio button to select the cost fields and also specify the **Default values** to be pre-filled in the license agreement form.

These additional fields will appear while adding the license agreement details. To delete a user-defined fields, instead of adding the label names, delete the existing label names you wish to remove from the fields of the form and click **Save**. The fields are automatically removed from the License Agreement form.
Importing License From CSV

Adding license information for each and every software scanned in ServiceDesk Plus application is tedious and endless. Hence with the easy-to-use CSV import option, you can import software license information from your existing database or even from other applications. The License Key is a pivotal identifier to add or update the software license(s). So the license key should be unique to avoid overwriting with the existing ones.

To import contacts from CSV file,

1. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane to open the configurations wizard page.
2. Click **Import License from CSV** icon under the Software block.

**Step 1: Locate CSV file**

1. Click **Browse** button to select the CSV file.
2. On locating the CSV file from the file chooser window, click **Open**. The path to the file appears automatically in Locate CSV file field.
3. Click **Submit**.

![Software - Import Software Licenses](image)

**Step 2: Customize Mapping**

1. Map the application software license fields with the field names from the CSV file. If there are any additional fields configured under License - Additional Fields, the same appears in the customized mapping form.
2. Click **Import** button. The software license details from the CSV file is imported.

3. Once the import is complete, the data on the total number of license, the number of license imported and the number of failed to import license is displayed.

Warning

If there are any failure records while importing software license(s), don't re-import the same CSV file. Instead download the FailedLicensesList.csv from the Imported Result page and correct the errors on comparing with ErrorList.txt file. The Error List file shows the failed software license records along with the corresponding error message. This is to avoid duplication of the software license(s).
Purchase / Contract Management

Purchase/Contract Configurations

You need to configure the purchase/contract configurations before creating a Purchase Order and Contract.

The Purchase/Contract Configurations are,

- **Purchase - Additional Fields**
  Require Additional Fields while creating a Purchase Order? This configuration provides option to add text, numeric, date/time and cost fields.

- **Purchase Default Values**
  Set default values to be populated in the New Purchase Order form.

- **Cost Center**
  The Business Units are budgeted and tracked for the cost, income and allocation.

- **GL Code**
  Add General Ledger Codes that can be associated with the Purchase Order.

- **Contract Additional Fields**
  Require Additional Fields while creating a contract? This configuration provides option to add text, numeric and date/time.

- **Notification Rules**
  Notify Technicians of an Overdue Purchase Order or when the lease period of the asset is about to expire.
Purchase Order Additional Fields

You can configure purchase additional fields that need to appear in the new purchase order form.

1. Log in to ServiceDesk Plus application using your **user name** and **password**.
2. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
3. In the Purchase/Contracts management block, click the **Purchase - Additional Fields** icon. This opens the Purchase - Additional Fields page. You can add four types of fields in the form: text, numeric, date/time and cost.

4. To add the text fields, enter the label name in the form fields below the **Label** heading. If required, enter the description for the field.
5. You can choose the type of text field that you wish to add by selecting the radio buttons.
   - **Single-line text field**: Allows you to add just a text field in the new purchase order form.
   - **Multi-line text field**: Allows you to add a text box where a lengthy description can be added in the new purchase order form.
   - **Pick List**: Allows you to add a combo box in the new purchase order form. Contents of the combo box can be added by specifying it in the text field and adding it to the list. This gives you an option to select from the list. In all the three cases, you can add default values for the text field in the space provided for the field.

6. To add numeric fields, click the **Numeric** tab and then enter the label name in the form fields provided for the same.
7. To add date/time fields, click the **Date/Time** tab and enter the required details.
8. To add the cost field, click the **Cost** tab. You have two cost type fields, **Add cost** (for cost addition) and **Subtract cost** (for cost subtraction). Click the corresponding radio button to select the cost fields.
9. Click **Save**. A message for successful creation of the fields is displayed.

These fields (except for cost) appear under the General Information in the **New Purchase Order** form. To delete the user-defined fields, in step 4 through 7, instead of adding the label names, delete the label names that you wish to remove from the fields of the form and click **Save**. The respective fields that you deleted will be removed from the New Purchase form.
Purchase Default Values

With this option, you can set the default values to be populated in the New Purchase Order form. You can set default values for fields such as tax rate, the billing and shipping address, the purchase order terms and conditions and so on. Thereby, making it feasible to add create a Purchase Order instantly.

Also, from this option, you can set the mandatory fields to be filled in before closing a PO. These fields are the additional fields configured under Purchase Additional Fields.

To access the purchase default value configuration page,

1. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
2. In the Purchase/Contracts block, click Purchase - Default Values icon. This opens the Purchase Default Values page.

**Configuring Purchase Default Values**

- **Default Currency:** The default currency to be displayed in all the purchase orders (PO) generated and in places where money is being used. Say, USD, $.
- **Default Tax Rate (%):** Tax rate used for calculating the sales tax in all the POs generated. You can provide different tax rate to a specific PO by entering the new rate while creating the PO.
- **Signing Authority:** Signing Authority’s name.
- **Tax Shipping:** Enable the check box for additional tax in shipping of the items.
- **Shipping Address:** Select the default Site to which the PO items needs to be shipped.
- **Billing Address:** Select the default Site for invoice and billing the PO items.
- **Cost Center:** Default cost center department to be displayed.
- **Approver(s):** Approvers for the purchase order. The approvers can be the users or technicians in your organization.
- **PO Owner as Approver:** Enable the check box if you wish to add the PO owner as the approver.
- **Multi Approval:** If there are more than one approvers, on enabling multi approval check box, the PO is approved only if all the approvers approve the PO. The PO is rejected even if one of the approvers rejects the PO.
- **Terms and Remarks:** Terms and remarks while making the purchase.
- **PO# Start From:** Customize the PO number.

**Mandatory fields for closing PO**

The fields listed in this block are the PO additional fields configured in the application. Enable the check box beside the field that should be filled in before closing the PO. Click **Save** to save the settings.
Cost Center

Individual department or a group of department makes a Cost center. These cost centers are budgeted and tracked for the cost, income and allocation. These cost centers will be associated with the purchase order while making a new purchase in your organization.

To access the Cost Center configuration,

1. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
2. Click Cost Center icon under the Purchase/ Contract Management block. The Cost Center List view page opens where you can add, edit and delete a cost center.

Add Cost Center

1. Click the New Cost Center link. The Cost Center form has four mandatory fields namely, Cost Center Code, Name and Owner.
2. Specify the code for the cost center in Cost Center Code field.
3. Specify the Name of the cost center.
4. The departments configured in ServiceDesk Plus application is listed under Departments. Select the Department from the available list.
5. Specify the Owner of the cost center. The owner is generally the department head and employee of the organization.
6. If required, enter relevant information about the cost center in the Description field.
7. Click Add Cost Center button. The cost center is added to the List View.

Edit Cost Center

1. Click the Edit icon beside the cost center you wish to modify. The details while adding the cost center is populated in the edit form.
2. Modify the required details in the fields.
3. Click Update Cost Center button.

Delete Cost Center

1. Click the Delete icon beside the cost center to be deleted. A confirmation dialog appears.
2. Click OK to proceed. The cost center is deleted from the list.
Contract Additional Fields

You can configure contract additional fields that need to appear in the new contract form.

1. Log in to ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the Purchase/Contracts management block, click the Contract - Additional Fields icon. This opens the Contract - Additional Fields page. You can add three types of fields in the form: text, numeric and date/time.

4. To add the text fields, enter the label name in the form fields below the Label heading. If required, enter the description for the field.
5. You can choose the type of text field that you wish to add by selecting the radio buttons.
   - Single-line text field: Allows you to add just a text field in the new contract form.
   - Multi-line text field: Allows you to add a text box where a lengthy description can be added in the new contract form.
   - Pick List: Allows you to add a combo box in the new contract form. Contents of the combo box can be added by specifying it in the text field and adding it to the list. This gives you an option to select from the list. In all the three cases, you can add default values for the text field in the space provided for the field.

   To add items for the pick list, enter the value in the text filed and click Add Item. To select the default selected value of the list, click on the value in the list.

6. To add numeric fields, click the Numeric tab and then enter the label name in the form fields provided for the same.
7. To add date/time fields, click the Date/Time tab and enter the required details.
8. Click Save. A message for successful creation of the fields is displayed.

These fields appear under the Additional Contract details in the New Contract form. To delete the user-defined fields, in step 4 through 7, instead of adding the label names, delete the label names that you wish to remove from the fields of the form and click Save. The respective fields that you deleted will be removed from the New Contract form.
Notification Rules

Notification Rules are helpful when an event has to be notified to the technicians. Say, when Purchase order is overdue or Audit changes during discovery or Software under Compliance during discovery or when prohibited software is identified during discovery.

When the above-mentioned situations are managed suitably, it not only helps technicians in efficient management of the assets but also brings in cost savings to the organization.

Enabling Notification Rules

1. Click the Admin tab in the header pane. The configuration wizard page opens.
3. To set the notification rules select the relevant notification rules by enabling the check box. These notification rules are self-explanatory.
4. Except for Purchase order Overdue, You can assign technicians to notify of the fault for all the other notification rules.
5. To assign technician select Choose button, this brings up the Choose Technician Name page.
6. Select as many as technicians from the list using ctrl or shift keys.
7. Click OK button to save. You can see the selected technicians displayed in the choose technicians grayed out field.
8. Click Save button to save the set notification rules. The notification to the administrator or to the technicians will be generally sent through email.

Customize Message Template

You have default message template for Contract notification. To customize email templates as per your requirement,

1. Under Customize Message Template, click Edit Template link.
2. You can change the Subject and the Message content by typing the text of your choice and also adding other variables that you wish to display as a part of the subject or message content.
3. To add more variables, just click the corresponding variable from the list box beside the respective field.
4. Click Save.
User Survey

You can easily configure the customer satisfaction survey to collect information on various key parameters that you would like to measure about the support team and the response quality. You can define your own survey and the reports will be generated based on the survey that you have defined. You can also set the frequency of conducting the survey.

The various survey related configurations that you can perform are

1. Configuring Survey Settings
2. Defining a Survey

Apart from the above you can also do the following survey related actions:

1. Sending Survey for a Request
2. Viewing the Survey Results

Once you have completed configuring and defining the survey, you can have a look at the preview of the survey by clicking the Survey Preview link on the left menu or the Survey Preview icon in the Admin tab.

To access the user survey related configurations

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of a ServiceDesk Plus administrator.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane. The User Survey block is below the Users block.
Survey Settings

Survey settings enable you to configure the default values for welcome message, survey success or failure message, and thank you message. You can also choose to enable or disable a survey. If you enable a survey you can also schedule the periodicity of conducting the survey.

To configure the survey settings

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application with the user name and password of a ServiceDesk Plus administrator.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the User Survey block, click the Survey Settings icon. The Survey Settings page is displayed.
4. To enable the survey, select the check box Enable User Survey.
5. Under the Survey Details block, enter the Welcome Message, which you wish to display as soon as the user reaches the survey page. or when the user is taking the survey.
6. Email Content: Specify the purpose of the email in the Email Content text field. This content will be displayed in the mail sent to the requesters. $RequesterName & $SurveyLink are variables which changes based on the requester & application URL.
7. Success Message: Enter the message that will be displayed once the survey has been successfully answered and submitted by the user.
8. Failure Message: When the survey is taken by a person who has already submitted the answers for the survey, then you will have to display a failure message. You can enter the same in the Failure Message text area.
9. Thanks Message: Enter the thanks message. This message will be displayed just before the submit button in the survey form.
10. To schedule the survey, in the Schedule Survey block, choose the radio button that you wish to set as a criteria for sending the survey. The options are,
   - A request is closed: For closing every one request a survey mail will be sent
   - Requests are closed: Specify the number of requests to be closed of all the available requests in the text box. Once the specified number of requests is closed a survey mail will be sent.
   - Requests from a requester are closed: Specify the number of requests to be closed for a requester in the text box. Once the specified number is reached a survey mail is sent to the requester. This text box can take only integer values as input.
11. Click Save to save the survey settings.
Define Survey

You can define your own survey by adding your own questions and satisfaction levels that will suit the needs of your organization and users.

To define your survey,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of a ServiceDesk Plus administrator.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. In the User Survey block, click the Define a Survey icon. Here you can add, edit, or delete your survey questions and satisfaction levels.

Add Survey Questions

To add a survey questions

1. Click the + Add Question button available in the Questions tab in the Define Survey page.
2. In the Question pop-up window, type your question in the text area provided.
3. Click Save. The question will get added in the Define Survey Questions tab.

You can add any number of questions to the survey by following the above steps. As you keep adding questions it will get appended at the end of the list of questions. You can change the order of the questions by clicking the Move Up and Move Down link that is available beside each question.

Edit a Survey Question

To edit the survey question

1. In the Questions tab, click the Edit link beside the question that you wish to edit.
2. In the Question pop-up window, edit the question displayed in the text area.
3. Click Save. The Define Survey page is refreshed to display the modifications made.

Delete a Survey Question

1. In the Questions tab, click Delete link beside the question that you wish to delete. A confirmation dialog pops up.
2. Click OK to delete the question.

Note: If you delete a question from a survey, then it will have an impact on the survey results that have been collected previously.
Add Satisfaction Levels

To add satisfaction levels that will be displayed as choices for each of the survey questions

1. Click the **Satisfaction Levels** tab in the **Define Survey** page.
2. Click **+ Add Level** button.
3. In the satisfaction level pop-up window, enter the satisfaction level in the text area provided.
4. Click **Save**. The satisfaction level is added and the **Define Survey** page is refreshed to display the added satisfaction level.

You can add any number of satisfaction level to the survey by following the above steps. As you keep adding the levels it will get appended at the end of the list of already added levels. You can change the order of the same by clicking the **Move Up** and **Move Down** link that is available beside each question. Satisfaction levels scales from good to bad, good at the top bad at the bottom. Moving up or down changes the satisfaction levels.

Edit a Satisfaction Level

To edit a Satisfaction level

1. In the **Satisfaction Levels** tab, click the **Edit** link beside the satisfaction level that you wish to edit.
2. In the satisfaction level pop-up window, edit the satisfaction level displayed in the text area.
3. Click **Save**. The **Define Survey** page is refreshed to display the modifications made.

Delete a Satisfaction Level

1. In the **Satisfaction Levels** tab, click the **Delete** link beside the satisfaction level that you wish to delete. A confirmation dialog pops up.
2. Click **OK** to delete the satisfaction level.

**Note:** If you delete a satisfaction level from a survey or change its order, then it will have an impact on the survey results that have been collected previously.

Survey Translate

If you have purchased the license along with multi language, then the **Survey Translate** tab appears. The survey can be displayed in various languages supported by ServiceDesk Plus to users located in various locations.

Add New Translation

To add new translation,

1. In the Define Survey page, click on **Survey Translate** tab.

3. Select the **Survey Language** from the drop down list. The languages supported by ServiceDesk Plus is displayed. The language for which a translation is added does not appear again in the Survey Language drop down list.

4. Enter the **Survey Questions** in the language selected in Survey language drop down list.

5. Similarly, specify the **Satisfactory Levels** and **Messages** in the respective fields.

6. Click **Save** to save the new translation in the list view. By default, while adding a new translation the language is enabled. To disable the language, select the check box beside the language to be disabled and click **Disable** button.

The survey form for the requester consists of Display Language drop down listing all the enabled languages configured under Survey Translate tab. Select the language to view the survey.

**Edit a Translation**

While editing a translation, the Survey Language cannot be modified.

1. In the Translate Language page, click the **Edit** icon beside the language you wish to edit. The New Translation form appears.
2. The Survey Language is in non-editable text. Modify the details in **Survey Question**, **Satisfactory Levels** and **Messages**.
3. Click **Update** to save the changes.

**Delete a translation**

1. In the Translation Language page, select the check box beside the language you wish to delete.
2. Click **Delete** button. A confirmation box appears. Click **Ok** to continue. The translated language is deleted from the list.
Send a Survey

If the survey is enabled in the survey settings, then a technician or the ServiceDesk Plus administrator can manually send a survey to the requesters once the survey is closed.

To send the survey

1. Log in to ServiceDesk Plus application using your **user name** and **password** or that of the ServiceDesk Plus administrator.
2. Click the **Requests** tab.
3. In the Request list view, select the filter **Closed Requests** or **My Closed Requests**.
4. Click the request **Title** for which you wish to send the survey.
5. Click **Send Survey for this Request** link available under the **Tasks** block. A success message that the survey has been sent for the request is displayed and the survey will be sent to the requester who created the request as a mail with a URL which opens the survey.

**Note:** The following conditions need to be true for the Send Survey for this Request link to be visible:

1. Either a technician or administrator should have logged in.
2. The request must be closed.
3. The **User Survey** must be enable in the **Survey Settings**.
View Survey Results

Once the requester completes the survey, the administrator and the requester who took the survey can view the survey results.

To view the survey results

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of a ServiceDesk Plus administrator.
2. Click the Requests tab.
3. In the Requests list view select the Closed Requests or My Closed Requests filter.
4. Click the request Title for which you wish to see the survey results.
5. Click View Survey Results link available under the Tasks block. The survey results open in a pop-up window.
6. Once you have viewed the results, click the Close button.

You can view the survey results filled in by the requester from this page. A survey is defined and a survey mail is sent to the requester. By sending the survey mail you ask the requester to answer the survey questions to improve the service provided by the technicians. The survey results answered by the requesters will be listed under this section.

Note:

1. The View Survey Results link appears only if the requester has completed taking the survey. Else this link will not be present.
2. Once the survey is submitted, the responses cannot be changed.
General Settings

General Settings configurations are,

- **Self Service Portal**
  
  Select fields to be displayed in the self-service portal of the end-user login.

- **Backup Scheduling**
  
  Schedule a backup of all your files and attachments at regular intervals.

- **Data Archiving**
  
  Boost the performance of your help desk by archiving closed/resolved requests.

- **Desktop Central Integration**
  
  Automate desktop management activities like installing software, patches and service packs in your Windows environment from a single point.

- **Translations**
  
  Personalize ServiceDesk Plus by modifying any text displayed in the web interface to suit your organization needs.
Configuring Self Service Portal Settings

**Self-Service Portal Settings** allows you to select fields to display in the Self-Service Portal. The Self Service Portal Settings also includes options to select the display language, customize the start day of the week in your calendar, enable Remote Control access for all workstations, customize the login and header images and much more.

To access the Self-Service Portal Settings Configuration Wizard,

1. Login to ServiceDesk Plus using the user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the **Admin** tab in the header pane.
3. Click **Self Service Portal Settings** icon under the **General** block.

**Default Currency**

Specify the default currency in the given text field. This unit will be used in all the places where cost calculation is done. The default currency specified is $.

**Display Language**

ServiceDesk Plus supports different languages as part of the application. You can choose default language of your choice to be displayed in the application. To select the language of your choice,

Click **Browser default** combo box. Select the language of your choice from the list.

**Calendar Customization**

You can customize the calendar view by selecting the **start day of the week** from the drop-down. The selected day will be considered as the starting day of the week in all the calendar views.

**My Reminder(s)**

If you wish to show all your tasks as reminders to the requesters then select 'Yes' radio button else select 'No' option. The reminders will be shown in the home page.

**Requester List**

1. While entering the requester name in the new request form, the list of all available requesters will be automatically listed. If you wish to list the technicians name along with the requesters name then select **Yes** radio button.
2. You can allow requesters to **Reopen** their closed or resolved requests from the Self-Service Portal. Click **Yes** radio button to enable this option. When the status of the request is moved to Closed or Resolved, a **Reopen** tab is displayed in the request details page.
3. You can also allow requesters to **Close** their requests from the Self-Service Portal. Click **Yes** radio button to enable this option. When the status of the request is moved to Resolved, a **Close** tab is displayed in the request details page.
### Request Feature List

Includes options to change the status of requests to Open when requesters reply to On Hold requests, actions to perform when requesters reply to closed requests, stop timer for requests awaiting approval and option to show site details in the request details page.

1. If you wish to change the request status to **Open** when a requester replies to an **On Hold** request, click ‘**Yes**’ radio button.
2. Select the following options when a requester replies to a **Closed** request:
   - The request is reopened always.
   - If the requester replies within the specified number of days from the closed time, the request is reopened. Else, the reply is created as a new request.
   - The reply is appended as a conversation and notified to the technician. The status of the request remains unchanged.
   - The reply is created as a new request.

3. In most cases, when a request is sent for approval to the concerned authority, the help desk team may not be held responsible for the delay in approval process. In order to minimize the SLA violations by the helpdesk team, you can stop the timer for requests with status as ‘pending approval’. Select the check box to avail this option. You can also select the request status from the drop-down box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
<th>1. The Status with <strong>Type</strong> as <strong>In Progress</strong> and with <strong>Stop Timer</strong> enabled is listed in the drop-down box.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. The Stop Timer is automatically disabled once the decision of the concerned authority is recorded.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. The Stop Timer is applicable for <strong>incident</strong> as well as <strong>service requests</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. In case of incident requests, first the <strong>Business Rules</strong> is applied and the status set by the Business Rule is overridden with the status set for Stop Timer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. When Stop Timer is enabled, the option to open the on hold requests on requesters reply will not be applied.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. When a request is submitted for approval, the requesters would be interested to know the progress and status of their requests. For such cases, you can show the approval details to the requesters. The **Approvals tab** would show information such as the approver’s e-mail address, the date when the request was submitted for approval, the status of the request (whether the request is approved, pending approval or denied), the date when the concerned authority recorded their decision and the comments provided by them. The **Approvals Tab** is shown to the requester who has initiated the request and to the requester who can approve requests. Select **Show Approval Tab to requester** check box to avail this option.

5. If you wish to view the **Site details** such as, site name, address and contact information from the request details page, click ‘**Yes**’ radio button. A **View Site details** icon appears beside the site parameter in the request details page to
view the site details. To remove the View Site details icon from the request details page, click 'No' radio button.

6. You can **Combine the Incident and Service Templates** configured in the application. Click **Yes** radio button to enable this option. The Incident and Service Templates will be grouped according to specific categories and listed under New Request drop-down menu.

7. By default, the default request template is shown to the requester. If you do not want the requester to view the default request template, then click **Yes** radio button for **Disable default request template for requesters** option.

**Dynamic User Addition**

By default, when a user is not imported into the application but imported through Active Directory, then the user can login to the application using the AD credentials. This will automatically provide login access to the application. If you do not wish to provide dynamic user addition when the user is not imported into the application then enable the 'No' radio button.

**User Login Addition**

By default, if a mail fetched by the ServiceDesk Plus application has a requester name and email ID that is not available in the requester or technician list already, then the name is automatically added in the requester list and the login name and password is created. The first part of the e-mail ID is set as the name and the entire e-mail ID is set as login name and password. The requester can log in to the self-service portal and change his/her password. If you do not wish to provide login access to users created through email requests then enable the 'No' radio button.

**Override User based on Email ID**

While importing users using Active Directory, CSV and LDAP, the existing user information is overwritten based on two criteria - The first criteria is based on the username and Domain, and the second criteria is based on email id. If you do not wish to override user information based on email id then enable 'No' radio button else enable 'Yes'.

**Enable Local Authentication Login**

On enabling Active Directory, if you wish to allow users to login to the application using the password configured in ServiceDesk Plus then enable 'Yes'. The user should select Local Authentication from the Log on to drop down list in the Login screen. If you wish to allow users to login to the application using the system password then enable 'No' option.

**Email from New User**

Using this option, you can prevent mails, from a new email address to be fetched into the application. To block mails from the email address that is unavailable in ServiceDesk Plus database, click 'No' radio button. The mails are discarded and will not be logged in as a new request or appended as a conversation in the application. To process mails from a new email address, click 'Yes' radio button.
Quick Create Settings

If you wish to show the quick create section to the technicians in the home page, then enable the 'Yes' radio button else select the 'No' button.

Auto Assign Asset

In ServiceDesk Plus, you can assign multiple workstations to a requester. So while creating a request through email, by default, the first workstation is displayed. If you do not wish to display the workstation information in the request details page, then enable 'No' radio button else enable 'Yes'.

Requester Details

You can allow requesters to view their profile in Self Service Portal by enabling View their profile check box. A My Details tab appears in the header pane where the requester can view his/her details.

You can also allow your requesters to edit their profile and maintain it up-to-date in Self Service Portal. Select Edit their profile check box. By selecting this check box, View their profile option is automatically enabled but its greyed.

By default, all the workstations configured by the administrator will be listed in the new request form of the self-service portal. If you want the requester to view only the workstations associated to them, then enable the check box 'Show workstation associated to requester in Self-Service Portal'.

Solutions Settings

By default, the solution approvers can approve their own solutions rather than submitting it for approval. If you do not want the solution approvers to approve their own solution, enable 'No' radio button.

Remote Control Access

If you want to enable Remote Control Access to all the workstations then select 'Yes' radio button else select 'No' button.

Alias URL

To provide an alternate URL

1. In the text field provided beside the http:// text, enter the URL (along with the port number if needed).

2. Click Open alias URL in a new window link just below the text field, to test if the alias URL works.
Customize ServiceDesk

You can customize the application by choosing to display your custom logo. You need to add the logo in two dimensions, one for the login page and the other for the header image that you see on the top left corner of the pages once you login. The login page image should be of the dimensions 252 px x 61 px (W x H), while the header image needs to be 166 px x 46 px.

To import the login page image,

1. Click **Import image...** button.

2. Click **Browse** button to select the image.

3. In the file chooser window, select the file that you wish to import and click **Open**.

4. Click **Import**.

The image that you just imported will be replaced instead of the login page image. Follow the same process for header image also.

Click **Save**, to save the changes made in the settings.
Backup Scheduling

You can configure backup scheduling to take back up of all the files at regular intervals.

1. Click Admin tab in the header pane. The configuration wizard page opens.
2. In the General block, select Backup Scheduling icon.

Scheduling a Backup

1. Click Edit Scheduling link on the right hand side of the page. The Edit settings page opens.
2. Enable backup scheduling by selecting Enable radio button.
3. Select the number of days from the combo box to schedule the backup process.
   For every n number of days selected the backup will be taken for the available data.
4. Select the date to start the backup on invoking the calendar icon from Start Backup on field. Also select the Time in hours and minutes from the combo box.
5. In case of any failure in the backup, you can notify it to a particular technician by specifying their email address.
6. You can take a Backup of either the entire Database or only the File Attachments or both. Select the check box accordingly.
7. Specify the location to store the backup data in Backup Location field.
8. Save the changes. If you do not wish to configure backup scheduling, click Cancel.

Deleting Backup Files

1. From the list of backup files, enable the check box beside the files you wish to delete.
2. Click Delete button. A confirmation dialog opens.
3. Click Ok to continue. The backup file is deleted from the list.
Data Archiving

Data archiving enables the user to archive closed and/or resolved requests and move them to a separate storage state. It is most useful since thousands of accumulating active requests could hinder the performance of the help desk on a longer run.

Archived requests:

- Requests that have been moved to the archived state (archived requests) will be removed from the current active requests list. These archived requests are considered as a separate set with separate search options and reports. The current active requests list, current active requests search option and the current active requests report will not include the archived requests.
- The archived requests cannot be modified, deleted or moved back to the active state.
- Any reply to an already archived request will be added as a new request and not as a thread to the existing archived request.

To view Archived Requests,

- To view the archived requests list, click on the Requests tab in the top header panel. Then click on Archived Requests link at the top right side, below date and time.
- You can also view the archived requests by clicking on Quick Actions at the top left side and choosing Archived Requests from the drop down menu.

To configure Data Archiving,

1. Log in to ServiceDesk Plus using the Username and Password of the admin user.
2. Click the Admin tab in the header pane.
3. Click Data Archiving icon under the General block.
4. Click on the check box Enable Schedule Data Archiving.
5. Set the parameters of the requests that need to be archived
   - The Status of the requests,
   - Time of creation/closure of the requests,
   - Column Name, Criteria and Values for the specific requests that need to be retained, and
   - The Schedule Time for archiving process.
6. Click Save to save the set parameters. The archiving process takes place as per the configured schedule.
Request status:

Request status reflects the current status of the requests that have to be archived.

- **Completed** – Completed requests are those that have been resolved by the technicians and closed by the end user.
- **Resolved** – Resolved status reflects the requests that have been attended and answered by the technicians but have not been closed by the end user.
- **Any status** – All requests in any state (open, closed, resolved, on hold, feedback, follow up and so on) will be considered for archiving.

Choose the status of the requests that have to be archived are in.

Time period:

Requests can be archived based on two factors of time:

- Requests can be archived based either on the Created or Closed Time.
- They can also be archived based on the Time Period during which they were created or closed.

Requests can be archived by selecting a combination of the above two factors. The requests Created/Closed before the configured time period will be moved to the Archived State during the next scheduled archiving process.

* For example, if the archiving is to take place on 2006-11-20 (November) and you choose “Closed requests”, “Closed Date” and “6 months” from the combo boxes, then the requests closed by the technicians as well as the end users before 2002-06-20 (June) would be archived.
* Similarly, if the archiving is to take place on 2006-11-20 and you choose “Any request”, “Created Date” and “1 year” form the combo boxes, then all requests created before 2005-11-20 would be archived irrespective of the state they are currently in.

Exceptions:

A small check box **Allow Exception** is available in the Data Archiving. This option allows certain requests that fall under the archiving configurations to be retained in the current active request list without being moved into archived folder. It follows the OR condition where requests matching the any of the selected conditions are not archived.

Exceptions are rules that are defined by certain parameters. These rules can be configured by selecting parameters (**Column Name**, **Criteria** and **Value**) from the 3 combo boxes present in the feature. The first 2 parameters are chosen from the drop down list box while the third parameter, an attribute of the first parameter, is chosen from the pop up window by clicking on the choose/pick value icon.

Multiple exceptions can be added to retain more specific requests by clicking on **Add more exception** or by clicking the add icon and providing the necessary parameters.

For example, if you choose the first parameter as “Priority”, the second parameter as “is”, and the third parameter as “High” from the pop up box, then requests that have high priority will not be moved to the archived state.

An exception can be deleted by clicking on the cross/delete icon.

**Process Schedule:**

Schedule the archiving process by entering valid data in the “date”, “hours”, and “minutes” combo boxes. This can be done by selecting the required date from the calendar pop up box, and the hours and minutes from the drop down boxes. This process can be executed on a daily basis at the scheduled time.

If you choose ‘2006-11-20’ from the calendar pop up box, ‘21’ from the hours drop down box, and ‘00’ from the minutes drop down box, then the Data Archiving process takes place at 9 o’clock in the night of the scheduled date and repeats every day at the same time.
Desktop Central Integration

Desktop Central (DC) is a web-based Windows Server and Desktop Management Software from ManageEngine. And, with Desktop Central Integration in ServiceDesk Plus (SDP), you can configure and manage your Windows environment from a single point. Desktop Central automates regular desktop management activities like installing software, patches and service packs in the windows workstations and servers available in your network. You can also execute scripts for a user or workstation.

**Desktop Central Integration Requirement:**

1. You should have installed both Desktop Central and ServiceDesk Plus products.
2. The ServiceDesk Plus version should be above 8 and should be running the Enterprise Edition.
3. Desktop Central version should be build number #70211 and above.

**NOTE:** If you have installed ServiceDesk Plus version 8.0 and above, then the DC operation works for Service Requests and not Incident requests.

---

**Topics discussed under this section:**

- **Prerequisites for performing Desktop Central activities**
  Lists the prerequisites for performing desktop central activities.

- **Getting Started with DC Integration**
  Step by step configuration to establish the integration and perform desktop management activities.

- **Authentication Mechanism between the two applications**
  Authentication between SDP and DC application is through an application level key. This section explains about generating this authentication key.

- **Handling Desktop Management activities from ServiceDesk Plus**
  Procedure on handling DC operations like install/uninstall software and executing scripts from ServiceDesk Plus.

- **Enabling Notification to Technician**
  Send notification to the concern technician when the task is updated in Desktop Central.

- **Integration when DC is running in HTTPS mode**
  Steps to establish connection when Desktop Central is running in HTTPS mode.
Prerequisites for performing Desktop Central activities

Desktop Central activities are performed only if,

- The Workstations and Servers are part of a Windows domain.
- The domain should be managed by Desktop Central, and
- A Desktop Central Agent should be installed in the workstations/servers.

Getting Started with DC Integration

To get started with Desktop Central Integration, the following tasks should be performed to establish the Integration and perform desktop management activities:

1. Desktop Central Server Settings
2. Enabling access to Desktop Management Functionality
3. Enabling Template Actions in the Service Item form

Step 1: Desktop Central Server Settings

If you have installed both ServiceDesk Plus and Desktop Central servers, you just have to provide the details of the computer where Desktop Central is installed along with its Port Number. On entering these details and save, ServiceDesk Plus will try to establish a connection with the Desktop Central server. Once the connection is established, the configured software details and scripts from Desktop Central server are fetched.

1. Click Admin tab in the header pane.
2. Click Desktop Central Server Settings icon under General block.
3. In the Desktop Central Server Settings page, enter the Server where Desktop Central application is installed.
4. Enter the Port Number of the Desktop Central server.
5. Select the Protocol Settings. Say, http or https. If the Desktop Central Server is running in HTTPS mode, refer SDP-DC integration with DC in HTTPS mode, to know more on establishing connection.
6. To display Desktop Central drop-down menu, select Enable Desktop Management Menu check box. The Desktop Management menu will be displayed only for Desktop Central build number #70242 and above.
7. Click Save. The settings are saved and ServiceDesk Plus tries to establish a connection with Desktop Central server. When the connection is established, ServiceDesk Plus fetches the software details and scripts from DC.

ServiceDesk Plus automatically sync with Desktop Central server for configured software packages day-to-day. So, if you need to fetch the configured software packages instantly, select click here link.
Step 2: Enabling access to Desktop Management Functionality

While enabling login permission to a technician, you can also provide the technician with Desktop Central login access and DC Role. The two DC Roles are DC Admin and DC Guest. Select the check box **Enable to access Desktop Management Functionality** and provide either of the role to the technician. When the technician logs into ServiceDesk Plus using his/her credentials, the technician can view the Desktop Management drop-down menu, from where, the technician can perform Desktop Management functionality from within ServiceDesk Plus web console.

**NOTE:**

1. Selecting the check box **Enable to access Desktop Management Functionality** and a DC Role will create an user with same login credentials in Desktop Central application.
2. You will be able to select **Enable to access Desktop Management Functionality** check box only when the connection between Desktop Central and ServiceDesk Plus is established successfully. If the integration is not successful, then this option is greyed.
Step 3: Enabling Template Actions for a Service Request

Apart from providing technicians with the privilege to perform Desktop Central operations, you need to enable Template Actions for a service item. The Template Action lists two options:

1. Display Software Install/Uninstall option in Service Request 'Actions' menu.
2. Display Run Script option in Service Request 'Actions' menu.

Select the check boxes to provide these options in the Actions drop-down menu of the service request. Since all service requests do not require Desktop Central operations, this activity is limited by providing a Template Action check box in each service item form.

The Template Action option is available under the Work Flow tab of a service item.

![Template Actions](image)

This functionality is available only when Desktop Central 70211 and above is integrated with ServiceDesk Plus. If the integration is not established, then this option is grayed.

Authentication mechanism between the two applications

The authentication between ServiceDesk Plus and Desktop Central is through an application level key that functions as a handshake mechanism between the two applications. A unique key is generated for a technician in ServiceDesk Plus application.

1. Click Admin -> Technicians icon under User block.
2. Click the edit icon beside the technician to generate the API key. Please note that the technician should be enabled with login permission.
3. Click Generate. If a key is already generated for the technician, a Regenerate link appears.
The generated key is specified as the **Authentication Key** under ServiceDesk Settings in Desktop Central application. So whenever Desktop Central contacts ServiceDesk Plus, the authentication key is passed. This key is validated against ServiceDesk Plus database and if found valid, the process continues, else an error is thrown.

---

**Handling desktop management activities from ServiceDesk Plus**

Since the whole idea of this Integration is to perform regular desktop management activities from ServiceDesk Plus application, the list of software and scripts are fetched from Desktop Central periodically and populated in ServiceDesk Plus database.
So when an end-user raises a service request for "installing software", the technician with Desktop Central role can log into ServiceDesk Plus application and perform the installation operation.

**Performing desktop management activities**

From the request details page of the service request, click Actions drop-down menu. The options **Install/Uninstall software** and **Run Script** are listed as shown below,

![Image of request details page]

**Install/Uninstall Software**

Click **Install/Uninstall Software** option. The Install/Uninstall Software window pops up.

**Package Settings**

1. Select the Installer Type, whether the software to be installed is of the format MSI or EXE.
2. The list of software under the selected Installer Type is listed under Package Name. Choose the software from the drop down.
3. Specify the name of the user for which the installation should run in Run As field.
4. Enter the Password of the specified user.
5. The type of operation, say Install or Uninstall is listed in Operation Type drop down. If the Installer Type is MSI, the operation type consists of Install, Advertise and Uninstall. For EXE, the operation type consists of Install and Uninstall.
6. If the execution file is in a network share, then the file or folder can be copied to the client machine by selecting the option from Copy Option drop down.

**Deployment Settings**

1. The domains available in ServiceDesk Plus are listed under the Domain drop down. Select the domain of the user/workstation.
2. The installation can be for a user or a workstation. Select the option from Install for drop down.

3. You can set and schedule the installation operation. If the Install for is selected as User, the installation can occur During or after Login into the machine, during login or after login. Similarly for a workstation, the installation can occur During Startup, After Startup, During or After Startup.

4. You can also schedule a time for the deployment operation by enabling the check box beside Schedule Operation check box. Select the Schedule Date and Time using the calendar icon.

5. Set the Reboot Policy from the drop down. You can either force a reboot when the user logs into the machine, force a shut down when the user has logged in or allow the users to skip the reboot/shut down.

Selecting Users/Workstations

1. You can select the Users/Workstations for the installation from the icon. The Users/Workstations under the selected domain is listed in a pop up window.

   NOTE: Selecting Users/Workstations depends on the Install for option under Deployment Settings. If you have selected Users, Select Users appears and vice versa.

2. Enable the check box beside the user/workstation.

3. Click Select User/Workstation button. The users/workstations are listed under Selected Users/Workstation. Click Select Users/Workstation and Close button to add the users/workstations to the list and close the pop up window.

4. Save the details.

Executing Scripts

To execute scripts on a workstation/user,

1. Click Run Script option. The Run Script window pops up.

2. Select the Script Name from the drop-down box. The scripts files are uploaded in Desktop Central, and ServiceDesk Plus will store these script files in SDP database. These script files are periodically updated in SDP database.

3. If required, specify the Script Arguments.

4. Select the Domain to which the user/workstation belongs.

5. You can execute the script either for a workstation or user. If you want to install the script for a workstation, select Workstation from the Install for drop-down box. The Select Workstation block is displayed. Click the icon to select workstations.

6. To execute the script for users, select Users from the Install for drop-down box. The Select Users block is displayed. Click Select user link. The list of users belonging to the selected domain is displayed. Select the check box beside the user(s). Click Select User button. Click Select user and close button to add the selected users and close the pop-up window.

7. Click Save button.

On saving, a task is generated for the request in ServiceDesk Plus application. Simultaneously, a request is generated in Desktop Central with the form values, along
with a call back URL. Desktop Central validates the request and if valid, proceeds with the specified task.

Once the operation is executed, Desktop Central sends the updated information using the call back URL for that specific task. The authentication key is sent along with the task. This key is validated against ServiceDesk Plus database and if found valid, the status of the task is updated in SDP application. If the authentication key is invalid, an error is thrown and the status is not updated.

**NOTE:** Please note that if the request is deleted or moved to the archive state, then the status does not get updated in SDP application.

### Enabling Notification to Technician

Once the software installation/uninstallation task is performed and the status is updated by Desktop Central, you can enable notification to the concern technician regarding the update under Notification Rules.

1. Click **Admin -> Notification Rules** icon under Helpdesk block.
2. In the Request section, Enable "**Notify Technician when a software Installation/Uninstallation task is updated**" check box.
3. Save the details.

### Integration when Desktop Central is running in HTTPS mode

If Desktop Central Server is running in HTTPS mode, then the following steps should be followed to establish connection between ServiceDesk Plus and Desktop Central servers.

1. Download the .zip file from the link given below and extract it to ManageEngine\ServiceDesk


2. Connect to the command prompt. Goto ManageEngine\ServiceDesk and run the batch file with following format:

   C:>ManageEngine\ServiceDesk>gencert.bat  dcservername:portnumber

3. On running the command, you will receive an exception PKIX and then it will ask you to enter a value. Provide value 1 which will generate a file named jssecacerts under ManageEngine\ServiceDesk.
4. Copy the jssecacerts file under ManageEngine\ServiceDesk\jre\lib\security folder and then restart the ServiceDesk Plus application.
Translations

Translations let you personalize ServiceDesk Plus by modifying any text displayed in the web interface to suit your organization needs. You can modify sentences or change specific words such as, Request to Tickets, Admin to Configurations, or Requesters to Users using Translations.

If you have multi language edition, then you can modify the transcripts for all the languages supported by ServiceDesk Plus.

NOTE:

1. To view the modified text, make sure you restart the server.
2. For sentences with curly braces {}, make sure you enter the curly braces even after modifying the sentence.

To access Translations Configuration Wizard,

1. Click Admin tab in the header pane.
2. Click Translations icon under General block. By default, the language set in the Translations page is English. The total number of text in the application, and the number of modification make by you is represented in the form of a link. You can select the link to view the same.

In case of other language, the English text and the other language text is displayed one below the other.

Modifying Sentences

If you want to modify a sentence, then an instant means is by performing a search for the sentence.

1. Enter the sentence in Search for English text field. Say, Mark this template Inactive to.
2. Click Search button. The search result shows the list of sentences having Mark this template Inactive.
3. Click Modify link below the sentence.
4. Enter the modified sentence in the text provided. Say, Mark as Inactive.
5. Click the icon to save. The entered value is saved in the file present in the custom/i18n directory. A Reset link is displayed beside the modified sentence. Click the Reset link to revert the changes.
Modifying a specific Text

If you want to call Admin as Configurations, or Requesters as Users, then you can do so using the Find & Replace button.

1. Click **Find & Replace** button.
2. Enter the keyword to search in **Find** text box.
3. Specify the keyword to be replaced in the **Replace** text box.
4. Click **Proceed** button.
5. The search result shows sentences with the search keyword and the corresponding sentences with the replaced keyword at the side.
6. Select the check box beside the sentences to replace the word.
7. Click **Replace** button. The sentence is modified and displayed along with a Reset link. Click **Reset** link to revert the changes.
API

ServiceDesk Plus API

- Purpose of API in ServiceDesk Plus
- API Types and supported Operations
- Procedure
  - Servlet API
  - REST API
- Difference between Servlet and REST API
- Future Enhancements

Purpose of API in ServiceDesk Plus

Application Programming Interface (API) is used to integrate various applications and facilitate sharing of data between them. The integration can be achieved with any third party (external) applications or web services that are capable of sending the data via http protocol.

With API, ServiceDesk Plus operations can be accessed from other applications or web services. In case of request operations, it provides a convenient method to raise requests (other than the default e-mail or web form) directly into ServiceDesk Plus without logging into the application. If required, you can also have an option to create your own web form for using API.

API Types and supported Operations

ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus supports both Servlet and REST API. While the functionality is similar for both, Servlet consists of http form based submission whereas, REST conforms to the REST specifications. Both the API methods can be implemented simultaneously in the application provided, the operation is performed with the corresponding syntax definitions.

The servlet Http form submission based API supports operations such as,

- Adding new request, editing, closing, deleting, viewing existing requests and adding notes for existing requests.
- Adding new site, editing and deleting the existing site.
- Adding new technician, editing and deleting the existing technician.
- Adding new requester, editing and deleting the existing requester.
- Adding a workstation/server, updating a workstation/server, adding an asset, updating an asset and deleting assets.

While the REST API supports only request related operations such as,

- Adding new request, editing, closing, deleting and viewing existing requests.
• Adding new notes to a request, editing, deleting and viewing existing notes.
• Adding work log to a request, editing, deleting and viewing existing work logs.

Difference between Servlet and REST API

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Servlet API</th>
<th>REST API</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The servlet is a form based input submission by the external applications. While the output is exposed in XML format.</td>
<td>The input data is sent as an XML string and the output is exposed as an XML string.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication is through <strong>User Name and Password</strong> for every API operation.</td>
<td>Authentication is through <strong>Technician Key</strong> for every API operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supports operations on features such as Request, Site, Technician, Requester and Assets.</td>
<td>Supports operations on Requests alone.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Future Enhancements

• Support the remaining modules namely problem, change, purchase, contracts, CMDB and admin.
Servlet API

- About Servlet API
- Servlet API Supported Operations
- Troubleshooting Tips

About Servlet API

Servlet http form based submission is one of the methods of API in SDP. In this case, a **html form** is created directly from the web browser or by plugging in small piece of code in the integrating applications. This form helps users to access ServiceDesk Plus from other applications.

**Scenario:**

Say for instance, the html form for creating requests is exposed in your organization’s intranet. Users can use this form to raise requests instantly in ServiceDesk Plus without accessing the application. The result of the operation contains the status of the operation and key information such as the request ID.

Similar operations can be performed on requests, sites, technician, requesters and assets from the external application, for which the sample forms are shown in the following documents.

The field values to be set in Request, Site, Technician, Requester and Assets are added as parameters in HttpRequest details. The fields unavailable in the form are set as empty (or default). The Operation performed is decided based on the http parameter 'operation'. The html form is submitted to /servlets/RequestServlet as,

http://machine_name:Port_Number/servlets/RequestServlet

URL or submitting the request programmatically to the above link. Authorization to the ServiceDesk Plus server is based on the username and password provided.
Servlet API supported operations

The servlet Http form submission based API supports operations such as,

- Adding new request, editing, closing, adding notes, deleting and viewing a request.
  Adding new site, editing a site and deleting a site.
- Adding a new technician, editing and deleting technician.
- Adding a new requester, editing and deleting requester.
- Adding a workstation/server, updating a workstation/server, adding an asset, updating an asset and deleting assets.

Troubleshooting Tips

If login failed for a correct userName and password,

1. Check if the user is imported from Active Directory.
2. If user is not imported from Active Directory, then submit only the username and password to the below link for authentication.

   http://machinename:portname/servlets/RequestServlet

3. If user is imported from Active Directory, then submit the username and password along with DOMAIN_NAME and logonDomainName to the below link for authentication.

   http://machinename:portname/servlets/RequestServlet

| Note | DOMAIN_NAME represents the Domain to which the User belongs, logonDomainName represents Authentication Mode, Local Authentication or empty value refers to Local Authentication mode, and AD_AUTH refers to Active Directory Authentication Mode. |
Request Attributes and xml Response

The request attributes for all request operations should be defined as mentioned. The operations on requests are based on the "Roles" assigned to the users.

1. Attributes are case sensitive and should be used as defined.
2. Operations on request can be performed based on the Roles assigned to the user.
3. While renaming the button in the sample html form, specify 'operation' as hidden element.

- Add Request
- Updating Request
- Assign Request
- Close Request
- Delete Request
- Add Notes
- Add Work Log
- Delete Work Log
- Get Request

Add Request

The details necessary for Adding a Request should be set in http request parameters and the 'operation' command should be 'AddRequest'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>targetURL=&quot;/servlets/RequestServlet&quot;</td>
<td>Operation target URL for Adding Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operation='AddRequest'</td>
<td>Operation command for Adding Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reqTemplate</td>
<td>name of the Request Template</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subject</td>
<td>Subject of the request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>Description of the request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resolution</td>
<td>Resolution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>requester</td>
<td>Requester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>requesterEmail</td>
<td>Email ID of Requester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>priority</td>
<td>Priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>level</td>
<td>Level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>status</td>
<td>Status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mode</td>
<td>Mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urgency</td>
<td>Urgency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impact</td>
<td>Impact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impactDetails</td>
<td>Impact Details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>requesttype</td>
<td>RequestType</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>site</td>
<td>Site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>category</td>
<td>Category</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subcategory</td>
<td>SubCategory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>item</td>
<td>Item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group</td>
<td>Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>technician</td>
<td>Technician Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>technicianEmail</td>
<td>Technician Email ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDF Alias Name</td>
<td>Name of the UDF field specified while creating the field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>Login Name for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Password for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOMAIN_NAME</td>
<td>Domain Name to which the user belongs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Domain Name needs to be specified on selecting AD authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logonDomainName</td>
<td>Authentication Mode [AD or Local Authentication].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AD_AUTH refers to Active Directory Authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Local Authentication or empty value refers to Local Authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

1. Requester and Technician is identified based on their **UserName** and **EmailID**.
2. While creating a request in Requester Login, the **Site** field is set with the site of the requester.
3. For a Technician login, **Not in Any Site** is specified by empty value or 'NULL' for site.
4. While creating request through Requester Login, the Requester is restricted to create request for the asset associated to him/her only if **Show workstations associated to requester in Self-Service Portal** is selected under Admin -> Self Service Portal Settings.
5. If a Technician (with restricted access permissions) creates request for a site unassociated to him, then the Request Site field is set as 'Not In Any Site'.
6. If a Technician (with restricted access permissions) creates a request for the site specified in the template, the Request Site field is set as 'Not in Any Site'.
7. While creating a request, if **Subject** field is left empty, then '(no subject)' is set as subject for the Request.
8. If a field is not available for a request template but given through API, then the field is discarded.
9. If the **Requester** information is not provided, then the logged in user is set as the Requester for the request.
10. While creating a request, if the mandatory fields specified in Request Template are not provided, then the request is created with the information provided by RequestServlet and a System Log is populated with an error message.

The sample form to create request can be accessed here.

The html form is submitted to http://machine_name:Port_Number/servlets/RequestServlet and a response in xml format displays "Success" message along with the WorkOrder ID.

If the technician creating the request does not have permission to create new requests or has limited access permissions then a "Failure" message appears in the xml form.

**Update Request**

The details to be updated should be set in the http request parameters along with 'workOrderID' parameter. The 'workOrderID' parameter is mandatory for request update. The 'operation' command should be 'UpdateRequest'. Requesters do not have permission to update requests.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>targetURL=&quot;/servlets/RequestServlet&quot;</td>
<td>Operation target URL for updating Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operation='UpdateRequest'</td>
<td>Operation command for Updating Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>workOrderID</td>
<td>Request ID of the request to update.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reqTemplate</td>
<td>Name of the Request Template</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subject</td>
<td>Subject of the request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>Description of the request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resolution</td>
<td>Resolution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>requester</td>
<td>Requester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>requesterEmail</td>
<td>Email Id of Requester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>priority</td>
<td>Priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>level</td>
<td>Level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duebytime</td>
<td>Due By time to be applied for the request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>status</td>
<td>Status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mode</td>
<td>Mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urgency</td>
<td>Urgency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impact</td>
<td>Impact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impactDetails</td>
<td>Impact Details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>requesttype</td>
<td>RequestType</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Attribute Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>site</td>
<td>Site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>category</td>
<td>Category</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subcategory</td>
<td>SubCategory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>item</td>
<td>Item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group</td>
<td>Group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>technician</td>
<td>Technician Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>technicianEmail</td>
<td>Technician Email ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDF Alias Name</td>
<td>name of the UDF field specified while creating the field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>Login Name for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Password for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOMAIN_NAME</td>
<td>Domain Name to which the user belongs. Domain Name needs to be specified on selecting AD authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logonDomainName</td>
<td>Authentication Mode [AD or Local Authentication].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;AD_AUTH&quot; refers to Active Directory Authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;Local Authentication&quot; or empty value refers to Local Authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

1. Requester and Technician is identified based on their **UserName** and **EmailID**.
2. Empty Values can be updated to request by passing the value as **NULL**.
3. Requester cannot update a request.

A sample form for updating requests can be viewed here.

A Success message appears in a xml format if the request is updated successfully.

If the technician does not have permission to update the request (Edit Request permission under Roles), a Failure message appears in the xml form.

In some cases, the technicians view permission is restricted say, a technician with the permission to view only "Requests assigned to him" cannot update requests assigned to other technicians.

Similarly, technicians who are associated to "not associated in any site" option have permission to update requests assigned to him and requests not associated to any sites. Click here to view the xml response.
Assign Request

Assign Request is similar to Update Request except the Technician Name should be set in the request parameters along with workOrderID' parameter. The 'workOrderID' parameter is mandatory for assigning a request to other technicians. The 'operation' command should be 'UpdateRequest'. Requester does not have permission for updating a request.

The sample form for assigning/picking up request is similar to that of Updating requests. Requests are assigned to technicians associated to the specified site. If Group is mentioned then the technician should be assigned to the group. If the request is assigned to a technician unassociated to the site, the response in xml format does not display an error message and the request is not assigned to the technician.

Close Request

A request can be closed in two ways,

- Set the 'staus' parameter as 'Closed' along with the 'workOrderID' parameter (mandatory parameter) and operation command as 'UpdateRequest'.
- Set 'workOrderID' parameter (mandatory for request update) and 'operation' command as 'CloseRequest'. Set the 'Close comments' parameter as 'closeComment'. The Close Comment can be added, if 'Confirm User Acknowledgment' is selected as 'YES' in 'Request Closing Rules'. Requester does not have permission for closing a request.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>targetURL==&quot;/servlets/RequestServlet&quot;</td>
<td>Operation target URL for closing Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operation='CloseRequest'</td>
<td>Operation command for closing Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>workOrderID</td>
<td>Request ID of the request to close.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>closeComment</td>
<td>Close Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>Login Name for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Password for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOMAIN_NAME</td>
<td>Domain Name to which the user belongs. Domain Name needs to be specified on selecting AD authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logonDomainName</td>
<td>Authentication Mode [AD or Local Authentication].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AD_AUTH refers to Active Directory Authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Local Authentication or empty value refers to Local Authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The sample form to close request can be accessed here.

A success message appears in xml format on submitting the form to http://macine_name:Port_Number/servlets/RequestServlet.

At time if the request ID mentioned does not exist then "WorkOrder not found for ID: 20" appears in the xml form.

If the technician has restricted access permission or does not have permission to close the request then a Warning message appears in the xml form.

**Delete Request**

The 'workOrderID' parameter should be set in the http request parameters along with the 'operation' command as 'DeleteRequest'. Requester does not have permission for deleting a request.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>targetURL=&quot;/servlets/RequestServlet&quot;</td>
<td>Operation target URL for deleting Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operation='DeleteRequest'</td>
<td>Operation command for Deleting Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>workOrderID</td>
<td>Request ID of the request to delete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>Login Name for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Password for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOMAIN_NAME</td>
<td>Domain Name to which the user belongs. Domain Name needs to be specified on selecting AD authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logonDomainName</td>
<td>Authentication Mode [AD or Local Authentication].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;AD_AUTH&quot; refers to Active Directory Authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;Local Authentication&quot; or empty value refers to Local Authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The sample form to delete requests can be viewed here.

A Success message appears if the technician has permission to delete the request.

If a technician without delete permission or with restricted viewing permission is trying to delete a request then a Failure message appears as the xml response.

**Add Notes**

The parameters namely, 'Notes', 'isPublic', 'workOrderID' should be set in the http request parameters along with the 'operation' command as 'AddNotes'.
### Attribute | Comment
--- | ---
targetURL="/servlets/RequestServlet" | Operation target URL for adding notes to request
operation='AddNotes' | Operation command for closing Request
workOrderID | Request ID of the request to add notes
notesText | Notes to be added to the given Request ID
isPublic | isPublic=true denotes Public Notes
 | isPublic=false denotes Private Notes
username | Login Name for SDP Authentication
close | Comments
password | Password for SDP Authentication
DOMAIN_NAME | Domain Name to which the user belongs. Domain Name needs to be specified on selecting AD authentication.
logonDomainName | Authentication Mode [AD or Local Authentication].
 | AD_AUTH refers to Active Directory Authentication.
 | Local Authentication or empty value refers to Local Authentication.

The sample form to add notes can be accessed here.

Technicians with permission over request module can add notes. A Success message appears if the note is added successfully.

At times, technicians may not have permission (Edit permission under Roles) or their access is restricted for which a Failure message appears.

**Add Work Log**

The 'workOrderID' parameter along with the 'operation' command as 'AddWorkLog' should be sent to the http request parameters. Only technicians have permission to add work log.

| Attribute | Comment |
--- | ---
targetURL="/servlets/RequestServlet" | Operation target URL for adding notes to request
operation='AddWorkLog' | Operation command for adding work log to request
workOrderID | Request ID

---

*Zoho Corporation*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Attribute</strong></th>
<th><strong>Comment</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>technician</td>
<td>Technician Resolving the Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>technicianEmail</td>
<td>Email-ID of technician Resolving the Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>workHours</td>
<td>Time Taken To Resolve in hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>workMinutes</td>
<td>Time Taken To Resolve in minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>Incident Cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>executedTime</td>
<td>Executed Time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>Login Name for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Password for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOMAIN_NAME</td>
<td>Domain Name to which the user belongs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Domain Name needs to be specified on selecting AD authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logonDomainName</td>
<td>Authentication Mode [AD or Local Authentication].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AD_AUTH refers to Active Directory Authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Local Authentication or empty value refers to Local Authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

1. If the fields, 'technician' and 'technicianEmail' is left unfilled, the logged in technician is considered as the technician resolving the request.
2. If the 'cost' field remains empty, then 'cost per hour' will be taken as the Incident Cost.
3. If the execution time is left unfilled, the current time is taken as the 'execution time'.
4. The Execution Time should be in the format 'dd MMM yyyy, HH:mm:ss[08 Nov 2009, 21:15:26]'.

The sample form to add Work Log can be accessed here.

A Success message appears along with the 'requestChargeID' in xml format on submitting the form to http://machine_name:Port_Number/servlets/RequestServlet.

If the technician is not provided with the role to add work log a Failure message appears in the xml response.

At times, the access to view requests is restricted for which a Failure message appears in xml form. Click here to view the response.
Delete Work Log

The 'requestChargeID' parameter along with the 'operation' command as 'DeleteWorkLog' should be set in the http request parameters. Only technicians have the permission to delete work logs. The requestChargeID is provided while adding the work log.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>targetURL</td>
<td>Operation target URL for deleting work log</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operation</td>
<td>Operation command for Deleting work log</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>requestChargeID</td>
<td>Work Log ID to delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>Login Name for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Password for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOMAIN_NAME</td>
<td>Domain Name to which the user belongs. Domain Name needs to be specified on selecting AD authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logonDomainName</td>
<td>Authentication Mode [AD or Local Authentication].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;AD_AUTH&quot; refers to Active Directory Authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;Local Authentication&quot; or empty value refers to Local Authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Delete Work Log sample form can be accessed here.

The work log is deleted successfully if the technician has permission to delete the Work Log. Click here to view the xml response.

Get Request

The 'workOrderID' parameter should be set in the http request parameters along with the 'operation' command as 'GetRequestDetails'. Requester does not have permission for deleting a request.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GetRequestDetails</td>
<td>Operation command for Getting Request Details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>workOrderID</td>
<td>Request ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>Login Name for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Password for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOMAIN_NAME</td>
<td>Domain Name to which the user belongs. Domain Name needs to be specified on selecting AD authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logonDomainName</td>
<td>Authentication Mode [AD or Local Authentication].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AD_AUTH refers to Active Directory Authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Local Authentication or empty value refers to Local Authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The sample form to view the request details can be accessed here.

The request details are displayed as the response in xml if the technician has permission to view requests. The fields unspecified in the form are set as 'null' as shown.

A failure message appears as shown if the technician does not have permission to view requests or has restricted access permission.
Site Attributes and xml Response

The site attributes along with their actions should be used as defined below.

| Note | 1. The site operations that can be performed through API are adding, updating and deleting sites. |
|      | 2. Site operations can be performed by technicians only with administrator privilege. The Site Administrator can neither add, edit nor delete a site. |
|      | 3. The attributes are case sensitive and should be used as defined. |
|      | 4. While renaming the button in the sample html form, specify 'operation' as hidden element. |

- Add Site
- Update Site
- Delete Site

Add Site

The details necessary for adding a site should be set in HttpRequest parameters and HttpRequest parameter value for operation attribute should be 'AddSite'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>targetURL=&quot;/servlets/SiteServlet&quot;</td>
<td>target url for adding site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operation='AddSite'</td>
<td>operation command for Adding site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siteName</td>
<td>Organization Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>Description for the site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>region</td>
<td>The Region to which the site belongs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeZone</td>
<td>Time Zone of the site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doorNo</td>
<td>Address of the organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>street</td>
<td>Address where the company is located in the specified site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>landmark</td>
<td>Provide a landmark if required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>city</td>
<td>City where the company is located.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postalCode</td>
<td>Address where the company is located in the specified site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Attributes</strong></td>
<td><strong>Comments</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>state</td>
<td>Address where the company is located in the specified site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>country</td>
<td>Address where the company is located in the specified site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>email</td>
<td>Email address of the organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phone</td>
<td>contact information of the organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fax</td>
<td>Fax number of the organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>webUrl</td>
<td>website of the organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OperationalHoursSettings</td>
<td>Related Settings for Operational hours of the site. Allowed values: &lt;br&gt; copy (Copy Default Settings), refer (Refer Default Settings), custom (Custom Settings)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HolidaysSettings</td>
<td>Related Settings for Holidays setting of the site. Allowed values: &lt;br&gt; copy (Copy Default Settings), refer (Refer Default Settings), custom (Custom Settings)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DepartmentsSettings</td>
<td>Related Settings for Departments setting of the site. Allowed values: &lt;br&gt; copy (Copy Default Settings), custom (Custom Settings)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TechSiteAssociationSettings</td>
<td>Related Settings for Technicians/Site Association setting of the site. Allowed values: &lt;br&gt; copy (Copy Default Settings), refer (Refer Default Settings), custom (Custom Settings)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GroupsSettings</td>
<td>Related Settings for Groups setting of the site. Allowed values: &lt;br&gt; copy (Copy Default Settings), refer (Refer Default Settings), custom (Custom Settings)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BusinessRulesSettings</td>
<td>Related Settings for Business Rules setting of the site. Allowed values: &lt;br&gt; copy (Copy Default Settings), refer (Refer Default Settings), custom (Custom Settings)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLASettings</td>
<td>Related Settings for Service Level Agreements setting of the site. Allowed values:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributes</td>
<td>Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copy (Copy Default Settings), refer (Refer Default Settings), custom (Custom Settings)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>Login Name for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Password for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOMAIN_NAME</td>
<td>Domain Name to which the user belongs. Domain Name should be specified on enabling AD authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logonDomainName</td>
<td>Authentication Mode [AD or Local Authentication]. &quot;AD_AUTH&quot; refers to Active Directory Authentication. 'Local Authentication&quot; or empty value refers to Local Authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

1. If the Region specified for the site is not configured in the ServiceDesk Plus, then the region field does not get populated in the application.
2. If any of the Related Settings other than DepartmentSettings is left unselected, 'Refer Default Settings' option is selected is selected as default. In the case of DepartmentSettings, Custom Default Settings is selected by default.
3. If any of the following namely, TechSiteAssociationSettings, GroupsSettings, BusinessRulesSettings or SLASettings is selected as Refer Default Settings, the other three is set to refer in the application.
4. Technicians with SDSiteAdmin role have the privilege to edit the site information. However, they cannot edit 'Related Settings.'

The sample form to add a new site can be viewed here.

The html form is submitted to http://machinename:Portnumber/servlets/SiteServlet and a response in xml format displays Success message along with the Site ID.

A failure message appears if,

- A technician without admin permission is trying to add a new site. [xml response]
- The specified site name already exists. [xml response]

**Update Site**

The details to be updated should be set in the http request parameters with the 'operation' command as 'Update'. It is a mandatory field while updating a site.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Attributes</strong></th>
<th><strong>Comments</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>targetURL=&quot;/servlets/SiteServlet&quot;</td>
<td>target url for adding site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operation='UpdateSite'</td>
<td>operation command for Adding site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oldSiteName</td>
<td>Site Name for update</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siteName</td>
<td>New Organization Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>Description for the site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>region</td>
<td>The Region to which the site belongs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timeZone</td>
<td>Time Zone of the site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doorNo</td>
<td>Address of the organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>street</td>
<td>Address where the company is located in the specified site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>landmark</td>
<td>Provide a landmark if required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>city</td>
<td>City where the company is located.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>postalCode</td>
<td>Address where the company is located in the specified site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>state</td>
<td>Address where the company is located in the specified site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>country</td>
<td>Address where the company is located in the specified site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>email</td>
<td>Email address of the organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phone</td>
<td>contact information of the organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fax</td>
<td>Fax number of the organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>webUrl</td>
<td>website of the organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OperationalHoursSettings</td>
<td>Related Settings for Operational hours of the site. Allowed values:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OperationalHoursSettings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HolidaysSettings</td>
<td>Related Settings for Holidays setting of the site. Allowed values:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HolidaysSettings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributes</td>
<td>Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DepartmentsSettings</td>
<td>Related Settings for Departments setting of the site. Allowed values:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>copy</strong> (Copy Default Settings),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>custom</strong> (Custom Settings)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TechSiteAssociationSettings</td>
<td>Related Settings for Technicians/Site Association setting of the site. Allowed values:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>copy</strong> (Copy Default Settings),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>refer</strong> (Refer Default Settings),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>custom</strong> (Custom Settings)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GroupsSettings</td>
<td>Related Settings for Groups setting of the site. Allowed values:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>copy</strong> (Copy Default Settings),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>refer</strong> (Refer Default Settings),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>custom</strong> (Custom Settings)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BusinessRulesSettings</td>
<td>Related Settings for Business Rules setting of the site. Allowed values:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>copy</strong> (Copy Default Settings),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>refer</strong> (Refer Default Settings),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>custom</strong> (Custom Settings)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLASettings</td>
<td>Related Settings for Service Level Agreements setting of the site. Allowed values:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>copy</strong> (Copy Default Settings),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>refer</strong> (Refer Default Settings),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>custom</strong> (Custom Settings)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>Login Name for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Password for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOMAIN_NAME</td>
<td>Domain Name to which the user belongs. The Domain Name should be specified on enabling AD authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The sample form to update sites can be viewed [here](#).

A Success message appears in the xml form when the site details are updated successfully.

### Delete Site

The 'siteName' parameter along with the operation command as 'DeleteSite' should be set in HttpRequest parameters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>targetURL=&quot;/servlets/SiteServlet&quot;</td>
<td>target url for Adding site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operation='DeleteSite'</td>
<td>operation command for deleting site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siteName</td>
<td>Organization Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>Login Name for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Password for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOMAIN_NAME</td>
<td>Domain Name to which the user belongs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logonDomainName</td>
<td>Authentication Mode [AD or Local Authentication].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AD_AUTH refers to Active Directory Authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Local Authentication or empty value refers to Local Authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The sample form to delete site can be accessed [here](#).

A Success message appears in xml format once the site is deleted successfully.
A Failure message appears if,

- A SiteAdmin is trying to delete the sites. [xml response]
- If the site is used by a module. [xml response]
Technician Attributes and xml Response

The technician attributes along with their actions should be used as defined below.

| Note | 1. The technician operations that can be performed through API are adding, updating and deleting. |
|      | 2. Only technicians with roles of SDAdmin and SDSiteAdmin can perform add, update and delete operations. |
|      | 3. The attributes are case sensitive and should be used as defined. |
|      | 4. While renaming the button in the sample html form, specify 'operation' as hidden element. |

- Add Technician
- Update Technician
- Delete Technician

Add Technician

The details necessary for adding a technician should be set in HttpRequest parameters and HttpRequest parameter value for operation attribute should be 'AddTechnician'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>targetURL</td>
<td>target URL for Adding technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operation</td>
<td>operation command for Adding technician.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Technician name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>employeeId</td>
<td>Employee ID of the technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>email</td>
<td>Email Address of the technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phone</td>
<td>Phone Number of the technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mobile</td>
<td>Mobile number of technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smsMailId</td>
<td>SMS mail id of technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>costPerHr</td>
<td>technician's cost per hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>departmentName</td>
<td>department name to which the technician is associated to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>techSiteName</td>
<td>site name to which the technician is associated to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jobTitle</td>
<td>Job title of the technician.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributes</td>
<td>Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>associateSites</td>
<td>Associated sites of the technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>associateGroups</td>
<td>Associated groups of the technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approvePurchaseOrder</td>
<td>Purchase Order Approver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Allowed Values: true, false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDF aliases name</td>
<td>additional fields should be specified based on their column names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enableLogin</td>
<td>parameter for Enable Login for Technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Allowed Values: true, false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loginName</td>
<td>Technician's login name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pwd</td>
<td>Technician's password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>userDomainName</td>
<td>Domain to which the technician belongs to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>associateRols</td>
<td>roles associated with the technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>Login Name for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Password for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOMAIN_NAME</td>
<td>Domain Name to which the user belongs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logonDomainName</td>
<td>Authentication Mode [AD or Local Authentication].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“AD_AUTH” refers to Active Directory Authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Local Authentication” or empty value refers to Local Authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

i. If the technician is associated to many sites, the sites should be specified in comma separated format in 'associateSites' say, India, US, London.

ii. If the technician is assigned to more than one group, the groups should be specified in comma separated format in 'associateGroups' as sitename-groupname'.

iii. If the technician is 'Not associated to any site', specify the value as 'default' in 'associateSites'.

iv. To assign a technician to a department of 'Not associated to any site', 'techSiteName' should be specified as 'default'.

v. If invalid values are provided for 'departmentName' and 'techSiteName', then technician is associated to 'Not associated to any site'.

vi. 'approvePurchaseOrder' is enabled only when the email ID of the technician is specified. The values permitted for 'approvePurchaseOrder' are 'true' and 'false'. By default, the value is 'false'.

vii. The values permitted for 'enableLogin' are 'true' and 'false'. By default, the value is 'false'.

---

**Zoho Corporation**
viii. If ‘pwd’ is not specified, the pwd for the technician is the same as the specified ‘loginName’.
ix. Login is not provided to the technician if ‘loginName’ is not specified.
x. Technicians with SDSiteAdmin privileges but restricted access permissions can add technicians only for their associated sites.

The sample form to add a new technician can be viewed here.

The html form is submitted to http://machinename:Portnumber/servlets/RequestServlet and a response in xml format displays Success message along with the User ID.

A failure message appears if,

1. a technician without admin privilege is trying to add a technician. [xml response]
2. A technician with restricted access is trying to create a technician not associated to his site. [xml response]
3. the specified technician login name already exists [xml response]

**Update Technician**

The details necessary for adding a technician should be set in HttpRequest parameters and Httprequest parameter value for operation attribute should be ‘UpdateTechnician’.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>targetURL=&quot;/servlets/TechnicianServlet&quot;</td>
<td>target URL for Updating technician.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operation='UpdateTechnician'</td>
<td>operation command for Updating technician.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>techUserName</td>
<td>Technician Name to update</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>techLoginName</td>
<td>Login Name of the technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>techDomainName</td>
<td>Domain Name to which technician the technician belongs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>techEmailId</td>
<td>Email ID of the technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>userid</td>
<td>Technician ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Technician name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>employeeId</td>
<td>Employee ID of the technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>email</td>
<td>Email Address of the technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phone</td>
<td>Phone Number of the technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mobile</td>
<td>Mobile number of technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smsMailId</td>
<td>SMS mail id of technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>costPerHr</td>
<td>technician's cost per hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>departmentName</td>
<td>department name to which the technician is associated to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>techSiteName</td>
<td>site name to which the technician is associated to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributes</td>
<td>Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jobTitle</td>
<td>Job title of the technician.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>associateSites</td>
<td>Associated sites of the technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>associateGroups</td>
<td>Associated groups of the technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDF aliases name</td>
<td>additional fields should be specified based on their column names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>Login Name for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Password for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOMAIN_NAME</td>
<td>Domain Name to which the user belongs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logonDomainName</td>
<td>Authentication Mode [AD or Local Authentication].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“AD_AUTH” refers to Active Directory Authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Local Authentication” or empty value refers to Local Authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

1. While performing the edit operation, technicians are identified based on the order below,
   
   i. The users are first identified based on the 'techLoginName' and 'techDomainName'.
   ii. If the 'techDomainName' is not specified, the user is identified based on the 'techLoginName' with 'techDomainName' as an empty value.
   iii. If the technician does not fall under the above criteria, the user is identified based on the 'techEmailid'.
   iv. If the technician is unavailable in the above specified criteria, the technician is identified based on the 'techUserName'.
   v. If the technician cannot be identified from the above criteria, then the technician is identified based on 'userid'.
   vi. Based on the reqUserName or reqEmailId, if more than one technicians are identified then the technician details is neither updated nor deleted.

2. Login details and 'approvePurchaseOrder' value cannot be updated through API.
3. Technicians with SDSiteAdmin privileges but restricted access permissions can add technicians only for their associated sites.

The sample form to update technicians can be accessed here.

A success message appears if the technician is updated successfully.
A failure message appears if,

1. A technician without admin privilege is trying to update a technician. [xml response]
2. A technician with restricted access is trying to update a technician not associated to his site. [xml response]

### Delete Technician

The details necessary for adding a technician should be set in HttpRequest parameters and HttpRequest parameter value for operation attribute should be 'UpdateTechnician'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>targetURL=&quot;/servlets/TechnicianOperationServlet&quot;</td>
<td>target URL for deleting technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operation='DeleteTechnician'</td>
<td>operation command for deleting technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Technician Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loginName</td>
<td>Technician's Login Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domainName</td>
<td>Technician's login domain name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emailId</td>
<td>Technician's email ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>userid</td>
<td>Technician ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>Login Name for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Password for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOMAIN_NAME</td>
<td>Domain Name to which the user belongs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logonDomainName</td>
<td>Authentication Mode [AD or Local Authentication].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“AD_AUTH” refers to Active Directory Authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Local Authentication” or empty value refers to Local Authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

1. Technician with 'SDAdmin' can be deleted only by other 'SDAdmin'.

The sample form to delete a technician can be viewed here.

The response in xml displays a Success message if the technician has permission to delete technicians.
Requester Attributes and xml Response

The requester attributes along with their actions are given below,

| Note | 1. The requester operations that can be performed through API are adding, updating and deleting requester. |
|      | 2. Technicians with restricted access permission can perform add, edit and delete operations on requesters associated to their sites. |
|      | 3. The attributes are case sensitive and should be used as defined. |
|      | 4. While renaming the button in the sample html form, specify 'operation' as hidden element. |

- Add Requester
- Update Requester
- Delete Requester

Add Requester

The details necessary for adding a requester should be set in HttpRequest parameters and Httprequest parameter value for operation attribute should be 'AddRequester'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>targetURL=&quot;/servlets/RequesterServlet&quot;</td>
<td>target URL for Adding requester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operation='Addrequester'</td>
<td>operation command for Adding requester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Requester name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>employeeId</td>
<td>Employee ID of the requester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>Description about employee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>email</td>
<td>Email Address of the requester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phone</td>
<td>Phone Number of the requester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mobile</td>
<td>Mobile number of requester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>site</td>
<td>site to which requester is associated to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>departmentName</td>
<td>department name to which the requester is associated to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jobTitle</td>
<td>Job title of the requester.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>requestViewPermission</td>
<td>permission for 'Requester allowed to view'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributes</td>
<td>Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Allowed Values:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OWN REQUEST: for Requester allowed to view - Show only their own requests,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DEPARTMENT REQUEST: for Requester allowed to view - Show all their Department requests,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SITE REQUEST: for Requester allowed to view - Show all their Site requests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approvePurchaseOrder</td>
<td>Purchase Order Approver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Allowed Values: true, false.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDF aliases name</td>
<td>additional fields should be specified based on their column names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loginName</td>
<td>login name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pwd</td>
<td>password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>userDomainName</td>
<td>Domain with which the requester is associated to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>Login Name for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Password for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOMAIN_NAME</td>
<td>Domain Name to which the user belongs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logonDomainName</td>
<td>Authentication Mode [AD or Local Authentication].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“AD_AUTH” refers to Active Directory Authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Local Authentication” or empty value refers to Local Authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

1. If the requester is not associated to any department in a site, the site value is automatically set to 'not associated to any site'.
2. By default, the value for approvePurchase Order is false.
3. 'approvePurchaseOrder' is enabled only when the email ID of the requester is available.
4. If 'requestViewPermission' value is vacant, then the value is set as 'Show only their request'.
5. If a technician with 'SDAdmin' role provides values for 'techSiteName' and 'departmentName' which is unavailable in the database, then the requester is associated to the site and department specified in 'techSiteName' and 'departmentName'.
6. If a technician with restricted access permission provides values for 'techSiteName' and 'departmentName' which is unavailable in the database, then the requester is associated to 'Not associated to any site'.

The sample form for adding a new requester can be viewed here.

The html form is submitted to http://machinename:Portnumber/servlets/RequesterServlet and a response in xml format displays Success message along with the userID or Requester ID.

A failure message appears

- If the technician adding the requester is not associated to the site and has restricted access permissions.
- A technician without administrator privilege is trying to add a requester. [Click here to view the xml response]

**Update Requester**

The details necessary for updating a requester should be set in HttpRequest parameters and Httprequest parameter value for operation attribute should be 'Updaterequester'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>targetURL</td>
<td>target URL for Updating requester.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;/servlets/requesterServlet&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operation</td>
<td>operation command for Updating requester.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reqUserName</td>
<td>Requester Name to update</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reqLoginName</td>
<td>Requester Login Name to update</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reqdomainName</td>
<td>Domain Name to which the requester belongs to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reqEmailId</td>
<td>Requester Email ID to update</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>userid</td>
<td>Requester ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>Requester name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>employeeId</td>
<td>Employee ID of the requester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>Description about employee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>email</td>
<td>Email Address of the requester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phone</td>
<td>Phone Number of the requester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributes</td>
<td>Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mobile</td>
<td>Mobile number of requester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>site</td>
<td>site to which requester is associated to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>departmentName</td>
<td>department name to which the requester is associated to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jobTitle</td>
<td>Job title of the requester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>requestViewPermission</td>
<td>permission for 'Requester allowed to view'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Allowed Values:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OWN REQUEST:for Requester allowed to view- Show only their own requests,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DEPARTMENT REQUEST:for Requester allowed to view- Show all their</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Department requests,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SITE REQUEST:for Requester allowed to view- Show all their Site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approvePurchaseOrder</td>
<td>Purchase Order Approver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Allowed Values: <strong>true</strong>, <strong>false</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDF aliases name</td>
<td>additional fields should be specified based on their column names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loginName</td>
<td>login name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pwd</td>
<td>password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>userDomainName</td>
<td>Domain with which the requester is associated to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>Login Name for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Password for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOMAIN_NAME</td>
<td>Domain Name to which the user belongs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logonDomainName</td>
<td>Authentication Mode [AD or Local Authentication].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;AD_AUTH&quot; refers to Active Directory Authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;Local Authentication&quot; or empty value refers to Local Authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

1. While performing the edit operation, requesters are identified based on the order below,
   - The users are first identified based on the 'reqLoginName' and 'reqDomainName'.

Zoho Corporation
- If the 'reqDomainName' is empty, the user is identified based on the 'reqLoginName' with 'reqDomainName' as an empty value.
- If the requester does not fall under the above criteria, the user is identified based on the 'reqEmailId'.
- If the requester is unavailable in the above specified criteria, the user is identified based on the 'reqUserName'.
- If the user cannot be identified from the above criteria, then the user is identified based on 'userid'.
- Based on the reqUserName or reqEmailId, if more than one users are identified then the user is neither updated nor deleted.

2. Login information of requesters cannot be edited through API.
3. To enable 'Purchase Order Approver' role while editing a requester, 'email' should be specified along with 'approvePurchaseOrder' even if 'email' has been configured for the requester.
4. Technician associated only to 'Not associated to any site' will not be allowed to create/edit requesters.
5. If a technician with 'SDAdmin' role provides values for 'techSiteName' and 'departmentName' which is unavailable in the database, then the requester is associated to the site and department specified in 'techSiteName' and 'departmentName'.
6. If a technician with restricted access permission provides values for 'techSiteName' and 'departmentName' which is unavailable in the database, then the requester is associated to 'Not associated to any site'.

The sample form to update requester can be accessed here.

The requester details are updated successfully indicated with a Success message in the xml form.

**Delete Requester**

The details necessary for deleting a requester should be set in HttpRequest parameters and Httprequest parameter value for operation attribute should be 'Updaterequester'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>targetURL=&quot;/servlets/requesterOperationServlet&quot;</td>
<td>target URL for deleting requester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operation='Deleterequesters'</td>
<td>operation command for deleting requester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>requester Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loginName</td>
<td>Requester's Login Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domainName</td>
<td>Requester's login domain name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emailId</td>
<td>Requester's email ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>userid</td>
<td>Requester id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>Login Name for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Password for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DOMAIN_NAME</td>
<td>Domain Name to which the user belongs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logonDomainName</td>
<td>Authentication Mode [AD or Local Authentication].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“AD_AUTH” refers to Active Directory Authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Local Authentication” or empty value refers to Local Authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The sample form to delete requesters can be viewed here.

A Success message appears as the xml response if the technician has permission to delete requesters.
Asset Attributes and xml Response

The asset attributes along with their actions should be used as defined below.

| Note | 1. The asset operations that can be performed through API are adding, updating and deleting assets. |
|      | 2. Asset operations can be performed by technicians only with Inventory privilege. |
|      | 3. The attributes are case sensitive and should be used as defined. |
|      | 4. While renaming the button in the sample html form, specify 'operation' as hidden element. |

- Add/Update Workstation and Server
- Add/Update Asset
- Delete Asset

Add/Update Workstation and Server

The Details necessary for adding workstation should be set in HttpRequest parameters and HttpRequest parameter value for 'operation' attribute can be 'AddAsset','UpdateAsset' or 'SaveAsset'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>targetURL=&quot;/servlets/AssetServlet&quot;</td>
<td>Target URL for adding/updating workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assetName</td>
<td>Name of the asset (workstation/server)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assetType</td>
<td>asset Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>model</td>
<td>Model No. of the asset (workstation/server)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>productName</td>
<td>Product Name of the asset (workstation/server)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siteName</td>
<td>Site to which workstation/server is associated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ipAddress</td>
<td>IP Address of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serviceTag</td>
<td>Service Tag of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wsManufacturer</td>
<td>Workstation Manufacturer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proCount</td>
<td>Processor Count of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proType</td>
<td>Processor Type of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proSpeed</td>
<td>Processor Speed (in MHz) of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proManufacturer</td>
<td>Processor Manufacturer of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributes</td>
<td>Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ramSize</td>
<td>RAM details (in MB) of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virtualCapacity</td>
<td>Virtual Memory (in MB) of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>osName</td>
<td>Operating System Name of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>osServicePack</td>
<td>Operating System ServicePack of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resTag</td>
<td>Resource Tag of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resSlNo</td>
<td>Resource Serial No. of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>barCode</td>
<td>Bar Code of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location</td>
<td>Location of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vendor</td>
<td>Vendor of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acqDate</td>
<td>Acquisition Date of workstation/server (Supported Format: yyyy-MM-dd)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expiryDate</td>
<td>Expiry Date of workstation/server (Supported Format: yyyy-MM-dd)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warrantyExpDate</td>
<td>Warranty Expiry Date of workstation/server (Supported Format: yyyy-MM-dd)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assetState</td>
<td>State of the of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assetToAssociate</td>
<td>Associate the asset to other assets.(Valid only for Asset State 'In Use').</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>associateToUser</td>
<td>Associate the asset to user.(Valid only for Asset State 'In Use').</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>associateToDepartment</td>
<td>Associate the asset to department.(Valid only for Asset State 'In Use').</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDF Column Aliases</td>
<td>UDF aliases name should be specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macAddress</td>
<td>MAC Address of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nicInfo</td>
<td>Nic Info of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>netAddress</td>
<td>Net Address of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domain</td>
<td>Domain of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dnsServer</td>
<td>DNS Server of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gateway</td>
<td>Default Gateway of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitorType</td>
<td>Monitor Type of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitorSerialNumber</td>
<td>Serial Number of the monitor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monitorManufacturer</td>
<td>Monitor manufacturer details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouseType</td>
<td>Mouse Type of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouseSerialNumber</td>
<td>Serial Number of mouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouseManufacturer</td>
<td>Mouse manufacturer details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keyboardType</td>
<td>Keyboard Type of workstation/server</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>keyboardSerialNumber</td>
<td>Serial Number of keyboard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keyboardManufacturer</td>
<td>Keyboard manufacturer details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>Login Name for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Password for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOMAIN_NAME</td>
<td>Domain Name to which the user belongs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logonDomainName</td>
<td>Authentication Mode [AD or Local Authentication].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**AD_AUTH** refers to Active Directory Authentication. Local Authentication or empty value refers to Local Authentication.

**Note:**

1. The 'assetName' is unique and hence cannot be duplicated and edited.
2. If 'ServiceTag' is specified, then the information provided for the workstation/server is considered only for that Service Tag and not for the specified asset name.
3. Product Type should be specified as the 'assetType'. This field is mandatory.
4. Product of the asset should be specified as the 'productName'.
5. If the specified 'model' or 'productName' is invalid or empty, then the model is created as 'Unknown ProductType' say, Unknown Workstation.
6. If the specified 'site' is invalid, the workstation/server is associated to 'Not associated to any site'.
7. If the specified 'vendor' is invalid and if the technician has permission to add a vendor, then the Vendor is created as specified by the user.
8. The Resource State should be specified in 'assetState'.
9. Workstations/Servers with the 'assetstate' as 'In Use', can be associated to departments, users or assets.
10. If the 'assetstate' is specified as 'In Use' then the values should be specified in the following fields, 'assetToAssociate','associateToUser' or 'associateToDepartment'.
11. If the assetState is 'In Use' and if the invalid values are provided for the following fields 'assetToAssociate','associateToUser' or 'associateToDepartment', the state is set to 'In Store'.
12. Workstations/Servers in disposed state cannot be assigned users or departments.
13. Workstations/Servers in disposed state cannot be assigned with other assets.
14. Technician with restricted access can create/update workstations/servers only for their associated site.
15. Technician with restricted access can assign/associate asset based on his access for that site alone.
16. To configure the asset additional fields for a workstation, specify the attribute as 'asset_LabelName'.

### Add Workstation/Server

The sample form to Add Workstations/Servers can be accessed here. The 'AddAsset' operation performs only the add operation.
The operation status is Success when the workstation/server is added successfully. The xml response also displays the 'resourceid' and the 'resourcename' along with the message. Click here to view the xml response.

The operation status is failure if

- The mandatory fields are not specified
- The technician with restricted access is trying to create a new workstation/server.

**Update Workstation/Server**

The sample form to Update Workstations/Servers can be accessed here. The 'UpdateAsset' operation performs only the update of existing assets with the information provided.

The operation status is Success when the workstation/server is updated successfully. Click here to view the xml response.

**Save Workstation/Server**

The sample form to Save Workstation/Server can be accessed here.

While performing SaveAsset operation, if the asset is already available with the specified criteria, the asset is updated. Else, a new asset is created with the information provided.

**Add/Update Asset**

The details to add/update assets should be set in the Http Request parameters and the Http Request parameter value for 'operation' command can be 'AddAsset', 'UpdateAsset' or 'SaveAsset'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Attributes</strong></th>
<th><strong>Comments</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>targetURL=&quot;/servlets/AssetServlet&quot;</td>
<td>Target URL for adding/updating asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assetName</td>
<td>Name of the asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assetType</td>
<td>Type of asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>productName</td>
<td>Product Name of the asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siteName</td>
<td>Site to which asset is associated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assetTag</td>
<td>Asset Tag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assetSNNo</td>
<td>Serial No. of the asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>barCode</td>
<td>Bar Code of asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location</td>
<td>Location of asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purchaseCost</td>
<td>Purchase Cost of the asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vendor</td>
<td>Vendor of asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acqDate</td>
<td>Acquisition Date of asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expiryDate</td>
<td>Expiry Date of asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attributes</td>
<td>Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warrantyExpDate</td>
<td>Warranty Expiry Date of asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assetState</td>
<td>State of the of asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assetToAssociate</td>
<td>Associate the asset to other assets.(Valid only for Asset State 'In Use').</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>associateToUser</td>
<td>Associate the asset to user.(Valid only for Asset State 'In Use').</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>associateToDepartment</td>
<td>Associate the asset to department.(Valid only for Asset State 'In Use').</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>Login Name for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Password for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOMAIN_NAME</td>
<td>Domain Name to which the user belongs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>logonDomainName</td>
<td>Authentication Mode [AD or Local Authentication].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

1. The 'assetName' is unique and hence cannot be duplicated or edited.
2. Product Type should be specified as the 'assetType'. This field is mandatory.
3. Product of the asset should be specified as the 'productName'.
4. If the specified 'model' or 'productName' is invalid or empty, then the model is created as 'Unknown ProductType' say, Unknown Workstation.
5. If the specified 'site' is invalid, the workstation/server is associated to 'Not associated to any site.'
6. If the specified 'vendor' is invalid and if the technician has permission to add a vendor, then the Vendor is created as specified by the user.
7. The Resource State should be specified in 'assetState'.
8. Assets with the 'assetstate' as 'In Use', can be associated to departments, users or assets.
9. If the 'assetstate' is specified as 'In Use' then the values should be specified in the following fields, 'assetToAssociate','associateToUser' or 'associateToDepartment'.
10. If the assetState is 'In Use' and if the invalid values are provided for the following fields 'assetToAssociate','associateToUser' or 'associateToDepartment', the state is set to 'In Store'.
11. Assets in disposed state cannot be assigned users or departments.
12. Assets in disposed state cannot be assigned with other assets.
13. Technician with restricted access can create/update Assets only for their associated site.
14. Technician with restricted access can assign/ associate asset based on his access for that site alone.
Add Asset

Click here to access the sample form.

The operation status is Success when the asset details are added successfully. The xml response also displays the 'asseteid' and the 'resourcename' along with the message. Click here to view the xml response.

The operation status is failure if,

- The mandatory fields are not specified
- The technician with restricted access is trying to create a new asset.

Update Asset

The sample form to Update Asset can be accessed here. The 'UpdateAsset' operation performs only the update of existing assets with the information provided.

The operation status is Success when the asset is updated successfully. Click here to view the xml response.

Save Asset

The sample form to Save Workstation/Server can be accessed here.

While performing SaveAsset operation, if the asset is already available with the specified criteria, the asset is updated. Else, a new asset is created with the information provided.

Delete Asset

The details necessary for deleting assets should be set in HttpRequest parameters and Httprequest parameter value for operation attribute should be 'DeleteAsset'.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>targetURL=&quot;/servlets/AssetServlet&quot;</td>
<td>target URL for deleting asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assetName</td>
<td>Name of the asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assetType</td>
<td>type of asset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username</td>
<td>Login Name for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>password</td>
<td>Password for SDP Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOMAIN_NAME</td>
<td>Domain Name to which the user belongs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>logonDomainName</td>
<td>Authentication Mode [AD or Local Authentication].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AD_AUTH refers to Active Directory Authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Local Authentication or empty value refers to Local Authentication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The sample form to delete asset can be accessed here.

The operation status is a Success if the asset is deleted successfully. Click here to view the xml response.
REST API

- About REST API
- Generating API Key
- REST API Supported Operations

About REST API

**Representational State Transfer (REST)** has similar functionality as that of Servlet API except for a few distinctness [Refer Different between Servlet and REST API to know more]. The REST API is completely automated, and users need not log into ServiceDesk Plus to perform operations. The purpose of REST API can be explained with the help of a scenario.

**Scenario:**

Let's take the case of a network monitoring tool (external application) that is installed in your network. In general, when an alarm is raised by the network monitoring tool, an e-mail notification is sent as a ticket to ServiceDesk Plus application. The field values (priority, level, impact, category and so on) should be filled by the technician manually in ServiceDesk Plus. This mechanism is time consuming and eventually results as a dip in your helpdesk productivity chart.

With **REST API**, you can automate this ticketing process. When an alarm is triggered, the network monitoring tool provides the field details and raises a ticket automatically in ServiceDesk Plus via http protocol. The ticket ID is sent back to the network monitoring tool in order to perform any further operations over the request.

When the cause for the alarm is resolved, ServiceDesk Plus will invoke an URL (callback URL) that was provided by the monitoring tool. The URL functions as a notification to the external application indicating that the ticket is resolved. If this URL (callback URL) is not provided, ServiceDesk Plus will not perform any additional operation on the ticket. When ServiceDesk Plus invokes the callback URL, the network monitoring tool can perform "any" internal operations based on the URL invocation. However, the expectation is that the application will clear the alarm (which was raised as a ticket) at their end.

**Note:** Please note that the callback URL is applicable only while creating and editing requests.
The operations performed with REST API are based on the 'operation' parameter and is sent to the url via HTTP POST method. The url format is as shown below,

\[ http://<servername>:<port number>/sdpapi/<module> \]

Authentication to the ServiceDesk Plus application is key based i.e., an API key is sent along with the url for every operation. This key is technician based and can be generate for technicians with login privilege. The role given to the technician is also taken into consideration, so the key is valid only for the role given to the technician. Once the key is generated, the key is manually transferred to the integrated application so that the application can use the key for further API operations. If the key is invalid (key is expired or the technician login is disabled), the operation fails and an error is propagated to the integrated application.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Please note that the administrator alone has the privilege to generate the authentication key for technicians with login permission.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. If a login for the technician is disabled, then the technician key is deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. The operations can be performed based on the Role provided to the technician.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Currently, XML is the supported input and output format. The input data is sent as an XML string along with the technician key and operation name, while the output is exposed as an XML string.

**Generating API Key**

The authentication between ServiceDesk Plus and integrated application is through an API key. A unique key is generated for a technician with login permission in ServiceDesk Plus application.

1. Click **Admin -> Technicians** icon under User block.
2. If you want to generate the API key to the existing technician, click the **edit** icon beside the technician.
   
   If you want to generate the API key to a new technician, click **Add New Technician** link, enter the technician details and provide login permission.
3. Click **Generate** link under the API key details block. You can select a time frame for the key to expire using the calendar icon or simply retain the same key perpetually.

   If a key is already generated for the technician, a **Re-generate** link appears.
The key in the above image is generated for an existing technician. A time frame for the key is selected which shows the date, month, year and the time (in hours and minutes) when the key will expire.

**REST API supported operations**

The *REST API* supports only request related operations which can be separated into:

- **Operations on request**: adding new request

- **Operations on a specific request**:
  - editing, closing, deleting and viewing existing requests.
  - adding new notes to a request, editing, deleting and viewing existing notes.
  - adding worklog to a request, editing, deleting and viewing existing worklogs.
Request Operations

The operations on request such as adding new request, updating, closing, deleting and viewing the existing request are discussed under this section.

To perform operations on the request, the following URL patterns should be used.

**For adding request:**

```
http://<servername>:<port number>/sdpapi/request/
```

**For operations on a specific request:**

```
http://<servername>:<port number>/sdpapi/request/<request id>
```

Contents

- Adding Request
- Editing Request
- Viewing Request
- Deleting Request
- Closing Request

Adding Request

Say, you are running ServiceDesk Plus with the server name "localhost" in the port "8080". You are creating a new request for the requester Shawn Adams, who is unable to browse the internet. The input and output XML formats for the above scenario are given below,

To add a new request, the URL is given as:

```
http://<servername>:<port number>/sdpapi/request/
```

So for the scenario above, the URL is:

http://localhost:8080/sdpapi/request/

Key Points:

1. The operation name "ADD_REQUEST" should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "OPERATION_NAME".
2. The technician key should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "TECHNICIAN_KEY".
3. Input is an XML string sent as a "POST attribute" with key "INPUT_DATA".
Note: Please note that the **Input** and **Output XML** formats have been changed. But for compatibility reasons, the Input operation will support both the formats.

**Input - Format 1:**

```xml
<Operation>
  <Details>
    <parameter>
      <name>requester</name>
      <value>Shawn Adams</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>subject</name>
      <value>The subject of the request</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>description</name>
      <value>The description of the request</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>callbackURL</name>
      <value>http://localhost:8080/CustomReportHandler.do</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>requesttemplate</name>
      <value>Unable to browse</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>priority</name>
      <value>High</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>site</name>
      <value>New York</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>group</name>
      <value>Network</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>technician</name>
      <value>Howard Stern</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>level</name>
      <value>Tier 3</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>status</name>
      <value>Open</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>service</name>
      <value>Email</value>
    </parameter>
  </Details>
</Operation>
```
Input - Format 2:

<Operation>
  <Details>
    <requester>Shawn Adams</requester>
    <subject>Specify Subject</subject>
    <description>Specify Description</description>
    <requesttemplate>Unable to browse</requesttemplate>
    <priority>High</priority>
    <site>New York</site>
    <group>Network</group>
    <technician>Howard Stern</technician>
    <level>Tier 3</level>
    <status>open</status>
    <service>Email</service>
  </Details>
</Operation>

Output:
The Output format for the operation "Add Request" supports both the formats.

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<operation name="ADD_REQUEST">
  <result>
    <status>Success</status>
    <message>Request added successfully</message>
  </result>
  <Details>
    <workorderid>25</workorderid>
  </Details>
</operation>

Editing Request

To edit a request, the URL is given as:

http://<servername>[:<port number>]/sdpapi/request/<request id>

Assume the Request ID to edit is 25, then the URL is:
http://localhost:8080/sdpapi/request/25
Key Points:

1. The operation name "EDIT_REQUEST" should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "OPERATION_NAME"
2. The technician key should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "TECHNICIAN_KEY"
3. Input is an XML string sent as "POST attribute" with key "INPUT_DATA".

**Note:** Please note that the Input and Output XML formats have been changed. But for compatibility reasons, the Input operation will support both the formats.

### Input - Format 1:

```
<Operation>
  <Details>
    <parameter>
      <name>level</name>
      <value>Tier 3</value>
    </parameter>
  </Details>
</Operation>
```

### Input - Format 2:

```
<Operation>
  <Details>
    <level>Tier 3</level>
  </Details>
</Operation>
```

### Output:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<operation name="EDIT_REQUEST">
  <result>
    <status>Success</status>
    <message>Request 25 successfully edited</message>
  </result>
</operation>
```

### Viewing Request

To view a request, the URL is given as:

```
http://<servername>:<port number>/sdpapi/request/<request id>
```
Assume the Request ID to view is 24, then the URL is:
http://localhost:8080/sdpapi/request/24/

**Key points:**

1. The operation name "GET_REQUEST" should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "OPERATION_NAME".
2. The technician key should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "TECHNICIAN_KEY".
3. Input is not required for viewing requests.

**Note:** Please note that the Input and Output XML formats have been changed. But for compatibility reasons, the Input operation will support both the formats.

**Output:**

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<operation name="GET_REQUEST">
  <result>
    <status>Success</status>
    <message>Request details fetched successfully</message>
  </result>
  <Details>
    <parameter>
      <name>workorderid</name>
      <value>24</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>requester</name>
      <value>Howard Stern</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>createdby</name>
      <value>Howard Stern</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>createdtime</name>
      <value>31 May 2011, 20:52:26</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>duebytime</name>
      <value>01 Jun 2011, 10:00:00</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>timespentonreq</name>
      <value>0hrs 0min</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>subject</name>
      <value>The subject of the request</value>
    </parameter>
  </Details>
</operation>
```
Deleting Request

To delete a request, the URL is given as:

http://<servername>:<port number>/sdpapi/request/<request id>
Assume the Request ID to delete is 21, then the URL is:
http://localhost:8080/sdpapi/request/21/

**Key points:**

1. The operation name "DELETE_REQUEST" should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "OPERATION_NAME".
2. The technician key should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "TECHNICIAN_KEY".
3. Input is not required for deleting requests.

**Note:** Please note that the **Input** and **Output XML** formats have been changed. But for compatibility reasons, the Input operation will support both the formats.

**Output:**

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<operation name="DELETE_REQUEST">
    <result>
        <status>Success</status>
        <message>Request deleted successfully</message>
    </result>
</operation>
```

**Close Request**

To close a request, the URL is given as:

```text
http://<servername>:<port number>/sdpapi/request/<request id>
```

Assume the Request ID to close is 25, then the URL is given as:
http://localhost:8080/sdpapi/request/25

**Key points:**

1. The operation name "CLOSE_REQUEST" should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "OPERATION_NAME".
2. The technician key should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "TECHNICIAN_KEY".
3. The input XML is optional. If specified, then the input is an XML string sent as "POST attribute" with key "INPUT_DATA". 
Note: Please note that the Input and Output XML formats have been changed. But for compatibility reasons, the Input operation will support both the formats.

Input - Format 1:

```xml
<Operation>
  <Details>
    <parameter>
      <name>closeAccepted</name>
      <value>Accepted</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>closeComment</name>
      <value>The Closing Comment</value>
    </parameter>
  </Details>
</Operation>
```

Input - Format 2:

```xml
<Operation>
  <Details>
    <closeAccepted>Accepted</closeAccepted>
    <closeComment>this is close comment</closeComment>
  </Details>
</Operation>
```

Output:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<operation name="CLOSE_REQUEST">
  <result>
    <status>Success</status>
    <message>Request closed successfully</message>
  </result>
</operation>
```
Notes Related Operations

The notes related operations on specific request such as adding new notes, updating, deleting and viewing the existing notes are discussed under this section.

To perform the notes related operations on an existing request, the following URL patterns should be used.

For adding notes to a request:

   http://<servername>:<port number>/sdpapi/request/<request id>/notes

For operations on a specific note for a request:

   http://<servername>:<port number>/sdpapi/request/<request id>/notes/<notes id>

Contents

- Adding Note
- Editing Note
- Viewing Note
- Viewing all the Notes
- Deleting Note

Adding Note

Say, you are running ServiceDesk Plus with the server name as "localhost" in the port "8080". You are adding a note for an existing request for which the input and output XML format is given below,

For adding a note to an existing request, the URL is given as:

   http://<servername>:<port number>/sdpapi/request/<request id>/notes

So for the above scenario, the URL is: http://localhost:8080/sdpapi/request/24/notes/

Key Points:

1. The operation name "ADD_NOTE" should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "OPERATION_NAME"
2. The technician key should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "TECHNICIAN_KEY"
3. Input is an XML string sent as "POST attribute" with key "INPUT_DATA".

Zoho Corporation
Note: Please note that the Input and Output XML formats have been changed. But for compatibility reasons, the Input operation will support both the formats.

Input - Format 1:

```xml
<Operation>
  <Details>
    <Notes>
      <Note>
        <parameter>
          <name>isPublic</name>
          <value>false</value>
        </parameter>
        <parameter>
          <name>notesText</name>
          <value>Text added to the note</value>
        </parameter>
      </Note>
    </Notes>
  </Details>
</Operation>
```

Input - Format 2:

```xml
<Operation>
  <Details>
    <Notes>
      <Note>
        <isPublic>false</isPublic>
        <notesText>Text added to the note</notesText>
      </Note>
    </Notes>
  </Details>
</Operation>
```

Output:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<operation name="ADD_NOTE">
  <result>
    <status>Success</status>
    <message>Note added successfully for request 24</message>
  </result>
</operation>
```
Editing Note

To edit a note of an existing request, the URL is given as:

http://<servername>:<port number>/sdpapi/request/<request id>/notes/<note id>

Assume the Note ID to edit the note is 301, then the URL is:
http://localhost:8080/sdpapi/request/24/notes/301

Key Points:

1. The operation name "EDIT_NOTE" should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "OPERATION_NAME"
2. The technician key should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "TECHNICIAN_KEY"
3. Input is an XML string sent as "POST attribute" with key "INPUT_DATA".

Note: Please note that the Input and Output XML formats have been changed. But for compatibility reasons, the Input operation will support both the formats.

Input - Format 1:

<Operation>
  <Details>
    <Notes>
      <Note>
        <parameter>
          <name>notesText</name>
          <value>edited the subject</value>
        </parameter>
      </Note>
    </Notes>
  </Details>
</Operation>

Input - Format 2:

<Operation>
  <Details>
    <Notes>
      <Note>
        <notesText>edited sub</notesText>
      </Note>
    </Notes>
  </Details>
</Operation>

Output:

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
Viewing Note

To view one of the notes of an existing request, the URL is given as:

http://<servername>:<port number>/sdpapi/request/<request id>/notes/<note id>

Assume the Note ID to view the note is 301, then the URL is:
http://localhost:8080/sdpapi/request/24/notes/301

Key Points:

1. The operation name "GET_NOTE" should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "OPERATION_NAME"
2. The technician key should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "TECHNICIAN_KEY"
3. Input is not required in this case.

Note: Please note that the Input and Output XML formats have been changed. But for compatibility reasons, the Input operation will support both the formats.

Output:

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<operation name="GET_NOTE">
  <result>
    <status>Success</status>
    <message>Note details fetched successfully</message>
  </result>
  <Details>
    <Notes>
      <Note>
        <parameter>
          <name>userid</name>
          <value>301</value>
        </parameter>
        <parameter>
          <name>ispublic</name>
          <value>false</value>
        </parameter>
        <parameter>
          <name>notesText</name>
          <value>Text added to the note</value>
        </parameter>
      </Note>
    </Notes>
  </Details>
</operation>
Viewing all the Notes

To view all the notes of a request, the URL is given as:

    http://<servername>:<port number>/sdpapi/request/<request id>/notes/

Assume the Request ID to view all the notes is 24, then the URL is:
http://localhost:8080/sdpapi/request/24/notes

Key Points:

1. The operation name "GET_NOTES" should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "OPERATION_NAME"
2. The technician key should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "TECHNICIAN_KEY"
3. Input is not required in this case.

Note: Please note that the Input and Output XML formats have been changed. But for compatibility reasons, the Input operation will support both the formats.

Output:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<operation name="GET_NOTES">
<result>
    <status>Success</status>
    <message>Notes details fetched successfully</message>
</result>
</operation>
```
Deleting Note

To delete a note of an existing request, the URL is given as:

```
http://<servername>:<port number>/sdpapi/request/<request id>/notes/<note id>
```
Assume the Note ID to delete the note is 301, then the URL is:
http://localhost:8080/sdpapi/request/24/notes/301

**Key Points:**

1. The operation name "DELETE_NOTE" should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "OPERATION_NAME"
2. The technician key should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "TECHNICIAN_KEY"
3. Input is not required in this case.

**Note:** Please note that the **Input** and **Output XML** formats have been changed. But for compatibility reasons, the Input operation will support both the formats.

**Output:**

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<operation name="DELETE_NOTE">
    <result>
        <status>Success</status>
        <message>Note deleted successfully</message>
    </result>
</operation>
```
Worklog Related Operations

The worklog related operations on specific request such as adding worklog, updating, deleting and viewing the existing worklogs are discussed under this section.

To perform worklog related operations the following URL patterns should be used.

For adding worklog to an existing request:

   http://<servername>:<port number>/sdpapi/request/<request id>/worklogs

For operations on a specific worklog:

   http://<servername>:<port number>/sdpapi/request/<request id>/worklogs/<worklog id>

Contents

- Adding Worklog
- Editing Worklog
- Viewing Worklog
- Viewing all the Worklogs
- Deleting Worklog

Adding Worklog

To add a worklog for an existing request, the URL is given as:

   http://<servername>:<port number>/sdpapi/request/<request id>/worklogs

So for the scenario above, the URL is:
http://localhost:8080/sdpapi/request/24/worklogs/

Key Points:

1. The operation name "ADD_WORKLOG" should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "OPERATION_NAME".
2. The technician key should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "TECHNICIAN_KEY".
3. Input is an XML string sent as "POST attribute" with key "INPUT_DATA".

Note: Please note that the Input and Output XML formats have been changed. But for compatibility reasons, the Input operation will support both the formats.
Input - Format 1:

```
<Operation>
  <Details>
    <Worklogs>
      <Worklog>
        <parameter>
          <name>description</name>
          <value>Adding a New Worklog</value>
        </parameter>
        <parameter>
          <name>technician</name>
          <value>Howard Stern</value>
        </parameter>
        <parameter>
          <name>cost</name>
          <value>25</value>
        </parameter>
        <parameter>
          <name>workMinutes</name>
          <value>20</value>
        </parameter>
        <parameter>
          <name>workHours</name>
          <value>6</value>
        </parameter>
      </Worklog>
    </Worklogs>
  </Details>
</Operation>
```

Input - Format 2:

```
<Operation>
  <Details>
    <Worklogs>
      <Worklog>
        <description>Adding a New Worklog</description>
        <technician>Howard Stern</technician>
        <cost>25</cost>
        <workMinutes>20</workMinutes>
        <workHours>6</workHours>
      </Worklog>
    </Worklogs>
  </Details>
</Operation>
```
Output:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<operation name="ADD_WORKLOG">
  <result>
    <status>Success</status>
    <message>Work Log added successfully for request 24</message>
  </result>
</operation>
```

Editing Worklog

To edit a worklog of an existing request, the URL is given as:

```
http://<servername>:<port number>/sdpapi/request/<request id>/worklogs/<work log id>
```

Assume the Worklog ID to edit is 302, then the URL is:

http://localhost:8080/sdpapi/request/24/worklogs/302

Key Points:

1. The operation name "EDIT_WORKLOG" should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "OPERATION_NAME".
2. The technician key should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "TECHNICIAN_KEY".
3. Input is an XML string sent as "POST attribute" with key "INPUT_DATA".

Note: Please note that the Input and Output XML formats have been changed. But for compatibility reasons, the Input operation will support both the formats.

Input - Format 1:

```xml
<Operation>
  <Details>
    <Worklogs>
      <Worklog>
        <parameter>
          <name>description</name>
          <value>Editing Worklog</value>
        </parameter>
      </Worklog>
    </Worklogs>
  </Details>
</Operation>
```
Input - Format 2:

```xml
<Operation>
 <Details>
   <Worklogs>
    <Worklog>
     <description>Editing Worklog</description>
   </Worklog>
  </Worklogs>
 </Details>
</Operation>
```

Output:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<operation name="EDIT_WORKLOG">
 <result>
  <status>Success</status>
  <message>Work Log 302 successfully edited for request 24</message>
 </result>
</operation>
```

Viewing Worklog

To view one of the worklog of an existing request, the URL is given as:

```
http://<servername>:<port number>/sdpapi/request/<request id>/worklogs/<work log id>
```

Assume the Worklog ID to view worklog is 302, then the URL is:

http://localhost:8080/sdpapi/request/24/worklogs/302

Key Points:

1. The operation name "GET_WORKLOG" should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "OPERATION_NAME".
2. The technician key should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "TECHNICIAN_KEY".
3. Input is not required in this case.

Note: Please note that the Input and Output XML formats have been changed. But for compatibility reasons, the Input operation will support both the formats.

Output:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<operation name="GET_WORKLOG">
 <result>
  <status>Success</status>
 </result>
</operation>
```
Work log details fetched successfully
<Worklogs>
  <Worklog>
    <parameter>
      <name>dateTime</name>
      <value>1275375445281</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>executedTime</name>
      <value>1275375433484</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>cost</name>
      <value>21.6666666666667</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>WORKORDERID</name>
      <value>24</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>workHours</name>
      <value>0</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>workMinutes</name>
      <value>7800000</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>technician</name>
      <value>Howard Stern</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>description</name>
      <value>Worklog 2</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter>
      <name>requestCostID</name>
      <value>301</value>
    </parameter>
  </Worklog>
</Worklogs>
</Details>
</Operation>
Viewing Worklogs

To view all the worklogs of a request, the URL is given as:
http://<servername>:<port number>/sdpapi/request/<request id>/worklogs/

Assume the Request ID to view all the worklogs is 302, then the URL is: http://localhost:8080/sdpapi/request/24/worklogs/

Key Points:

1. The operation name "GET_WORKLOGS" should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "OPERATION_NAME".
2. The technician key should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "TECHNICIAN_KEY".
3. Input is not required in this case.

Note: Please note that the Input and Output XML formats have been changed. But for compatibility reasons, the Input operation will support both the formats.

Output:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<operation name="GET_WORKLOGS">
  <result>
    <status>Success</status>
    <message>Work log deleted successfully</message>
  </result>
  <Details>
    <Worklogs>
      <Worklog
        URI="http://localhost:8080/sdpapi/request/24/worklogs/301/">
        <parameter>
          <name>dateTime</name>
          <value>1275375445281</value>
        </parameter>
        <parameter>
          <name>executedTime</name>
          <value>1275375433484</value>
        </parameter>
        <parameter>
          <name>cost</name>
          <value>21.6666666666667</value>
        </parameter>
        <parameter>
          <name>WORKORDERID</name>
          <value>24</value>
        </parameter>
        <parameter>
          <name>workHours</name>
          <value>0</value>
        </parameter>
      </Worklog>
    </Worklogs>
  </Details>
</operation>
```
<parameter>
  <name>workMinutes</name>
  <value>7800000</value>
</parameter>
<parameter>
  <name>technician</name>
  <value>Howard Stern</value>
</parameter>
<parameter>
  <name>description</name>
  <value>Worklog 2</value>
</parameter>
<parameter>
  <name>requestCostID</name>
  <value>301</value>
</parameter>
</Worklog>
<Worklog URI="http://localhost:8080/sdpapi/request/24/worklogs/302/">
<parameter>
  <name>dateTime</name>
  <value>1275375861188</value>
</parameter>
<parameter>
  <name>executedTime</name>
  <value>1275375861188</value>
</parameter>
<parameter>
  <name>cost</name>
  <value>25.0</value>
</parameter>
<parameter>
  <name>WORKORDERID</name>
  <value>24</value>
</parameter>
<parameter>
  <name>workHours</name>
  <value>0</value>
</parameter>
<parameter>
  <name>workMinutes</name>
  <value>22800000</value>
</parameter>
<parameter>
  <name>technician</name>
  <value>Howard Stern</value>
</parameter>
<parameter>
  <name>description</name>
  <value>Adding a New Worklog</value>
</parameter>
</Worklog>
Delete Worklog

To delete a worklog from a request, the URL is given as:

```
http://<servername>:<port number>/sdpapi/request/<request id>/worklogs/<work log id>
```

Assume the Worklog ID to delete is 301, then the URL is:

http://localhost:8080/sdpapi/request/24/worklogs/301

**Key Points:**

1. The operation name "DELETE_WORKLOG" should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "OPERATION_NAME".
2. The technician key should be sent as a "POST attribute" with key "TECHNICIAN_KEY".
3. Input is not required in this case.

**Note:** Please note that the Input and Output XML formats have been changed. But for compatibility reasons, the Input operation will support both the formats.

**Output:**

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<operation name="DELETE_WORKLOG">
  <result>
    <status>Success</status>
    <message>Work Log deleted successfully</message>
  </result>
</operation>
```
Reports

ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus gives you a set of preset help desk, problem/change and asset reports and so on generated from the data available in the application.

To view the various reports available in application

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using the user name and password of an admin user.
2. Click the Reports tab in the header pane. The next page lists the various reports grouped under different heads. Along with the default reports you also create New Custom Reports, New Query Reports, New Scheduled Report.

The following sections explain the various reports and the kind of data that each of these reports represents.

- About ServiceDesk Plus
- New Custom Report
- New Query Report
- Flash Report
- New Scheduled Report
- Custom Settings
Pre-defined ServiceDesk Plus Reports

ServiceDesk Plus provides you with pre-defined reports that can be classified as Helpdesk, Problem/Change, Request Timespent, Survey, Asset, Audit, Resources, Purchase, Contracts reports. Technicians with administrator privilege and Full access permission over Reports module can edit these pre-defined reports to suit their needs.

Helpdesk Reports

Helpdesk Reports includes all request related reports such as, Reports on Incident Requests, Reports on Service Requests, Reports by All Requests, Reports by Completed Requests, Reports by Pending Requests and Summary Requests.

Reports on Incident Requests

These reports consists of all the open, closed and SLA violated Incident Requests based on parameters such as, category, priority, request date, due date, technician and group.

Reports on Service Requests

These reports consists of all the open, closed and SLA violated Service Requests based on parameters such as, category, priority, request date, due date, technician and group.

Reports by all requests

These reports provide you with graphical view of all open and closed requests by category, group, created date, department, due date, level, priority, status, technician, status by category, status by level, status by priority, status by technician.

Reports by completed requests

These reports show the distribution of completed and closed requests. Similar to Report by all request, these reports are also generated based on various parameters such as category, group, department, due date, level, mode, priority and request date.

Reports by SLA Violated requests

These reports display the distribution of the requests that have violated the SLA that was applicable on them. You can view these violations based on the request category, group, the department from which the request was generated, and the technician who handled the request and so on.

Reports by pending requests

This shows the distribution of all pending requests for a specific period of time, based on different parameters, such as priority, department, technician, category, due date, request date and so on.
Request Summary Reports

These reports provide you with a high level view of the requests received and closed during a particular period, date-wise. The summary reports available are the received request summary reports by date and closed request summary reports by date. These reports are generated on the parameters of request received or closed by technicians, request received or closed in a specific category, priority, and mode.

Problem/Change Reports

Problem/Change Reports includes all problem and change related reports such as, Reports by All Problem, Reports on Pending Problems, Reports on Completed Problems, Reports by All Changes, Reports on Pending Changes and Reports on Completed Changes.

Reports by All Problems

You get a graphical view as well as tabular view of all open, closed, on-hold and resolved problems based on different parameters such as category, status, priority, impact, technician and urgency.

Reports on Pending Problems

You get a graphical view as well as tabular view of all open and on-hold problems based on different parameters such as, category, priority, urgency and incidents counts.

Reports on Completed Problems

You get a graphical view as well as tabular view of all closed problems based on different parameters such as, category, priority, urgency, cost and incident counts.

Reports by All Changes

You get a graphical view as well as tabular view of all approval, approved, completed, implementation, planning, rejected, release, requested, review and testing changes based on different parameters such as, category, impact, status, change type, technician, time spent on change and priority.

Reports on Pending Changes

You get a graphical view as well as tabular view of all pending changes such as approval, approved, implementation, planning, release, requested, review and testing changes based on different parameters such as, category, priority, change type, urgency, incident counts and problem counts.

Reports on Completed Changes

You get a graphical view as well as tabular view of all completed changes based on different parameters such as, category, change type, priority, urgency, cost, incident counts and problem counts.
Request Timespent Reports

These reports provide information on the technician's time spent on requests and the cost per technician based on the time spent. You can group the report information based on category, department, requester and technician attending to the request. The time spent report by requester, gives you an idea on the cost per requester and the number of request.

By default, the help desk reports will be created for the current week. You can choose any custom period of your choice or choose to create reports for last week, or this month, or for just this day. All these reports can be used for analysis purposes. For example, the reports mapped against the parameter technician can be used to measure the technician responsiveness and load handling capability.

Survey Reports

These reports provide you with the summary details on the survey results based on various parameters. All these reports help in measuring the efficiency and effectiveness of the support team and take respective corrective actions.

Under Survey reports you have,

- **Survey Overview Report** which gives you the overall ratings of each of the questions in the survey based on the feedback of the users who took the survey. The ratings give you an idea about the value that is associated with the corresponding question. This report provides both tabular and a graphic representation of the results.
- **Survey Results by Category** report has the survey information grouped based on the category. Against each category, the points gained by each of the survey questions will be tabulated. Depending on the kind of survey questions, this report will provide valuable information based on individual request categories.
- **Survey Results by Department** has the survey information grouped based on the department from which the requests originated. The points for each question of the survey are mapped against the department name from where the request originated.
- **Survey Results by Level** has the survey information grouped based on the level of the requests. The points for each question of the survey are mapped against the level of the request for which the survey was sent.
- **Survey Results by Mode** has the survey information grouped based on the mode of the requests. The points for each question of the survey are mapped against the mode of the request for which the survey was sent. This also gives you an idea on the mode of request that is most frequently used to create a new request.
- **Survey Results by Priority** has the survey information grouped based on the priority of the requests. The points for each question of the survey are mapped against the priority of the request for which the survey was sent.
- **Survey Results by Requester** has the survey information grouped based on individual requester. This helps you in finding out which requester has sent the maximum number of requests and any other information based on your survey questions. This will give you an idea of the users perspective and help you in...
deciding about the corrective actions that need to be taken to make the support team more efficient and effective.

- **Survey Results by Technicians** has the survey information grouped based on individual technicians. Each of the survey questions will carry some value and based on this value, the average value for the questions will be marked against the technicians. These points will enable you to objectively measure the technicians efficiency and effectiveness from the users perspective and take any corrective measures, if required.

**Asset Reports**

**All Computers ( Workstation and Servers )**

The workstation reports give you information about the various workstation-related metrics.

- **Computers by Domain** report tells you the computers grouping based on domains. Thus you get to know the number of computers in each of the domains in your organization network.
- **Computers by Manufacturer** report gives you a high-level distribution view of the computers used from different manufacturers.
- **Computers by OS** report gives you an overview on the percentage of computers belonging to each type of operating system. Thus you will also know the different types of Operating Systems in use in your organization.
- **Computers by Processor Manufacturer** report gives you the graphical view as well as the tabular view of the computers by processor manufacturer. Thus it gives a count of all computers with processor vendor name used in your organization.
- **Computers by Processor Type** report will give a tabular view of all processor type in each computers used in your organization.
- **Computers by Vendor** report gives a graphical as well as the tabular view of all vendors for each the computers in your organization.
- **Computers with less than 256MB RAM** and **more than 256MB RAM** gives the report of all computers in your organization with more than 256MB RAM and less than 256MB RAM.
- **Operating System by Region** gives you the list of workstations that are grouped under a particular region but are not yet assigned to any user or department. The list of computers is also displayed in the tabular form just below the graph.
- **Unassigned workstations by Domain** gives you the number of computers that are connected to the domains but are not assigned to any user or department or computer. The list of computers is also displayed in the tabular form just below the graph.

**Server**

- **Server with less than 10% Free Disk space** gives the report of all the servers in your organization with less than 10% free Disk space.
- **Servers with less than 512MB RAM** gives the report of all the servers in your organization with less than 512MB RAM.
Software

Under software reports you have, Software Reports - Purchased Vs Installed software, Software by Category and Software by Manufacturer. Under software reports - purchased Vs Installed software you can view the list of all software purchased vs installed in each of the workstation in your organization. Under software by category you can view the list of all software classified under default software category. Under Software by Manufacturer you can have the tabular view of all software used in your organization listed based on the manufacturer of the software.

Workstation Summary Reports

Under workstation summary reports you have, Software Summary Report and Hardware Summary Report. Software summary report provides you with the tabular view of all the software installed in each workstation. This includes all managed, unmanaged software. Hardware summary report provides you with all the hardware details of a workstation such as, memory details, drive information, hard disk information, physical drive information, network adapters and so on. Thus it gives a complete overview of all the software installed and hardware details of a workstation.

Audit Reports

Under audit reports you have audit history by workstation, audit history by time line, audit history by changes. The updated audit reports are available only by scanning the workstation. Audit history by workstation gives a complete report on the account of all actions taken place in a workstation. This provides detail report on both hardware and software details. Audit history by time line gives a detail overview of all actions taken place in a workstation for a specific time period. By default you can get only the current week report. Audit history by changes gives a complete report on all changes taken place in a workstation for the current week.

To get the audit report for previous weeks,

1. Click the Edit button. This opens the Custom Reports.
2. From the Date Filter block-> select the Scan Date option from the combo box -> select the duration by clicking During combo box which provides you with the last week, last month, this month, this quarter, last quarter or yesterday options to generate reports. (OR) if you wish to generate reports for a specific time period then select the From and To radio button and select the dates from the calendar button.
3. Click Run Report button. You can get report for the specified time period.

Resources Reports

Under resources reports you have, resources by product type, resources by vendor, resources types by site. Resources by product types give the graphical view as well as the tabular view of all the resources (assets) available for all default and newly added product types. Resources by Vendor give the graphical and tabular view of all the resources in the organization based on the vendor name. The name of the vendor will be in X-axis and the resource count will be in Y-axis. Resource Types by Site lists all the available resources in your organization distributed across each sites of your company.
**Contract Reports**

Under contracts reports you have reports based on Active contracts, Contracts by Max value, Contracts by status, Contracts by vendor and Expired contracts. **Active Contracts** shows all the open contracts in your organization in a graphical and tabular view. **Contracts by Max Value** shows all the contracts which costs above 1000$ will be displayed in both graphical and tabular view. **Contracts by Status** shows the list of all contracts with its status level such as, open contracts, expired, expired in the last 30 days, expiring in next 7 days and expiring in next 30 days in a graphical and tabular view. **Contracts by Vendor** show all the contracts with all status level but classified based on the vendor. **Expired Contracts** shows the list of all the expired contracts in your organization.

**Purchase Reports**

Under purchases you have reports based on PO Vendors, PO by Ordered Date, PO by Required Date, PO by Status. **Purchase orders by vendors** gives the graphical view and tabular view of all the approved, pending for approval, partially approved, closed, overdue, POs due in next 7 days, POs due in next 30 days purchase orders classified based on the vendor name. **Purchase orders by ordered date** gives the graphical view and tabular view of all the approved, pending for approval, partially approved, closed, overdue, POs due in next 7 days, POs due in next 30 days purchase orders classified based on the ordered date. **Purchase orders by required date** gives the graphical view and tabular view of all the approved, pending for approval, partially approved, closed, overdue, POs due in next 7 days, POs due in next 30 days purchase orders classified based on the required date.
Custom Reports

ServiceDesk Plus enables you to create reports that meet your need if you are unable to find them from the list of out-of-the-box reports already available. To create your custom reports,

1. Login to ServiceDesk Plus application with your user name and password.
2. Click Reports tab in the header pane.
3. Click New Custom Report button in the reports home page. This opens the Custom Report page that will help you navigate through the various steps involved in the creation of a custom report.
4. Specify the relevant Report Title in the given text field. This is a mandatory field.
5. Choose the Report Type by selecting the radio buttons. You can create Tabular Reports, Matrix Reports, Summary Reports, Audit Reports.
6. Choose the module (Request, TimeSpent, Problem, Change and so on) for which you wish to create the report. The audit History module will be enabled only for audit reports. This is applicable only for the tabular and matrix reports. For summary reports, audit reports default modules will be selected.
7. Click Proceed to Report Wizard >> button. This opens the Display Columns page. This page differs for each report type. Each report type has to go through various steps before generating it as a customized report.

To generate Tabular Reports

Tabular reports are simple reports that allow you to list your data based on certain criteria. If you had selected the Tabular Reports option then you have five steps to create a complete customized tabular report. If you wish to skip a particular option then click the next tab and move to the next step.

Display Columns

The first step to create tabular reports is to select the display columns which need to be displayed in the tabular report. Select the columns from the Available Columns list box and click >> button to move them to Display Columns list box. Click the << button if you want to remove any column from the Display Columns list box.

Click Next button. This leads you to the grouping of columns, where you can choose two levels of grouping.

Filter Options

1. If you are using the date/time filter criteria, select the date column name from the Select Column combo box.
2. Select the period for which you want to generate the report. If you would like to generate report during this week, last week, this month, last month, this quarter, last quarter or today, yesterday then select the During radio button and select the time period from the combo box. (OR) If you wish to provide a custom period, then select the From and To date using the calendar button.
3. To use **Advanced Filtering**, select the column name such as, Requester name, region site and so on from the combo box. Select the criteria (is, is not, contains and so on) from the combo box. You can pick a value by invoking the icon 🟢. Select **AND** or **OR** option from the combo box to add more than one criteria. You can delete a criteria by clicking the delete icon 🗑️.

4. Click the **Choose** button and select the value for the column to add as a filter condition.

5. Click as **Add to Filter** button to add the filter condition to the filter set which gets listed under the **Filter Set** title.

6. Click **Next** button to go to the grouping of data.

**Grouping Data**

From the **Group by** combo box, select the column based on which you wish to group the data.

Select the **Order by** from the combo box.

Click the **Next** button to go to the next stage.

**Column Summary**

You can get the column summary for all the columns in the report. If you wish to have the column summary displayed in the report, select the column summary options available for each column. The summary options differ for each column you have selected.

Click the Next button to go the next option.

**Charts**

In addition to the tabular chart, if you wish to have a chart displayed for a particular column then, or you can skip this option and directly run the report.

1. Select the chart type to be displayed from the combo box.
2. Select the **Axis column** from the combo box to be displayed in the chart. This is a mandatory field. The data will be grouped in the chart based on the column selected.
3. Select the **Display Format** from the combo box. For ex: in numbers or in percentage.
4. Click **Run Report** button.

On running the report you get a tabular report as well as the graphical view for the selected column data.
To generate Matrix Reports

Matrix reports provide the data in a grid manner (m x n format). It allows you to study different scenarios based on the chosen criteria. If you have selected matrix reports you have two steps to generate a complete matrix report. Click the Proceed to Report Wizard button to go to next page.

Grouping Data

You have simple grouping and advanced grouping option for matrix reports.

Simple Grouping

1. Click the Simple grouping tab. You have two options Top column information and left column information. Select the top column information from the combo box. This is a mandatory field.
2. Select the left column information from the combo box. This is a mandatory field.
3. Select the summarize column count from the combo box to get the column summary.

Normal Grouping

1. Click the Advanced grouping tab. You have two options Column grouping and Group by.
2. Select the Columns and Date format to be displayed from the combo box. Select the group by from the combo box. You have three options for group by to be displayed in the report. This is a mandatory field.
3. Select the summarize column from the combo box.
4. Select the period for which you want to generate the report. If needed you can also provide a custom period by choosing the from and to date manually.
5. Click Next.
6. To use Advanced Filtering, you first need to select the radio button for matching all the selected criteria or any one of them. Then from the column listing, select the various columns and set the match operator and mention the values for matching.

Filter Options

1. If you are using the date/time filter criteria, select the date column name from the Select Column combo box.
2. Select the period for which you want to generate the report. If you would like to generate report during this week, last week, this month, last month, this quarter, last quarter or today, yesterday then select the During radio button and select the time period from the combo box. (OR) If you wish to provide a custom period, then select the From and To date using the calendar button.
3. To use Advanced Filtering, you first need to select the radio button for matching all the selected criteria or any one of them. Then from the column listing, select the various columns from the list and set the
match operator and mention the values for matching the column as (is, is not, contains and so on) from the combo box.

4. Click the Choose button and select the value for the column to add as a filter condition.

5. Click as Add to Filter button to add the filter condition to the filter set which gets listed under the Filter Set title.

6. Click Run Report button. You get a matrix report

Request Summary Reports

Summary reports are detailed reports that allow you to list your data based on certain criteria. To create a request summary report, select the corresponding radio button from the custom reports page and click the Proceed to Report Wizard button to go to next page. You have two steps to generate a complete request summary report.

Display Columns

The first step to create request summary reports is to select the display columns which need to be displayed in the request summary report. Select the columns from the Available Columns list box and click >> button to move them to Display Columns list box. Click the << button if you want to remove any column from the Display Columns list box.

Click Next button. This leads you to the grouping of columns, where you can choose two levels of grouping.

Filter Options

1. If you are using the date/time filter criteria, select the date column name from the Select Column combo box.

2. Select the period for which you want to generate the report. If you would like to generate report during this week, last week, this month, last month, this quarter, last quarter or today, yesterday then select the During radio button and select the time period from the combo box. (OR) If you wish to provide a custom period, then select the From and To date using the calendar button.

3. To use Advanced Filtering, you first need to select the radio button for matching all the selected criteria or any one of them. Then from the column listing, select the various columns from the list and set the match operator and mention the values for matching the column as (is, is not, contains and so on) from the combo box.

4. Click the Choose button and select the value for the column to add as a filter condition.

5. Click as Add to Filter button to add the filter condition to the filter set which gets listed under the Filter Set title.

6. Click Next button to go to the grouping of data.
Audit Reports

Audit reports are detailed history reports that allow you to list your inventory history data based on scan time criteria. Click **Proceed to Report Wizard** button to go to the next page. This opens the **Audit History Report** page.

You have three audit history reports options, on scanning the workstation you get the updated version of all the audit reports.

- **Audit history by workstation.**
  
  Audit history by workstation gives a complete audit report of the hardware and software details of the workstation.

- **Audit history by time line.**
  
  Audit history by time line gives a detail overview of all the actions taken place in a workstation for a specific time period.

- **Audit history by changes.**
  
  Audit history gives a complete report on all changes taken place in a workstation.

Select any of the three audit history report options. Specify the scan date from the combo box.

Click **Run Report** button. You get the audit history report.
Creating New Query Reports

1. Click on the Reports tab. This opens the All Reports page.
2. Click New Query Report button. This opens the Query Editor page.
3. Select the Table Schema from the combo box say, requests, timespent and so on. Click Get to view the table schema for the selected option.
4. Specify the title of the report in the Report Title field. This is a mandatory field.
5. Specify the query to be executed for getting reports in the Query field. This is a mandatory field.
6. The logs will display all error messages on providing any wrong query.
7. Click Run Report to run query report.

Tips

1. Date Formulae: DATE_FORMAT (FROM_UNIXTIME (COLUMN_NAME/1000),'%d-%m-%Y %k: %i') 'Column Alias'.
2. Minutes Formulae: ROUND (((COLUMN_NAME/1000)/60)) % 60) 'Minutes'.
3. Hours Formulae: ROUND (((COLUMN_NAME/1000)/3600)) 'Hours'.
4. Compare Date: COLUMN_NAME >= (UNIX_TIMESTAMP (DATE ('2006-07-24 00:00:00')) * 1000).
5. Convert Memory in GB: ((((MEMORY_COLUMN)/1024)/1024)/1024)
6. Default Value For Null Data: COALESCE (COLUMN_NAME, 'Unassigned')
7. Group by: Query statement will be ends with order by <column_index>

Additional Field tables

1. Request Additional Fields - WorkOrder_Fields
2. Requester Additional Fields - Requester_Fields
3. Technician Additional Fields - Technician_Fields
4. Asset Additional Fields - Asset_Fields
5. Workstation Additional Fields - Workstation_Fields
6. Problem Additional Fields - Problem_Fields
7. Change Additional Fields - Change_Fields
Flash Report

Flash Reports help to get a quick and customizable overview of reports. Using Flash Reports we can generate a high level picture on the status of the requests based on the selected criteria. It tells us the number of requests that are present for a given condition.

To configure and view flash reports,

1. Login to ServiceDesk Plus application with your user name and password.
2. Click Reports tab in the header pane.
3. Click Flash Reports button in the reports home page. This opens the Flash Reports page.
4. Select the filter parameters:
   - Select Created/Responded/Due-by/Completed time from the drop down box.
   - Select pre-defined time period from the drop down box by choosing During option or customize the time period by selecting the From and To dates from the calendar.
5. Click OK.
6. The report is loaded in the same page.

The report shows information pertaining to requests in the mentioned time period under conditions such as Total requests, Pending Requests, Completed Requests and SLA Violated Requests. Based on parameters such as SLA, Technicians, Priority, Category, Site, Level, Type, Urgency, Impact, Mode and Status, the reports can be further scrutinized. These parameters can be viewed by clicking on the button.

For example,

If you need to know the number of requests that have violated the SLA, then click on "SLA" option. This shows number of violated/non-violated requests. For further information on the requests, click on the downward arrow and choose from one of the given parameters. Say, you need to know technicians handling the SLA violated requests, and then click on downward arrow and choose "Technician" from the drop down list. The technicians along with the number of requests handled by them are displayed in the next branch. Further if you want to know the priority of requests handled by a particular technician, then click on downward arrow next to the technician name and select "Priority". This displays the number of requests that have normal, high and low priorities.
If you click on the number that is displayed along with the report, the list of requests will be displayed in a new window. By clicking on the title of the request, you can view the request details in the space below. The request details cannot be edited/modified in this screen.
Scheduling Report Settings

1. Click Reports tab. This opens the All Reports page.
2. Click New Scheduled Report button. This opens Schedule Report Settings page.
3. To generate report once click Generate Once radio button. Specify the date using the calendar button and Time from the combo box on which the report has to be generated.
4. Select the report to schedule from the combo box. The list will display all the available reports such as, Reports by All requests, Reports by Completed requests, Reports by SLA Violated reports and so on. This is a mandatory field.
5. Specify the E-mail ID of the person to whom the generated report has to be sent.
6. Save the details. Scheduled reports get displayed in the Schedule Reports page.
7. To generate reports on a daily basis click Daily Report radio button and specify the From Date, Time, report to be scheduled and the e-mail address of the person to whom the report has to be sent. Save the details.
8. To generate weekly report click Weekly Report radio button. Specify the days of the week on which you want to generate reports by selecting the check box. Or select Everyday check box to generate reports on daily basis. Also specify the time, report to schedule, and E-mail ID of the person to whom the generated report has to be sent. Save the details.
9. To generate reports on a monthly basis click Monthly Report radio button. Specify the month on which the report has to be generated by enabling the check box. Or select Every Month check box to generate reports on monthly basis. Also specify the time, report to schedule, and E-mail ID of the person to whom the generated report has to be sent. Save the details.

NOTE: If a technician is deleted or the login credentials are removed from the application, then the ownership of the scheduled reports created by that technician is transferred to the technician who has performed the delete/unassigned login credentials action.
Custom Settings

The custom settings wizard helps you to customize the report column size. This helps to increase or decrease the tabular column size, matrix column size and modify the date and time format of your custom reports.

1. Click Reports tab. This opens the All Reports page.
2. Click the Custom Settings button. The Report Settings dialog pops up.
3. If you wish to customize the Tabular column size, specify the size of the small text, large text, number size and date and time text. And update the changes.
4. If you wish to customize the Matrix column size, specify the size of the cell width and cell height and update the changes.
5. To disable the links in reports enable the check box beside Disable links in report under General Settings block. To view one Group per page, enable the check box beside the same.
6. For empty values, enter the value to be shown in the report, such as Not Assigned, Null and so on.
7. Click the Update button to update the changes.
Appendix

This topic explains the various features that are not grouped under any of the modules but can be used from the application.

- System Log Viewer
- Backup Process
- Restore Process
- Change Web Server Port
- Feedback
- Troubleshooting
System Log Viewer

You can view the error logs generated by the ServiceDesk Plus application online.

To view the error logs,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password. If you have the permissions to view the support information, you will see a Support tab in the header.
2. Click the Support tab in the header pane.
3. Click the System Log Viewer link available in the Support page.

To view the individual error details,

1. In the Error Log list view page, click the hyper linked Error Message. An error log window with the details of the error is opened.
2. The Error Message field contains the complete error message.
3. The Module field indicates the module in which the error occurred.
4. The Occurred At field indicates the date and time when the error occurred.
5. If the probable cause of the error is known, then the cause is displayed in the Probable Cause field.
6. The Performed By field indicates the origin of the error. For example, if it is a system-generated error, then the Performed By field contains System as its value.
7. Click Close after viewing the details of the error message.

None of these fields are editable. You can also search for a specific error log details with the help of the Search in feature.

To search for error logs,

1. In the left menu, the search block is found at the bottom. If you are in the Error Log list view page, then by default, the System Log option is chosen in the Search in combo box. If not, then choose System Log.
2. In the Enter Keyword text field, enter the search string.
3. Press Enter on your keyboard or click Go. The search results will display all the error logs that match the search string.
4. Click the error log of your choice to view the same.

You can delete these error logs.

To delete individual error logs

1. In the Error Log list view, select check boxes beside the Error Messages that you wish to delete.
2. Click Delete.

If you want to delete all the existing error messages, then click the Delete All button.
Back up Process

- Back up Process in Windows
  - Back up Process in Windows without file attachments
- Back up Process in Linux
  - Back up Process in Linux without file attachments

Back up Process in Windows

1. Shut down ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus server before you perform a back up of your data.
2. Click Start -> Programs -> ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus -> Backup Data. [OR] From command prompt, go to <ServiceDesk>\bin directory and execute the backUpData.bat as shown below,

   C:\ManageEngine\ServiceDesk\bin\backUpData.bat

2. A backup of the data in the database and the file attachments that have been added in the application is created in <ServiceDesk>\backup directory. The backup file has to be a .data file.
3. The file name for the backup file will be of the pattern backup_servicedesk_[build number]_fullbackup_month_date_year_hr_min.data. For example, a backup taken in Version 8.0 of ServiceDesk Plus looks like this,

   backup_servicedesk_8000_fullbackup_01_18_2011_15_28.data

ServiceDesk Plus is designed in such a way that the file attachments are not stored in the database. The attachments are stored in the file attachments folder of the installation directory (C:\ManageEngine\ServiceDesk). If you are upgrading the server, then you can save time by performing a backup without file attachments i.e., back up of the database alone.

Back up Process in Windows without file attachments

1. From command prompt, go to <ServiceDesk Plus>\bin directory and execute backUpData.bat --trimmed command to start the database back up.

   C:\ManageEngine\ServiceDesk\bin\backUpData.bat --trimmed

2. Once the backup is complete, a backup file with .data extension is placed in the Trimmed Backup folder under ServiceDesk Plus Home directory.
3. The backup file contains information such as, the Build number of ServiceDesk Plus, and date and time when the backup was performed. Here is the format of the backup file.
backup_servicedesk_[build number]_database_month_date_year_hour_minutes.

For example, a trimmed backup taken in Version 8.0 of ServiceDesk Plus looks like this, backup_servicedesk_8000_database_01_18_2011_15_28.data

**Back up Process in Linux**

Follow the steps given below to take a backup of the ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus data:

1. Shut down ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus server before you perform a backup of your data.
2. Go to `<ServiceDesk>/bin` directory from the command prompt.
3. Execute the `backUpData.sh` file as given below:

   $ sh backUpData.sh

   The backup file is created in the `<ServiceDesk>/backup` directory. The backup file has to be a .data file

   3. The file name for the backup file is of the pattern backUp_servicedesk_[build number]_fullbackup_month_date_year_hr_min.data.

   For example, a backup taken in Version 8.0 of ServiceDesk Plus looks like this, backup_servicedesk_8000_fullbackup_01_18_2011_15_28.data

**Back up Process in Linux without file attachments**

1. From command prompt, go to `<ServiceDesk Plus>/bin` directory and execute `backUpData.sh --trimmed` command to start the database back up.

   $ sh backUpData.sh --trimmed

   2. Once the backup is complete, a backup file with .data extension is placed in the Trimmed Backup folder under ServiceDesk Plus Home directory.

   3. The backup file contains information such as, the Build number of ServiceDesk Plus, and date and time when the backup was performed. Here is the format of the backup file.
backup_servicedesk_[build number]_database_month_date_year_hour_minutes.

   For example, a trimmed backup taken in Version 8.0 of ServiceDesk Plus looks like this, backup_servicedesk_8000_database_01_18_2011_15_28.data
Restore Process

- Restore Process in Windows
- Restore Process in Linux

**Restore Process in Windows**

1. Shut down ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus Server before you restore the data.
2. From the command prompt, go to `<ServiceDesk>\bin` directory.
3. Execute the file `restoreData.bat` as shown below:

   ```
   C:\ManageEngine\ServiceDesk\bin\backUpData.bat
   ```

4. The **Restore Data** dialog pops-up. Browse the backed up file and click **OK**.

4. The data begins to restore. While restoring the existing data is rewritten with the backed up file.
5. **Close** on successful installation.

**Restore Process in Linux**

1. Shut down ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus Server before you restore the data.
2. Go to `<ServiceDesk>/bin` directory from the command prompt.
3. Execute the file `restoreData.sh` as shown below:

   ```bash
   $ sh restoreData.sh <backup file name>
   ```

   The backup file name has to be the `.data` file from which you wish to restore the data. This will restore the data from the back up file.
Change Web Server Port

- Change Web Server Port on Windows
- Change Web Server Port on Linux

**Change Web Server Port on Windows**

Follow the steps given below to change the web server port where the ServiceDesk Plus server will be running:

1. Go to `<ServiceDesk>\bin` directory.
2. Execute the file `changeWebServerPort.bat` at command prompt as shown below:

   ```
   C:\[ServiceDesk Plus Home]\bin>changeWebServerPort.bat <new port number> <http or https>
   ```

3. The web server port will be reset to the new port number that you have specified.
   - HTTPS - To start the ServiceDesk Plus server in HTTPS mode.
   - HTTP - To start the ServiceDesk Plus server in HTTP mode. By default, executing the file as `changeWebServerPort.bat <new port number>` will start the server in HTTP mode.
4. If the port number is occupied, you will be prompted to enter a different port number. If you do not wish to enter a different port number then press N on your keyboard to exit the application. Else press Y and enter a different port number that is unoccupied.

This change will be effected only when you restart the server. To connect to the ServiceDesk Plus server after restarting, the new port number must be used.

**Change Web Server Port on Linux**

Follow the steps given below to change the web server port where the ServiceDesk Plus server will be running:

1. Go to `<ServiceDesk>/bin` directory.
2. Execute the file `changeWebServerPort.sh` at command prompt as shown below,

   ```
   $ sh changeWebServerPort.sh <new port number> <http or https>
   ```

3. The web server port will be reset to the new port number that you have specified.
   - HTTPS - To start ServiceDesk Plus server in HTTPS mode.
o HTTP - To start ServiceDesk Plus server in HTTP mode. By default, executing the file as `changeWebServerPort.bat <new port number>` will start the server in HTTP mode.

4. If the port number is occupied, you will be prompted to enter a different port number. If you do not wish to enter a different port number then press N on your keyboard to exit the application. Else press Y and enter a different port number that is unoccupied.

This change will be effected only when you restart the server. To connect to the ServiceDesk Plus server after restarting, the new port number must be used.
Feedback

If you are connected to the network you can send your feedback about ServiceDesk Plus immediately to our support team.

To send your feedback,

1. Log in to the ServiceDesk Plus application using your user name and password.
2. Click Help drop-down link at the top left corner of the page.
3. Click Feedback option. The Feedback form opens in a pop up window.
4. The To address will be in non-editable format to our support team. Specify Your Name, Your email ID, Subject of the mail and Message mail content in their corresponding fields.
5. Click Submit button to send the mail.
Performance Guide

Your help desk application may have the facility to store large amount of data but this can also hinder the performance of your help desk tool. This guide provides certain queries to improve the performance of ManageEngine ServiceDesk Plus.

To execute the query, you need to access the MySQL database. Click the respective OS link (Windows or Linux) to know how to access the MySQL database.

**NOTE:** Please restart ServiceDesk Plus after executing the query for the changes to get applied.

---

The list of performance tips discussed in this guide is,

- Java Tuning
- MySQL Tuning
- Data Archiving
- Distributed Asset Scan
- Disable Request Count
- Disable Request Refresh Timer
- Disable All Requests filter
- Decrease the number of requests in List View
- Disable Short Description Search
- Cleanup Recent Item Limit
- Cleanup Error Log Limit
- Cleanup ACC Session
- Delete System Generated Notifications
- Increase User Cache Count
- Increase Technician Cache Count
- Increase Message IDs Cache Count
- Increase E-mail IDs / User IDs Cache Count

---

**Java Tuning**

We recommend at least 2GB of RAM on the server machine if it’s dedicated to ServiceDesk Plus. In cases where you have enough RAM but still have performance issues, then follow the instructions given below,

1. Go to ManageEngine\ServiceDesk\server\default\conf folder
2. Edit the `wrapper.conf` file on a wordpad and change the parameters according to the RAM size on the server machine:
By default, the maximum java heap size is 512 MB.

If you have 3GB of RAM, then change 512 to 768,

```bash
# Maximum Java Heap Size (in MB)
wrapper.java.maxmemory=512
```

To

```bash
# Maximum Java Heap Size (in MB)
wrapper.java.maxmemory=768
```

If you have 4 GB of RAM, then change 512 to 1024

If the RAM is 3GB or 4GB, then along with the maximum memory configuration, you could also change the following,

```bash
wrapper.java.additional.19=-XX:PermSize=64m
```
Can be changed to,

```bash
wrapper.java.additional.19=-XX:PermSize=128m
```

And,

```bash
wrapper.java.additional.20=-XX:MaxPermSize=128m
```
Can be changed to,

```bash
wrapper.java.additional.20=-XX:MaxPermSize=256m
```

**MySQL Tuning**

You could also perform a tuning of the MySQL database. The instructions are given below,

1. Go to ManageEngine\ServiceDesk\bin folder
2. Edit `startdb.bat` file on a wordpad and append the following parameters to the last line of the file based on the RAM size.

**For 1GB RAM:**

```bash
```
For 2GB of RAM:

```sql
--set-variable=query-cache-type=2 --read_buffer_size=128K --
read_rnd_buffer_size=1M --sort_buffer_size=2M --myisam_sort_buffer_size=4M --
tmp_table_size=32M --max_heap_table_size=32M --key_buffer_size=32M --
innodb_buffer_pool_size=256M --bulk_insert_buffer_size=16M --table_cache=512 --
thread_cache=32 --innodb_flush_log_at_trx_commit=0 --low-priority-updates
```

For 3GB of RAM:

```sql
--set-variable=query-cache-type=2 --read_buffer_size=128k --
read_rnd_buffer_size=1M --sort_buffer_size=2M --myisam_sort_buffer_size=8M --
tmp_table_size=32M --max_heap_table_size=32M --key_buffer_size=64M --
innodb_buffer_pool_size=750M --bulk_insert_buffer_size=16M --table_cache=750 --
innodb_flush_log_at_trx_commit=0 --low-priority-updates
```

For 4GB of RAM:

```sql
--set-variable=query-cache-type=2 --read_buffer_size=128K --
read_rnd_buffer_size=2M --sort_buffer_size=2M --myisam_sort_buffer_size=8M --
tmp_table_size=32M --max_heap_table_size=32M --key_buffer_size=64M --
innodb_buffer_pool_size=1024M --bulk_insert_buffer_size=16M --table_cache=900 --
innodb_flush_log_at_trx_commit=0 --low-priority-updates
```

If you have followed the above instructions but still have an issue with the performance, then send the below stated log files to our Support Team for further analysis.

1. wrapper.log from ManageEngine\ServiceDesk\bin
2. serverout0.txt,.....,serverout5.txt from ManageEngine\ServiceDesk\server\default\log

**Data Archiving**

You can schedule data archiving of closed and resolved requests at regular intervals to improve the performance of ServiceDesk Plus. Refer Data Archiving to learn more on archiving requests.
Distributed Asset Scan
If you have many nodes say, more than 1000, then scanning these nodes at regular intervals would hinder the performance of ServiceDesk Plus. To reduce the load on the server, you could scan these nodes using Distributed Asset Scan. All you need to do is install remote ServiceDesk Plus servers across departments. These remote servers scan the nodes at regular intervals and export the data to the central ServiceDesk Plus server.

Disable Request Count
The Request Count displays the total number of requests in the request list view page. Larger the request count value, the longer it takes to display the requests in the list view page.

The request count value cannot be removed. Instead you can choose to view the request count, by clicking a Row Count button in the request list view page.

To show the Row Count button, use the query,
update GlobalConfig set PARAMVALUE='FALSE' where CATEGORY='PERFORMANCE' and PARAMETER='SHOW_REQUEST_COUNT';
Disable Request Refresh Timer
The Refresh Timer refreshes the request list view page at regular intervals. But this can slow down the performance of ServiceDesk Plus.

You can disable the Refresh Timer option by using the query,
update GlobalConfig set PARAMVALUE='FALSE' where CATEGORY='PERFORMANCE' and PARAMETER='SHOW_WO_REFRESH_TIME';

Disable All Requests filter
The 'All Requests' filter in the request list view displays all the requests that have been created so far, irrespective of the status. But as the number of requests increases, the performance of ServiceDesk Plus gradually slows down.
In this case, you can remove the 'All Requests' option from the filter drop-down using the query,

```
update GlobalConfig set PARAMVALUE='FALSE' where CATEGORY='PERFORMANCE' and PARAMETER='SHOW_ALL_REQUEST_VIEW';
```

**Disable Recent Items**

Recent Items displays the list items that were recently accessed by the user. But as the number of users increase, displaying and managing the list of recently accessed items for each user can hinder the performance of ServiceDesk Plus.

You can hide the recent items widget by using the query,

```
update GlobalConfig set PARAMVALUE='FALSE' where CATEGORY='PERFORMANCE' and PARAMETER='SHOW_RECENT_ITEM';
```
Decrease the number of requests in List View

In the Request List View page, you would find a drop-down menu to select the number of requests to view per page. Limiting this number to 25 or 50 would eliminate loading of requests and improve the performance of ServiceDesk Plus.

Disable Short Description Search

Short Description refers to the description which appears when you hover over the subject link of the request in the request list view. By default, while performing a search operation, the short description of a request would be searched. But when you have large amount of data, the performance of ServiceDesk Plus eventually decreases.

You can disable this feature by using the query,

update GlobalConfig set PARAMVALUE='false' where CATEGORY='SearchShortDescription' and PARAMETER='Status';

Cleanup Recent Item Limit

By default, the recent items list is deleted once in every 15 days. But you can improve ServiceDesk Plus's performance by increasing the cleanup frequency.

Example: If you want to clean up the Recent Item list every 5 days, then use the query,

update GlobalConfig set PARAMVALUE=5 where CATEGORY='CLEANUP_TASK' and PARAMETER='CLEANUP_RI_LIMIT';

The maximum limit for cleaning up recent item list is 90. If you want to disable the cleanup, then set the parameter value as -1.

Cleanup Error Log Limit

By default, the error log list is deleted once in every 180 days. But you can increase the cleanup frequency to accelerate the backup process.

Example: If you want to clean up the Error Log list every 30 days, then use the query,

update GlobalConfig set PARAMVALUE=30 where CATEGORY='CLEANUP_TASK' and PARAMETER='CLEANUP_ERROR_LOG_LIMIT';

The maximum limit for cleaning up error log list is 365. If you want to disable the cleanup, then set the parameter value to -1.

Cleanup ACC Session

It is a table containing the session details i.e., the logged in and logged out information. These entries are not used by the application and can be removed periodically for better database performance. By default, the session details are deleted once in every 90 days but for better performance, you can increase the cleanup frequency.

Example: If you want to clean up the ACC Session every 30 days then use the query,
update GlobalConfig set PARAMVALUE=30 where CATEGORY='CLEANUP_TASK' and PARAMETER='CLEANUP_ACC_SESSION_LIMIT';

The maximum limit for cleaning up the ACC session details is 365. If you want to disable the cleanup, then set the parameter as -1.

**Delete System Generated Notifications**

System Generated Notifications are notifications generated and sent by the system. You can either delete all the system notifications or manually check the notifications to delete.

If you want to delete all the system notifications then execute the query,

delete from notification where senderid=1;

To get the list of notification titles to delete unwanted notifications, execute the query,

select notificationtitle from notification limit 100;

**Example:** If the notificationtitle is 'has been added to the group', then use the query to delete notifications under this title,

delete from notification where notificationtitle like '%has been added to the group%';

**Increase User Cache Count**

By default, the number of user data objects that would be cached is **500**. But in case of high-end machines with better RAM configurations, this value can be increased to cache more data for quick response.

**Example:** If you want to increase the cache count to 1000, then use the query,

update GlobalConfig set PARAMVALUE='1000' where PARAMETER='USER_CACHECOUNT';

**Increase Technician Cache Count**

By default, the number of technician data objects that would be cached is **300**. But in case of high-end machines with better RAM configurations, this value can be increased to cache more data for quick response.

**Example:** If you want to increase the cache to 1000, then use the query,

update GlobalConfig set PARAMVALUE='1000' where PARAMETER='TECHNICIAN_CACHECOUNT';
Increase Message IDs Cache Count
By default, the number of Message IDs that would be cached is 1000. But in case of high-end machines with better RAM configurations, this value can be increased to cache more data for quick response.

Example: If you want to increase the cache count to 2000, then use the query,
update GlobalConfig set PARAMVALUE='2000' where PARAMETER='MESSAGEID_CACHECOUNT';

Increase E-mail IDs / User IDs Cache Count
By default, the number of E-mail IDs / User IDs that would be cached is 1000. But in case of high-end machines with better RAM configurations, this value can be increased to cache more data for quick response.

Example: If you want to increase the cache count to 2000, then use the query,
update GlobalConfig set PARAMVALUE='2000' where PARAMETER='EMAIL_USERID_CACHECOUNT';
Troubleshooting

This section gives you solutions for the problems faced while scanning for workstations in ServiceDesk Plus Inventory module.

1. Either access denied for the user or the remote DCOM option might be disabled in the workstation.
2. User does not have the access privileges to perform this operation.
3. Remote DCOM option is disabled in the Server machine.
4. Connection to RPC server in the workstation failed.
5. One of the WMI components is not registered properly.
6. Execution failure in the WMI Service of workstation.
7. WMI Service is disabled in the workstation.
8. Request for scan operation rejected by the workstation.
9. Connection to Telnet Service in the workstation failed.
10. Either Username or Password is incorrect in the workstation.
11. Scan operation Timed out.
12. The operation invoked is not supported in the current platform.
13. General failure while performing the operation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Either access denied for the user or the remote DCOM option might be disabled in the workstation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cause</td>
<td>This error message is shown when scanning of a Windows workstation fails due to any of the following reasons:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. The login name and password provided for scanning might be invalid in the workstation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Remote DCOM option might be disabled in the remote workstation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Resolution     | 1. Check if the login name and password are entered correctly. |
|                | 2. Check if Remote DCOM is enabled in the remote workstation. If not enabled, then enable the same. |

To enable DCOM in Windows 2000 Computers:
1. Select Start > Run
2. Type DCOMCNFG in the text field
3. Click OK.
4. Select Default Properties tab
5. Check the box "Enable Distributed COM in this machine"
6. Press OK

To enable DCOM in Windows XP Computers:

7. Select Start > Run
8. Type DCOMCNFG in the text field
9. Click OK
10. Right Click on Component Services > Computers > My Computer
11. Click Properties
12. Select Default Properties tab in the frame that pops
13. Check the box "Enable Distributed COM in this machine"
14. Press OK

3. Check if the user account is valid in the target workstation.
   For this execute the following commands in the command prompt (of the server machine).

   net use \<RemoteComputerName>C$ /u:<DomainName\UserName> "<password>"
   net use \<RemoteComputerName>ADMIN$ /u:<DomainName\UserName> "<password>"

   Replace the relevant value within <>.
   Supply password within the quotes.

   If these commands show any error message, then the provided user account is not valid in that remote computer.

### Error Message

**User does not have the access privileges to perform this operation**

### Cause

Such error messages are shown, if the User ID provided for scanning does not have sufficient access privileges to perform the scanning operation. Probably, this user does not belong to the Administrator group of the workstation.

### Resolution

Move the user to the Administrator Group of the workstation (or) Scan with an administrator (preferably a Domain Administrator) account.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Resolution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote DCOM option is disabled in the Server machine</td>
<td>Remote DCOM option might be disabled in the machine running ServiceDesk Plus Server.</td>
<td>ServiceDesk uses Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI) to scan the remote workstations. WMI works over Remote DCOM and hence this option must be enabled for scanning the remote machines. To know how to enable DCOM in Windows system refer to resolution of the error message Either access denied for the user or the remote DCOM option might be disabled in the workstation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Connection to RPC server in the workstation failed | This message is shown when a firewall is configured on the remote computer. Such exceptions mostly occur in Windows XP (SP-2), when the default Windows Firewall is enabled. | Disable the default Firewall in the workstation. To disable the Firewall in Windows XP (SP2)  
1. Select Start->Run  
2. Type Firewall.cpl  
3. Click OK.  
4. In the General tab, click Off.  
5. Click OK.  
If Firewall cannot be disabled then, we can launch Remote Administration feature for administrators in the remote computer. The following command when executed in the target computer, can enable the feature:  
netsh friewall set service RemoteAdmin  
After scanning the computer, if required, the Remote Administration feature can also be disabled. The following command disables the feature:  
netsh friewall set service RemoteAdmin disable |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Resolution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>One of the WMI components is not registered properly</td>
<td>This message is shown if WMI is not available in the remote windows workstation. This happens in the Windows 9x, Windows NT and Windows ME. Such error codes might also occur in higher versions of Windows if the WMI Components are not registered properly.</td>
<td>Install WMI core in the remote workstation. This can be downloaded from the Microsoft web site. If the problem is due to WMI Components registration, then register the WMI dlls by executing the following command at command prompt: winmgmt /RegServer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Execution failure in the WMI Service of workstation | Such error messages are shown, when there are some internal execution failures in the WMI Service (winmgmt.exe) running in the remote workstation. Probably the last update of the WMI Repository in that workstation could have failed. | Restart the WMI Service in the remote workstation. To restart the WMI service in the workstation:  
1. Click Start -> Run.  
2. Type Services.msc  
3. Click OK.  
4. In the Services window that pops-up, select "Windows Management Instrumentation" service and right-click on that.  
5. Click Restart. |
| WMI Service is disabled in the workstation | This error message is shown when the WMI Service (winmgmt.exe) is not enabled in the remote workstation. | Modify the property of WMI Service to Manual or Automatic from Disabled.  
1. Click Start -> Run.  
2. Type Services.msc  
3. Click OK.  
4. In the Services window that pops-up, select "Windows Management Instrumentation" service and right-click on that.  
5. Click Properties.  
6. If the Startup type is "Disabled", change it to "Automatic/Manual" and start the service.  
7. Restart the service. |
### Error Message
Request for scan operation rejected by the workstation

### Cause
DCOM settings in Registry of the target workstation reject the scan request.

### Resolution
Edit the Registry key value, as described below:

1. Use Regedit to navigate to: HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\OLE.
2. Double-click the EnableDCOM value Name, a string (REG_SZ) data type. Set its data value to Y, even if it is already SET to Y.
3. Click OK
4. Shutdown and restart the computer.

### Error Message
Connection to Telnet Service in the workstation failed

### Cause
Telnet Service might not be running in the target computer (or) Telnet Service is not running in default port 23.

### Resolution
Discovering remote Linux Machines by ServiceDesk is done using Telnet. Ensure that Telnet is running in the remote workstations in the default port 23.

### Error Message
Either Username or Password is incorrect in the workstation

### Cause
The username and password provided to scan the remote workstation is incorrect.

### Resolution
Discovering Linux Workstations, in ServiceDesk Plus is done using the Telnet. Provide a valid username and password that can successfully establish a telnet session with the target workstation.

### Error Message
Scan operation Timed out

### Cause
Target workstation did not respond within the default time limit. This might be due to some delay in the network.

### Resolution
Try scanning the workstation, sometime later. If the same error message repeats, contact ServiceDesk Plus Support Team at servicedeskplus-support@manageengine.com.

### Error Message
The operation invoked is not supported in the current platform

### Cause
Such error codes are shown if the workstation has an Operating System other than Windows or Linux.

### Resolution
Currently, Network Discovery in ServiceDesk Plus supports Windows or Linux machines, only.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Error Message</th>
<th>General failure while performing the operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cause</td>
<td>Some unexpected exception occurred while, scanning the workstation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resolution</td>
<td>Contact the ServiceDesk support team at <a href="mailto:servicedeskplus-support@manageengine.com">servicedeskplus-support@manageengine.com</a> with the Error log files. You can obtain the error log files from <strong>Support</strong> tab by clicking on the <strong>Support File</strong> link in the ServiceDesk Plus application.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>